Volume 28, Number 3 May 2020
ISSN:1521-1398 PRINT,1572-9206 ONLINE

Journal of

Computational

Analysis and

Applications

EUDOXUS PRESS,LLC

Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications
ISSNno.'s:1521-1398 PRINT,1572-9206 ONLINE

SCOPE OF THE JOURNAL

An international publication of Eudoxus Press, LLC
(six times annually)

Editor in Chief: George Anastassiou
Department of Mathematical Sciences,
University of Memphis, Memphis, TN 38152-3240, U.S.A
ganastss@memphis.edu
http://www.msci.memphis.edu/~ganastss/jocaaa

The main purpose of "J.Computational Analysis and Applications" is to publish high quality research articles from all subareas of Computational Mathematical Analysis and its many potential applications and connections to other areas of Mathematical Sciences. Any paper whose approach and proofs are computational,using methods from Mathematical Analysis in the broadest sense is suitable and welcome for consideration in our journal, except from Applied Numerical Analysis articles. Also plain word articles without formulas and proofs are excluded. The list of possibly connected mathematical areas with this publication includes, but is not restricted to: Applied Analysis, Applied Functional Analysis, Approximation Theory, Asymptotic Analysis, Difference Equations, Differential Equations, Partial Differential Equations, Fourier Analysis, Fractals, Fuzzy Sets, Harmonic Analysis, Inequalities, Integral Equations, Measure Theory, Moment Theory, Neural Networks, Numerical Functional Analysis, Potential Theory, Probability Theory, Real and Complex Analysis, Signal Analysis, Special Functions, Splines, Stochastic Analysis, Stochastic Processes, Summability, Tomography, Wavelets, any combination of the above, e.t.c.

"J.Computational Analysis and Applications" is a peer-reviewed Journal. See the instructions for preparation and submission of articles to JoCAAA. Assistant to the Editor: Dr.Razvan Mezei,mezei_razvan@yahoo.com, St.Martin Univ.,Olympia,WA,USA.

Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications(JoCAAA) is published by **EUDOXUS PRESS,LLC**,1424 Beaver Trail Drive,Cordova,TN38016,USA,anastassioug@yahoo.com http://www.eudoxuspress.com. **Annual Subscription Prices**:For USA and Canada,Institutional:Print $800, Electronic OPEN ACCESS. Individual:Print $400. For any other part of the world add $160 more(handling and postages) to the above prices for Print. No credit card payments.

JoCAAA is reviewed and abstracted by AMS Mathematical Reviews,MATHSCI,and Zentralblaat MATH.

Editorial Board
Associate Editors of Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications

Dartmouth College
8000 Cummings Hall,
Hanover, NH 03755-8000
603-646-3843 (X 3546 Secr.)
e-mail:george.cybenko@dartmouth.edu
Approximation Theory and Neural Networks

Sever S. Dragomir
School of Computer Science and Mathematics, Victoria University,
PO Box 14428,
Melbourne City,
MC 8001, AUSTRALIA
Tel. +61 3 9688 4437
Fax +61 3 9688 4050
sever.dragomir@vu.edu.au
Inequalities, Functional Analysis, Numerical Analysis, Approximations, Information Theory, Stochastics.

Oktay Duman
TOBB University of Economics and Technology,
Department of Mathematics, TR-06530,
Ankara, Turkey,
oduman@etu.edu.tr
Classical Approximation Theory, Summability Theory, Statistical Convergence and its Applications

Saber N. Elaydi
Department Of Mathematics
Trinity University
715 Stadium Dr.
San Antonio, TX 78212-7200
210-736-8246
e-mail: selaydi@trinity.edu
Ordinary Differential Equations, Difference Equations

J .A. Goldstein
Department of Mathematical Sciences
The University of Memphis
Memphis, TN 38152
901-678-3130
jgoldste@memphis.edu
Partial Differential Equations, Semigroups of Operators

H. H. Gonska
Department of Mathematics
University of Duisburg
Duisburg, D-47048
Germany
011-49-203-379-3542
e-mail: heiner.gonska@uni-due.de
Approximation Theory, Computer Aided Geometric Design

John R. Graef
Department of Mathematics
University of Tennessee at Chattanooga
Chattanooga, TN 37304 USA
John-Graef@utc.edu
Ordinary and functional differential equations, difference equations, impulsive systems, differential inclusions, dynamic equations on time scales, control theory and their applications

Weimin Han
Department of Mathematics
University of Iowa
Iowa City, IA 52242-1419
319-335-0770
e-mail: whan@math.uiowa.edu
Numerical analysis, Finite element method, Numerical PDE, Variational inequalities, Computational mechanics

Tian-Xiao He
Department of Mathematics and Computer Science
P.O. Box 2900, Illinois Wesleyan University
Bloomington, IL 61702-2900, USA
Tel (309)556-3089
Fax (309)556-3864
the@iwu.edu
Approximations, Wavelet, Integration Theory, Numerical Analysis, Analytic Combinatorics

Margareta Heilmann
Faculty of Mathematics and Natural Sciences, University of Wuppertal
Gaußstraße 20
D-42119 Wuppertal, Germany,
heilmann@math.uni-wuppertal.de
Approximation Theory (Positive Linear Operators)

Xing-Biao Hu
Institute of Computational Mathematics
AMSS, Chinese Academy of Sciences
Beijing, 100190, CHINA
hxb@lsec.cc.ac.cn

Computational Mathematics

Instructions to Contributors
Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications

An international publication of Eudoxus Press, LLC, of TN.

Editor in Chief: George Anastassiou

Department of Mathematical Sciences
University of Memphis
Memphis, TN 38152-3240, U.S.A.

1. Manuscripts files in Latex and PDF and in English, should be submitted via email to the Editor-in-Chief:

Prof.George A. Anastassiou
Department of Mathematical Sciences
The University of Memphis
Memphis,TN 38152, USA.
Tel. 901.678.3144
e-mail: ganastss@memphis.edu

Authors may want to recommend an associate editor the most related to the submission to possibly handle it.

Also authors may want to submit a list of six possible referees, to be used in case we cannot find related referees by ourselves.

2. Manuscripts should be typed using any of TEX,LaTEX,AMS-TEX,or AMS-LaTEX and according to EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC. LATEX STYLE FILE. (Click HERE to save a copy of the style file.)They should be carefully prepared in all respects. Submitted articles should be brightly typed (not dot-matrix), double spaced, in ten point type size and in 8(1/2)x11 inch area per page. Manuscripts should have generous margins on all sides and should not exceed 24 pages.

3. Submission is a representation that the manuscript has not been published previously in this or any other similar form and is not currently under consideration for publication elsewhere. A statement transferring from the authors(or their employers,if they hold the copyright) to Eudoxus Press, LLC, will be required before the manuscript can be accepted for publication.The Editor-in-Chief will supply the necessary forms for this transfer.Such a written transfer of copyright,which previously was assumed to be implicit in the act of submitting a manuscript,is necessary under the U.S.Copyright Law in order for the publisher to carry through the dissemination of research results and reviews as widely and effective as possible.

4. The paper starts with the title of the article, author's name(s) (no titles or degrees), author's affiliation(s) and e-mail addresses. The affiliation should comprise the department, institution (usually university or company), city, state (and/or nation) and mail code.

The following items, 5 and 6, should be on page no. 1 of the paper.

5. An abstract is to be provided, preferably no longer than 150 words.

6. A list of 5 key words is to be provided directly below the abstract. Key words should express the precise content of the manuscript, as they are used for indexing purposes.

The main body of the paper should begin on page no. 1, if possible.

7. All sections should be numbered with Arabic numerals (such as: 1. INTRODUCTION) .
Subsections should be identified with section and subsection numbers (such as 6.1. Second-Value Subheading).
If applicable, an independent single-number system (one for each category) should be used to label all theorems, lemmas, propositions, corollaries, definitions, remarks, examples, etc. The label (such as Lemma 7) should be typed with paragraph indentation, followed by a period and the lemma itself.

8. Mathematical notation must be typeset. Equations should be numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals in parentheses placed flush right, and should be thusly referred to in the text [such as Eqs.(2) and (5)]. The running title must be placed at the top of even numbered pages and the first author's name, et al., must be placed at the top of the odd numbed pages.

9. Illustrations (photographs, drawings, diagrams, and charts) are to be numbered in one consecutive series of Arabic numerals. The captions for illustrations should be typed double space. All illustrations, charts, tables, etc., must be embedded in the body of the manuscript in proper, final, print position. In particular, manuscript, source, and PDF file version must be at camera ready stage for publication or they cannot be considered.

Tables are to be numbered (with Roman numerals) and referred to by number in the text. Center the title above the table, and type explanatory footnotes (indicated by superscript lowercase letters) below the table.

10. List references alphabetically at the end of the paper and number them consecutively. Each must be cited in the text by the appropriate Arabic numeral in square brackets on the baseline.
References should include (in the following order):
initials of first and middle name, last name of author(s)
title of article,

name of publication, volume number, inclusive pages, and year of publication.

Authors should follow these examples:

Journal Article

1. H.H.Gonska,Degree of simultaneous approximation of bivariate functions by Gordon operators, (journal name in italics) *J. Approx. Theory*, 62,170-191(1990).

Book

2. G.G.Lorentz, (title of book in italics) *Bernstein Polynomials* (2nd ed.), Chelsea,New York,1986.

Contribution to a Book

3. M.K.Khan, Approximation properties of beta operators,in(title of book in italics) *Progress in Approximation Theory* (P.Nevai and A.Pinkus,eds.), Academic Press, New York,1991,pp.483-495.

11. All acknowledgements (including those for a grant and financial support) should occur in one paragraph that directly precedes the References section.

12. Footnotes should be avoided. When their use is absolutely necessary, footnotes should be numbered consecutively using Arabic numerals and should be typed at the bottom of the page to which they refer. Place a line above the footnote, so that it is set off from the text. Use the appropriate superscript numeral for citation in the text.

13. After each revision is made please again submit via email Latex and PDF files of the revised manuscript, including the final one.

14. Effective 1 Nov. 2009 for current journal page charges, contact the Editor in Chief. Upon acceptance of the paper an invoice will be sent to the contact author. The fee payment will be due one month from the invoice date. The article will proceed to publication only after the fee is paid. The charges are to be sent, by money order or certified check, in US dollars, payable to Eudoxus Press, LLC, to the address shown on the Eudoxus homepage.

No galleys will be sent and the contact author will receive one (1) electronic copy of the journal issue in which the article appears.

15. This journal will consider for publication only papers that contain proofs for their listed results.

Control problems for semilinear impulsive differential control systems

Ah-ran Park[1] and Jin-Mun Jeong[2,*]

[1,2]Department of Applied Mathematics, Pukyong National University
Busan 48513, Republic of Korea

Abstract

In this paper, we establish the approximate controllability for the semilinear impulsive differential equation in relation to the the corresponding linear control system based on the regularity for the equation under natural assumptions such as the local Lipschitz continuity of nonlinear term.

Keywords: approximate controllability, semilinear equation, ,impulsive differential equation, local lipschitz continuity, controller operator, reachable set

AMS Classification Primary 35B37; Secondary 93C20

1 Introduction

In this paper, we are concerned with the approximate controllability for the semilinear impulsive control system in Hilbert spaces:

$$\begin{cases} x^{'}(t) + Ax(t) = f(t, x(t)) + (Bu)(t), \quad t \in (0, T], \quad t = t_k, \\ k = 1, 2, \cdots, m, \\ \Delta x(t_k) = x(t_k^+) - x(t_k^-) = I_k(x(t_k^-)), \quad k = 1, 2, \cdots, m, \\ x(0) = x_0. \end{cases} \tag{1.1}$$

Let H be identified with its dual space we may write $V \subset H \subset V^*$ densely and the corresponding injections be continuous. Here, A is the operator associated with a sesquilinear form $a(\cdot, \cdot)$ defined on $V \times V$ satisfying Gårding's inequality:

$$(Au, v) = a(u, v), \quad u, \ v \in V$$

Email: [1]alanida@naver.com, [2,*]jmjeong@pknu.ac.kr(Corresponding author)
This work was supported by a Research Grant of Pukyong National University(2019Year).

where V is a Hilbert space such that $V \subset H \subset V^*$. Then $-A$ generates an analytic semigroup in both H and V^*(see [1, Theorem 3.6.1]) and so the equation (1.1) may be considered as an equation in H as well as in V^*. The nonlinear operator f from $[0, T] \times V$ to H is assumed to be locally Lipschitz continuous with respect to the second variable. Let U be a Banach space of control variables and the controller operator B be a bounded linear operator from the Banach space $L^2(0, T; U)$ to $L^2(0, T; H)$. The impulsive condition

$$\Delta x(t_k) = x(t_k^+) - x(t_k^-) = I_k(x(t_k^-)), \quad k = 1, 2, \cdots, m,$$

is a combination of traditional evolution systems. Let $x(t; f, u)$ be a solution of the equation (1.1) associated with a nonlinear term f and a control u. We will show the approximate controllability for the equation (1.1), namely that the reachable set $R_T(f) = \{x(T; f, u) : u \in L^2(0, T; U)\}$ is a dense subset of H. This kind of equations arise naturally in biology, in physics, control engineering problem, etc.

In the first part of this paper we establish the wellposedness and regularity property for the following equation:

$$\begin{cases} x^{'}(t) + Ax(t) = f(t, x(t)) + k(t), \quad t \in (0, T], \quad t = t_k, \\ k = 1, 2, \cdots, m, \\ \Delta x(t_k) = x(t_k^+) - x(t_k^-) = I_k(x(t_k^-)), \quad k = 1, 2, \cdots, m, \\ x(0) = x_0. \end{cases} \tag{1.2}$$

The regularity for the semilinear heat equations has been developed as seen in Barbu [2] and [3, 4, 5, 6].

In this paper, based on the regularity for (1.2), we intend to establish the approximate controllability for (1.1). Approximate controllability for semilinear control systems can be founded in [7-15]. Similar considerations of linear and semilinear systems have been dealt with in many references, linear problems in the book [15] and Nakagiri [14], semilinear cases with the uniform bounded nonlinear term in [16], and with the uniform Lipschtz continuous nonlinear term in [3, 17, 18, 19]. However, there are few papers treating the systems with local Lipschipz continuity, we can just find a recent article Wang [20]. Among these literatures, in [17, 20], they assumed that the semigroup $S(t)$ generated by A is compact in order to guarantee the compactness of the solution mapping, and investigated the approximate controllability for the equation (1.1).

In this paper, in order to show that the main result of Naito [17] is extended to the nonlinear differential equation, we assume that the embedding $D(A) \subset V$ is compact instead of the compact property of semigroup used in [17, 21]. Then by virtue of the result in Aubin [22], we can take advantage of the fact that the solution mapping $u \in L^2(0, T; U) \mapsto x(T; f, u)$ is compact. Under natural assumptions such as the local Lipschtiz continuity of nonlinear term, we obtain the approximate controllability for the equation (1.1) when the corresponding linear system is approximately controllable.

The paper is organized as follows. In section 2, the results of general linear evolution equations besides notations and assumptions are stated. In section 3, we investigate the approximate controllability for the problem (1.1). The approach used here is similar to that developed in [1, 3] on the general semilnear evolution equations, which is an important role to extend the theory of practical nonlinear partial differential equations.

2 Regularity for semilinear impulsive systems

The norm on V, H and V^* will be denoted by $||\cdot||$, $|\cdot|$ and $||\cdot||_*$, respectively. We assume that V has a stronger topology than H and, for brevity, we may regard that

$$||u||_* \le |u| \le ||u||, \quad \forall u \in V. \tag{2.1}$$

Let $a(\cdot,\cdot)$ be a bounded sesquilinear form defined in $V \times V$ and satisfying Gårding's inequality

$$\text{Re } a(u,u) \ge \omega_1 ||u||^2 - \omega_2 |u|^2, \tag{2.2}$$

where $\omega_1 > 0$ and ω_2 is a real number. Let A be the operator associated with this sesquilinear form:

$$(Au, v) = a(u, v), \quad u, \ v \in V.$$

Then $-A$ is a bounded linear operator from V to V^* by the Lax-Milgram Theorem. The realization of A in H which is the restriction of A to

$$D(A) = \{u \in V : Au \in H\}$$

is also denoted by A. Then we consider the following sequence

$$D(A) \subset V \subset H \subset V^* \subset D(A)^*, \tag{2.3}$$

where each space is dense in the next one which continuous injection. It is also well known that A generates an analytic semigroup $S(t)$ in both H and V^*. For the sake of simplicity, we assume that $\omega_2 = 0$ and hence the closed half plane $\{\lambda : \text{Re}\,\lambda \ge 0\}$ is contained in the resolvent set of A.

If X is a Banach space, $L^2(0,T;X)$ is the collection of all strongly measurable square integrable functions from $(0,T)$ into X and $W^{1,2}(0,T;X)$ is the set of all absolutely continuous functions on $[0,T]$ such that their derivative belongs to $L^2(0,T;X)$. $C([0,T];X)$ will denote the set of all continuously functions from $[0,T]$ into X with the supremum norm. Let the solution spaces $\mathcal{W}(T)$ and $\mathcal{W}_1(T)$ of strong solutions be defined by

$$\mathcal{W}(T) = L^2(0,T;D(A)) \cap W^{1,2}(0,T;H),$$
$$\mathcal{W}_1(T) = L^2(0,T;V) \cap W^{1,2}(0,T;V^*).$$

Here, we note that by using interpolation theory, we have

$$\mathcal{W}(T) \subset C([0,T];V), \quad \mathcal{W}_1(T) \subset C([0,T];H).$$

Thus, there exists a constant $M_0 > 0$ such that

$$||x||_{C([0,T];V)} \le M_0||x||_{\mathcal{W}(T)}, \quad ||x||_{C([0,T];H)} \le M_0||x||_{\mathcal{W}_1(T)}. \tag{2.4}$$

The semigroup generated by $-A$ is denoted by $S(t)$ and there exists a constant M such that

$$|S(t)| \le M, \quad ||s(t)||_* \le M.$$

Let f be a nonlinear mapping from V into H. We need to impose the following conditions on nonlinear term f.

Assumption (F). There exists a function $L : \mathbb{R}_+ \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $L(r_1) \le L(r_2)$ for $r_1 \le r_2$ and

$$|f(t,x)| \le L(r), \quad |f(t,x) - f(t,y)| \le L(r)||x-y||$$

hold for any $t \in [0,T]$, $||x|| \le r$ and $||y|| \le r$.

Assumption (I). The functions $I_k : V \to H$ are continuous and there exist positive constants $L(I_k)$ and $\beta \in (1/3, 1]$ such that

$$|A^\beta I_k(x)| \le L(I_k)||x||, \quad |A^\beta I_k(x) - I_k(y)| \le L(I_k)||x-y||, \quad k = 1,2,\cdots,m$$

for each $x, y \in V$, and

$$||x(t_k^-)|| \le K, \quad k = 1,2,\cdots,m.$$

From now on, we establish the following results on the local solvability of the following equation;

$$\begin{cases} x'(t) + Ax(t) = f(t,x(t)) + k(t), \quad t \in (0,T], \quad t \ne t_k, \\ \ \ k = 1,2,\cdots,m, \\ \Delta x(t_k) = x(t_k^+) - x(t_k^-) = I_k(x(t_k^-)),\ k = 1,2,\cdots,m, \\ x(0) = x_0. \end{cases} \tag{2.5}$$

Let us rewrite $(Fx)(t) = f(t,x(t))$ for each $x \in L^2(0,T;V)$. Then there is a constant, denoted again by $L(r)$, such that

$$||Fx||_{L^2(0,T;H)} \le L(r)\sqrt{T}, \quad ||Fx_1 - Fx_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)} \le L(r)||x_1 - x_2||_{L^2(0,T;V)}$$

hold for $x_1,\ x_2 \in B_r(T) = \{x \in L^2(0,T;V) : ||x||_{L^2(0,T;V)} \le r\}$. Here, we note that by using interpolation theory, we have that for any $t > 0$,

$$L^2(0,t;V) \cap W^{1,2}(0,t;V^*) \subset C([0,t];H).$$

Thus, for any $t > 0$, there exists a constant $c > 0$ such that

$$||x||_{C([0,t];H)} \le c||x||_{L^2(0,t;V)\cap W^{1,2}(0,t;V^*)}. \tag{2.6}$$

Let

$$0 = t_0 < t_1 < \cdots < t_k < \cdots < t_m = T.$$

Then by Assumption (I) and (2.5), it is immediately seen that

$$x \in W^{1,2}(t_i, t_{i+1}; V^*), \quad i = 0, \cdots, m-1.$$

Thus by virtue of Assumption (I) and (2.6), we may consider that there exists a constant $C_3 > 0$ such that

$$\max_{0 \le t \le T} \{|x(t)| : x \text{ is a solution of (2.5)}\} \le C_3 ||x||_{L^2(0,T:V)}. \tag{2.6}$$

With the notations (2.2), (2.3), we have

$$(V, V^*)_{1/2,2} = H, \quad (D(A), H)_{1/2,2} = V,$$

where $(V, V^*)_{1/2,2}$ denotes the real interpolation space between V and V^*(Section 1.3.3 of [23]). From now on, we establish the following results on the solvability of the equation (2.5).

Theorem 2.1. *1) Let Assumption (F) be satisfied. Assume that $x_0 \in H$, $k \in L^2(0, T; V^*)$. Then, there exists a time $T_0 \in (0, T)$ such that the equation (2.5) admits a solution*

$$x \in W_1(T_0) \subset C([0, T_0]; H). \tag{2.7}$$

2) Under Assumption (F) for the nonlinear mapping f, there exists a unique solution x of (2.5) such that

$$x \in \mathcal{W}_1(T) \equiv L^2(0, T; V) \cap W^{1,2}(0, T; V^*) \subset C([0, T]; H), \quad T > 0.$$

for any $x_0 \in H$, $k \in L^2(0, T; V^*)$. Moreover, there exists a constant C_1 such that

$$||x||_{\mathcal{W}_1(T)} \le C_1(1 + |x_0| + ||k||_{L^2(0,T;V^*)}), \tag{2.8}$$

where C_1 is a constant depending on T.
3) Let Assumptions (F) and (I) be satisfied and $(x_0, k) \in H \times L^2(0, T; V)$. Then the solution x of the equation (2.5) belongs to $x \in \mathcal{W}_1 \equiv L^2(0, T; V) \cap W^{1,2}(0, T; V^*)$ and the mapping

$$H \times L^2(0, T; V^*) \ni (x_0, k) \mapsto x \in \mathcal{W}_1(T) \tag{2.9}$$

is continuous.

Corollary 2.1. *Suppose that $k \in L^2(0, T; H)$ and $x(t) = \int_0^t S(t-s)k(s)ds$ for $0 \le t \le T$. Then there exists a constant C_2 such that*

$$||x||_{L^2(0,T;V)} \le C_2\sqrt{T}||k||_{L^2(0,T;H)}. \tag{2.10}$$

Proof. From Theorem 2.3 of [24], it follows that there exists a $C > 0$ such that

$$||x||_{L^2(0,T;D(A))} \leq C||k||_{L^2(0,T;H)}. \tag{2.11}$$

Moreover, we have

$$||x||^2_{L^2(0,T;H)} \leq M \int_0^T t \int_0^t |k(s)|^2 ds dt \leq M \frac{T^2}{2} \int_0^T |k(s)|^2 ds. \tag{2.12}$$

Since

$$(D(A), H)_{1/2,2} = V,$$

there exists a constant $C_0 > 0$ such that

$$||u|| \leq C_0 ||u||^{1/2}_{D(A)} |u|^{1/2}. \tag{2.13}$$

Thus, by (2.11), (2.12) and (2.13), if $C_2 = C_0\sqrt{CT}(M/2)^{1/4}$, then the inequality (2.10) holds. □

3 Approximate Controllability

Let U be a Banach space of control variables. Here B is a linear bounded operator from $L^2(0,T;U)$ to $L^2(0,T;H)$, which is called a controller. Consider the following nonlinear impulsive control systems.

$$\begin{cases} x'(t) + Ax(t) = f(t, x(t)) + (Bu)(t), \quad t \in (0,T], \\ x(0) = x_0. \\ \Delta x(t_k) = x(t_k^+) - x(t_k^-) = I_k(x(t_k^-)), \ k = 1, 2, \cdots, m. \end{cases} \tag{3.1}$$

Let $x(T; f, u)$ be a state value of the system (3.1) at time T corresponding to the nonlinear term f and the control u. Let $S(\cdot)$ be the analytic semigroup generated by $-A$. Then the solution $x(t; f, u)$ can be written as

$$x(t; f, u) = S(t)x_0 + \int_0^t S(t-s)\{f(s, x(s, f, u)) + (Bu)(s)\}ds + \sum_{0<t_k<t} S(t-s)I_k(x(t_k^-)),$$

and in view of Theorem 2.1

$$||x(\cdot; f, u)||_{\mathcal{W}_1(T)} \leq C_1(1 + |x_0| + ||B|| ||u||_{L^2(0,T;U)}). \tag{3.2}$$

We define the reachable sets for the system (3.1) as follows:

$$R_T(f) = \{x(T; f, u) : u \in L^2(0,T;U)\},$$
$$R_T(0) = \{x(T; 0, u) : u \in L^2(0,T;U)\}.$$

Definition 3.1. *The system (3.1) is said to be approximately controllable at time T if for every desired final state $x_1 \in H$ and $\epsilon > 0$ there exists a control function $u \in L^2(0,T;U)$ such that the solution $x(T;f,u)$ of (3.1) satisfies $|x(T;f,u) - x_1| < \epsilon$, that is, $\overline{R_T(f)} = H$ where $\overline{R_T(f)}$ is the closure of $R_T(f)$ in H.*

We define a linear bounded operator $\hat{S}$ from $L^2(0,T;H)$ to H by

$$\hat{S}p = \int_0^T S(T-t)p(t)dt,$$

for $p(\cdot) \in L^2(0,T;H)$.
Assumption (B) For any $\varepsilon > 0$, $p \in L^2(0,T;H)$ there exists a $u \in L^2(0,T;U)$ such that

$$\begin{cases} |\hat{S}p - \hat{S}Bu| \le \varepsilon \\ ||Bu||_{L^2(0,t;H)} \le q_1||p||_{L^2(0,t;H)}, \quad 0 \le t \le T \end{cases}$$

where q is a constant independent of p.

Assumption (F1) The nonlinear operator f is a nonlinear mapping of $[0,T] \times H$ into H satisfying the following. There exists a constant $L_1 = L_1(r) > 0$ such that

$$|f(t,x) - f(t,y)| \le L_1||x-y||, \quad t \in [0,T],$$

hold for $||x|| \le r$ and $||y|| \le r$.

Assumption (H) We assume the following inequality condition:

$$max\{q,1\}\{1-M_2\}^{-1}C_2L_1\sqrt{T} < 1.$$

where C_2 is the constant in (2.10),

$$M_2 = C_2\sqrt{T}L_1 + (3\beta)^{-1/2}2(3\beta-1)^{-1}C_{1-\beta}C_3T^{3\beta/2}\sum_{0 \le t_k \le T} L(I_k).$$

Lemma 3.1. *Let u_1 and u_2 be in $L^2(0,T;U)$. Then under Assumption(B) and Assumption$(F1)$, one has that, for $0 \le t \le T$,*

$$||x(t:f,u_1) - x(t:f,u_2)||_{L_2(0,T;V)} \le \{1-M_2\}^{-1}C_2\sqrt{t}||Bu_1 - Bu_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)}. \quad (3.3)$$

Proof. Let $x_1(t) = x(t : f, u_1)$ and $x_2(t) = x(t : f, u_2)$. Then for $0 \le t \le T$,we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(t) - x_2(t) = &\int_0^t S(t-s)\{f(s, x_1(s)) - f(s, x_2(s))\}ds \\ &+ \int_0^t S(t-s)\{Bu_1 - Bu_2\}ds \\ &+ \sum_{0 \le t_k \le T} S(t-s)\{I_k(x_1(t_k^-)) - I_k(x_2(t_k^-))\}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4}$$

By $Assumption(F1)$ and (2.10), we obtain

$$||\int_0^t S(t-s)\{f(s, x_1(s)) - f(s, x_2(s))\}ds||_{L^2(0,t;V)} \le C_2\sqrt{t}L_1||x_1 - x_2||_{L^2(0,t;V)}.$$

Moreover, by Lemma 2.5 of (2.11) and Theorem 3.1, we have

$$||\int_0^t S(t-s)\{Bu_1 - Bu_2\}ds||_{L^2(0,t;V)} \le C_2\sqrt{T}||Bu_1 - Bu_2||_{L^2(0,t;H)}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} &||\sum_{0 \le t_k \le t} S(t-s)\{I_k(x_1(t_k^-)) - I_k(x_2(t_k^-))\}||_{L^2(0,t;V)} \\ &\le (3\beta)^{-1/2}2(3\beta-1)^{-1}C_{1-\beta}C_3 t^{3\beta/2} \sum_{0 \le t_k \le t} L(I_k)||x_1(t_k^-) - x_2(t_k^-)||_{L^2(0,t;V)}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, from (3.4) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} &||x(t; f, u_1) - x(t; f, u_2)||_{L^2(0,T;V)} \\ &\le C_2\sqrt{T}||Bu_1 - Bu_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)} + C_2\sqrt{T}L_1||x_1 - x_2||_{L^2(0,T;V)} \\ &+ (3\beta)^{-1/2}2(3\beta-1)^{-1}C_{1-\beta}C_3 t^{3\beta/2} \sum_{0 \le t_k \le t} L(I_k)||x_1(t_k^-) - x_2(t_k^-)||_{L^2(0,T;V)}. \end{aligned}$$

$\square$

Theorem 3.1. *Under Assumptions (B),(F1), and (H) the system(4.1) is approximately controllable on* $[0, T]$.

Proof. The reachable set for the system(4.1) is given by

$$R_T = \{x(T; f, u) : u \in L^2(0, T; U)\}.$$

We will show that $D(A) \subset \overline{R_T(f)}$, i.e., for given $\varepsilon > 0$ and $\xi_T \in D(A)$, there exists $u \in L^2(0, T; U)$ such that

$$|\xi_T - x(T; f, u)| < \varepsilon, \tag{3.5}$$

where

$$x(T;,f,u) = S(T)x_0 + \int_0^T S(T-s)\{f(s,x(s,f,u)) + (Bu)(s)\}ds + \sum_{0<t_k<T} S(T-s)I_k(x(t_k^-)). \tag{3.6}$$

As $\xi_T \in D(A)$ there exists a $p \in L^2(0,T;H)$such that

$$\hat{S}p = \xi_T - S(T)x_0,$$

for instance, take $p(s) = (\xi_T - sA\xi_T) - S(s)x_0/T$. Let $u_1 \in L^2(0,T;U)$be arbitrary fixed. Since by Assumption (B) there exists $u_2 \in L^2(0,T;U)$ such that

$$|\hat{S}(p - f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_1))) - \hat{S}Bu_2| < \frac{\varepsilon}{4}, \tag{3.7}$$

it follows that

$$|\xi_T - S(T)x_0 - \hat{S}f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_1)) - \hat{S}Bu_2| < \frac{\varepsilon}{4}. \tag{3.8}$$

We can also choose $w_2 \in L^2(0,T;U)$ by Assumption (B) such that

$$|\hat{S}(f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_2)) - f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_1))) - \hat{S}Bw_2| < \frac{\varepsilon}{8} \tag{3.9}$$

$$||Bw_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)} \leq q||f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_2)) - f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_1))||_{L^2(0,T;H)}.$$

Choose a constant r_1 satisfying

$$||x(\cdot; f, u_1)||_{C([0,T];H)} \leq r_1, ||x(\cdot; f, u_2)||_{C([0,T];H)} \leq r_1.$$

Therefor, in view of Lemma 3.1 and Assumption (B)

$$\begin{aligned} ||Bw_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)} &\leq q||f(s, x(s; f, u_2)) - f(s, x(s; f, u_1))||_{L^2(0,T;H)} \\ &\leq qL_1||x(t; f, u_1) - x(t; f, u_2)||_{L^2(0,T;V)} \\ &\leq q\{1 - M_2\}^{-1}C_2L_1\sqrt{T}||Bu_1 - Bu_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.10}$$

Put $u_3 = u_2 - w_2$. We determine w_3 such that

$$|\hat{S}(f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_3)) - f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_2))) - \hat{S}Bw_3| < \frac{\varepsilon}{8}$$

$$||Bw_3||_{L^2(0,T;H)} \leq q||f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_3)) - f(\cdot, x(\cdot; f, u_2))||_{L^2(0,T;H)}.$$

Let r_2 be a constant satisfying $r_2 \geq r_1$ and

$$||x(\cdot; f, u + 3)||_{C([0,T];H)} \leq r_2.$$

Then, in a similar way to (3.10) we have

$$\begin{aligned}||Bw_3||_{L^2(0,T;H)} &\le q||f(s,x(s;f,u_3)) - f(s,x(s;f,u_2))||_{L^2(0,T;H)}\\ &\le qL_1||x(t;f,u_3) - x(t;f,u_2)||_{L^2(0.T;V)}\\ &\le q\{1-M_2\}^{-1}C_2L_1\sqrt{T}||Bu_2 - Bu_3||_{L^2(0,T;H)}\\ &\le (q\{1-M_2\}^{-1}C_2L_1\sqrt{T})^2||Bu_1 - Bu_2||_{L^2(0,T;H)}.\end{aligned}$$

By proceeding with this process and from

$$\begin{aligned}&||B(u_n - u_{n+1})||_{L^2(0,T;H)}\\ &\quad = ||Bw_n||_{L^2(0,T;H)} \le (q\{1-M_2\}^{-1}C_2L_1\sqrt{T})^{n-1}||B(u_2-u_1)||_{L^2(0,T;H)}.\end{aligned}$$

Here, nothing that Assumption (H) is equivalent to

$$q\{1-M_2\}^{-1}C_2L_1\sqrt{T} < 1,$$

it follows that there exists $u^* \in L^2(0,T;H)$ such that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} Bu_n = u^* \quad \text{in} \quad L^2(0,T;H).$$

From(3.8),(3.9) it follow that

$$\begin{aligned}&|\xi_T - S(T)x_0 - \hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_2)) - \hat{S}Bu_3|\\ &\quad = |\xi_T - S(T)x_0 - \hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_1)) - \hat{S}Bu_2 + \hat{S}Bw_2\\ &\quad - [\hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_2)) - \hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_1))]|\\ &\quad < (\frac{1}{2^2} + \frac{1}{2^3})\varepsilon.\end{aligned}$$

By choosing $w_n \in L^2(0,T;U)$ by Assumption (B), such that

$$|\hat{S}(f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_n)) - f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_{n-1}))) - \hat{S}Bw_n| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2^{n+1}}$$

putting $u_{n+1} = u_n - w_n$ we have

$$\begin{aligned}&|\xi_T - S(T)x_0 - \hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_n)) - \hat{S}Bu_{n+1}|\\ &\quad < (\frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^{n+1}})\varepsilon, \quad n = 1,2,....\end{aligned}$$

Therefor, for $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists integer N such that

$$|\hat{S}Bu_{N+1} - \hat{S}Bu_N| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2},$$

$$\begin{aligned}&|\xi_T - S(T)x_0 - \hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_N)) - \hat{S}Bu_N|\\ &\quad \le |\xi_T - S(T)x_0 - \hat{S}f(\cdot,x(\cdot;f,u_N)) - \hat{S}Bu_{N+1}| + |\hat{S}Bu_{N+1} - \hat{S}Bu_N|\\ &\quad \le (\frac{1}{2^2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{2^{N+1}})\varepsilon + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \le \varepsilon.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the system (3.1) is approximately controllable on $[0,T]$ as N tends to infinity. □

References

[1] H. Tanabe, *Equations of Evolution*, Pitman-London, 1979.

[2] V. Barbu, Analysis and Control of Nonlinear Infinite Dimensional Systems, Academic Press Limited, 1993.

[3] J. M. Jeong, Y. C. Kwun and J. Y. Park, *Approximate controllability for semilinear retarded functional differential equations*, J. Dynamics and Control Systems, 5(3) (1999), 329-346.

[4] Y. Kobayashi, T. Matsumoto and N. Tanaka, *Semigroups of locally Lipschitz operators associated with semilinear evolution equations*, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 330(2) (2007), 1042-1067.

[5] A. Pazy, Semigroups of Linear Operators and Applications to partial Differential Equations, Springer-Verlag Newyork, Inc. 1983.

[6] G. Webb, *Continuous nonlinear perturbations of linear accretive operator in Banach spaces*, J. Fun. Anal. 10 (1972), 191-203.

[7] J. jeong, Y. H. Kang *Controllability for trajectories of semilinear functional differential equations*, Bull. Korean Math. Soc. 55 (2018), 63-79.

[8] M. Benchohra and A. Ouahab, *Controllability results for functional semilinear differential inclusion in Frechet spaces*, Nonlinear Analysis 61(2005), 405-423.

[9] A. E. Bashirov and N. I. Mahmudov, *On concepts of controllability for deterministic and stochastic systems*, SIAM J. Control Optim. 37(1999), 1808-1821.

[10] L. Górniewicz, S. K. Ntouyas and D. O'Reran, *Controllability of semilinear differential equations and inclusions via semigroup theory in Banach spaces*, Rep. Math. Phys. 56(2005), 437-470.

[11] N. I. Mahmudov, *Approximate controllability of semilinear deterministic and stochastic evolution equations in abstract spaces*, SIAM J. Control Optim. 42(2006), 175-181.

[12] L. Wang, *Approximate controllability and approximate null controllability of semilinear systems*, Commun. Pure and Applied Analysis 5(2006), 953-962.

[13] R. F. Curtain and H. Zwart, An Introduction to Infinite Dimensional Linear Systems Theory, Springer-Velag, New-York, 1995.

[14] S. Nakagiri, Controllability and identifiability for linear time-delay systems in Hilbert space. Control theory of distributed parameter systems and applications, Lecture Notes in Control and Inform. Sci., 159, Springer, Berlin, 1991.

[15] R. F. Curtain and H. Zwart, *An Introduction to Infinite Dimensional Linear Systems Theory*, Springer-Velag, New-York, 1995.

[16] M. Yamamoto and J. Y. Park, *Controllability for parabolic equations with uniformly bounded nonlinear terms*, J. Optim. Theory Appl. 66(1990), 515-32.

[17] K. Naito, *Controllability of semilinear control systems dominated by the linear part*, SIAM J. Control Optim. 25 (1987), 715-722.

[18] N. Sukavanam and Nutan Kumar Tomar, *Approximate controllability of semilinear delay control system*, Nonlinear Func.Anal.Appl. 12(2007), 53-59.

[19] H. X. Zhou, *Approximate controllability for a class of semilinear abstract equations*, SIAM J. Control Optim. 21(1983), 551-565.

[20] L. Wang, *Approximate controllability for integrodifferential equations and multiple delays*, J. Optim. Theory Appl. 143(2009), 185-206.

[21] J. P. Dauer and N. I. Mahmudov, *Exact null controllability of semilinear integrodifferential systems in Hilbert spaces*, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 299(2004), 322-333.

[22] J. P. Aubin,*Un thèoréme de compacité*, C. R. Acad. Sci. 256(1963), 5042-5044.

[23] H. Triebel, Interpolation Theory, Function Spaces, Differential Operators, North-Holland, 1978.

[24] G. Di Blasio, K. Kunisch and E. Sinestrari, L^2-*regularity for parabolic partial integrodifferential equations with delay in the highest-order derivatives*, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 102 (1984), 38-57.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Homoclinic solutions for a class of difference equations with asymptotically linear nonlinearity

Ali Mai*, Guowei Sun

Department of Mathematics and information technology, Yuncheng University

Shanxi, Yuncheng 044000, China

Abstract

A class of difference equations with asymptotically linear nonlinearity are considered in this paper. The existence of homoclinic solutions of the equations are obtained by using generalized saddle point theorem.

Key words: Generalized saddle point theorem; Difference equations; $(PS)_c$ sequence; Homoclinic solutions.

1 Introduction

In this paper, we consider the following difference equation

$$Lu_n - \omega u_n = f_n(u_n), \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}, \tag{1.1}$$

where

$$Lu_n = a_n u_{n+1} + a_{n-1}u_{n-1} + b_n u_n$$

is a Jacobi operator ([14]), here $\{a_n\}$ and $\{b_n\}$ are real valued T-periodic sequences, and T is a positive integer.

As in the literature, a solution $u = \{u_n\}$ of (1.1) is homoclinic solution if

$$\lim_{|n|\to\infty} u_n = 0. \tag{1.2}$$

This problem appears in the following discrete nonlinear schrödinger equation

$$i\dot{\psi}_n = -\Delta\psi_n + v_n\psi_n - f_n(\psi_n), \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}, \tag{1.3}$$

*Corresponding author. E-mail address: maialiy@126.com

1

where

$$\Delta\psi_n = \psi_{n+1} + \psi_{n-1} - 2\psi_n$$

is the discrete one-dimension Laplacian. And the potential $V = \{v_n\}$ is real valued T-periodic sequences, i.e., $v_{n+T} = v_n$, for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Moreover, we assume that the nonlinearity $f_n(u)$ is gauge invariant, i.e.,

$$f_n(e^{i\theta}u) = e^{i\theta} f_n(u), \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R}.$$

We consider special solutions of (1.3)

$$\psi_n = u_n e^{-i\omega t},$$

where $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$ is the temporal frequency and $\{u_n\}$ is a real valued sequence such that

$$\lim_{|n|\to\infty} \psi_n = 0.$$

Such solutions are called solitons. Inserting the soliton Ansatz into (1.3), then

$$-\Delta u_n + v_n u_n - \omega u_n = f_n(u_n), \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}, \tag{1.4}$$

and

$$\lim_{|n|\to\infty} u_n = 0 \tag{1.5}$$

holds. Therefore, in order to looking for solitons of equation (1.3), we just need to get the homoclinic solutions of equation (1.4), which is a special case of (1.1) with $a_n \equiv -1$ and $b_n = 2 + v_n$.

It is well known that the operator L is a bounded and self-adjoint operator in l^2. Its spectrum $\sigma(L)$ is a union of a finite number of closed intervals and the complement $\mathbb{R}\backslash\sigma(L)$ consists of a finite number of open intervals called spectral gaps. Two of them are semi-infinite (see [14]). In particular, $T = 1$, then finite gaps do not exist. In general, finite gaps do exist. The most interesting case of equation (1.1) is when the frequency ω belongs to a finite gap. The solitons of (1.3) with the temporal frequency ω belonging to a spectral gap, in particular to a finite gap are important. Such solitons are called gap solitons. Fix any finite spectral gap and denote it by (α, β).

Discrete nonlinear schrödinger equation (DNLS) is one of the most important inherently discrete models, It appears in a great variety of applications, such as nonlinear optics, solid state, condensed matter physics and biology (see [1–3, 5, 13] and reference therein). It also has been successfully applied to the modeling of localized pulse propagation in optical fibers and wave guides, to the study of energy relaxation in solids, to the behavior of amorphous material, to the modeling of self-trapping of vibrational energy in proteins or studies related to the denaturation of the DNA double strand ([6, 7, 18]). In the past decade, the periodic DNLS equations have been considered in the physics literature ([15]). For example, results

2

on numerical simulation of gap solitons in a particular periodic DNLS equation are obtained in [4].

With the development of variational techniques, solitons of the periodic DNLS equations have become a hot topic. The existence of solitons for the periodic DNLS equations with superlinear nonlinearity (see [10, 11] and reference therein) and with saturable nonlinearity ([16, 17]) have been studied, respectively. Discrete soliton is a kind of homoclinic solutions. In this paper, we employ generalized saddle point theorem developed by Liu and Shen in [9] and obtain homoclinic solutions of equation (1.1).

The organization of this paper is as follows. In Section 2, we introduce the functional, and its critical points are solutions of the problem and remind a critical point theorem, then present the main result. The detailed proofs of the main result is given in Section 3.

2 Preliminaries and main results

Throughout this paper, we assume that

(V) $\omega \notin \sigma(L)$ and $\omega \in (\alpha, \beta)$.

(f_1) $f_n \in C(\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R})$, $f_n(u)u \geq 0$ for all $u \in \mathbb{R}$.

(f_2) Assume that f_n is asymptotically linear at infinity, i.e.,

$$\lim_{|u|\to\infty} \frac{f_n(u)}{u} = 0. \tag{2.1}$$

(f_3) $f_n(u) = o(u)$ as $u \to 0$.

To study the homoclinic solutions, we consider the real sequence spaces

$$l^p = \left\{ u = \{u_n\}_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} : \forall\, n \in \mathbb{Z}, u_n \in \mathbb{R}, \|u\|_{l^p} = \left(\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} |u_n|^p\right)^{\frac{1}{p}} < \infty \right\}. \tag{2.2}$$

Between l^p spaces the following elementary embedding holds,

$$l^q \subset l^p, \quad \|u\|_{l^p} \leq \|u\|_{l^q}, \quad 1 \leq q \leq p \leq \infty. \tag{2.3}$$

To state our results, we fix some notation. Let

$$A = L - \omega \ \text{ and } \ E = l^2(\mathbb{Z}).$$

Consider the functional J defined on E by

$$J(u) = \frac{1}{2}\ (Au, u) - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} F_n(u_n), \tag{2.4}$$

3

where $(\cdot,\cdot)$ is the inner product in E, $\|\cdot\|$ is the corresponding norm in E. $F_n(u)$ is the primitive function of $f_n(u)$, *i.e.*,

$$F_n(u)=\int_0^u f_n(s)ds.$$

Standard arguments show that the functional $J\in C^1(E,\mathbb{R})$ and equation (1.1) is easily recognized as the corresponding Euler-Lagrange equation for J. Thus, critical points of J are solutions of equation (1.1).

It is easy to get the derivative of J,

$$(J'(u),v)=(Au,v)_E-\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} f_n(u_n)v_n,\quad \forall\, v\in E. \tag{2.5}$$

By (V), then we have the orthogonal decomposition $E=E^+\oplus E^-$ corresponding to the spectral decomposition of A with respect to the positive and negative part of the spectrum, and

$$(Au,u)_E\geq(\beta-\omega)\|u\|_E^2,\qquad u\in E^+,$$

$$(Au,u)_E\leq(\alpha-\omega)\|u\|_E^2,\qquad u\in E^-.$$

For any $u,v\in E$, letting $u=u^++u^-$ with $u^\pm\in E^\pm$ and $v=v^++v^-$ with $v^\pm\in E^\pm$, we can define an equivalent inner product $(\cdot,\cdot)$ and the corresponding norm $\|\cdot\|$ on E by

$$(u,v)=(Au^+,v^+)_E-(Au^-,v^-)_E \text{ and } \|u\|=(u,u)^{\frac{1}{2}},$$

respectively. So J can be rewritten as

$$J(u)=\frac{1}{2}\|u^+\|^2-\frac{1}{2}\|u^-\|^2-\sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}}F_n(u_n)\equiv\frac{1}{2}\|u^+\|^2-\frac{1}{2}\|u^-\|^2-I(u). \tag{2.6}$$

Note that if ω lies in a finite spectral gap, then $\dim E^-=\infty$ and the problem (1.1) and (1.2) is strongly indefinite. Now our main result can be stated as the following:

Theorem 2.1. *Suppose that conditions (V), $(f_1)-(f_3)$ are satisfied, then equation (1.1) at least has one solution.*

Let $R>0$. Set

$$M=\{u\in E^-:\|u\|\leq R\}.$$

Let $\{e_k\}$ be a total orthonormal sequence in E^-, we define a norm on E^- by

$$\|u\|_{E^-}=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2^{k+1}}|<u,e_k>|.$$

Let $P_\pm : E \to E^\pm$ be the orthogonal projection of E onto $E^\pm$. We denote by τ the topology on E generated by the norm

$$\|u\|_\tau = \max\left(\|P_+u\|, \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{k+1}} | < P_-u, e_k > |\right).$$

Remark 2.1. Note that if $u_n \xrightarrow{\tau} u$, then $P_+u_n \to P_+u$ and $P_-u_n \rightharpoonup P_-u$.

Definition 2.1. Let $J \in C^1(E)$, we say J is $\tau-$upper semicontinuous if $u_n \xrightarrow{\tau} u$ implies

$$J(u) \geq \overline{\lim_{n\to\infty}} J(u_n).$$

Definition 2.2. Let $J \in C^1(E)$, we say J' is weakly sequentially continuous, if $u_n \rightharpoonup u$ implies $J'(u_n) \to J'(u_n)$, as $n \to \infty$.

The purpose of this paper is to use the generalized saddle point theorem to solve some strongly indefinite problems with asymptotically linear nonlinearity. The following lemma is the generalized saddle point theorem taken from [9] and will play an important role in the proofs of our main results.

Lemma 2.1. *Assume that $J \in C^1(E, \mathbb{R})$ is $\tau-$upper semicontinuous and J' is weakly sequentially continuous. If*

$$b := \inf_{E^+} J > \sup_{\partial M} J, \quad d = \sup_{M} J < \infty,$$

then for some $c \in [b, d]$, there is a sequence $\{u_n\} \subset E$ such that

$$J(u_n) \to c \text{ and } J'(u_n) \to 0 \textit{ as } n \to \infty. \tag{2.7}$$

Such a sequence is called a Palais-Smale sequence on the level c, or a $(PS)_c$ sequence.

3 Proofs of main results

Lemma 3.1. *Assume that (V) and $(f_1) - (f_3)$ are satisfied. Then J is $\tau-$upper semicontinuous, and J' is weakly sequentially continuous.*

Proof. Let $u^{(k)} \xrightarrow{\tau} u$ and $c = \overline{\lim_{k\to\infty}} J(u^{(k)})$. Then there is a subsequence, still denoted by $\{u^{(k)}\}$ such that $J(u^{(k)}) \to c$. By Remark 2.1 we have

$$u^{(k)+} \to u^+ \quad \text{and} \quad u^{(k)-} \rightharpoonup u^-, \quad \text{as} \quad k \to \infty. \tag{3.1}$$

Passing to a subsequence if necessary, we have $u_n^{(k)} \to u_n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, as $k \to \infty$, hence, $F_n(u_n^{(k)}) \to F_n(u_n)$. Since $F_n(u^{(k)}) \geq 0$, using the Fatou lemma we have

$$I(u) = \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} \lim_{k\to\infty} F_n(u_n^{(k)}) \leq \underline{\lim_{k\to\infty}} \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} F_n(u_n^{(k)}) = \underline{\lim_{k\to\infty}} I(u^{(k)}). \tag{3.2}$$

Combining (3.1) and (3.2), we have

$$\begin{aligned} -J(u) &= \frac{\|u^-\|^2}{2} - \frac{\|u^+\|^2}{2} + I(u) \\ &\leq \lim_{k\to\infty}\left(\frac{\|u^{(k)-}\|^2}{2} - \frac{\|u^{(k)+}\|^2}{2} + I(u^{(k)})\right) \\ &= \lim_{k\to\infty}\left(-J(u^{(k)})\right) = -c. \end{aligned}$$

So $J(u) \geq c$ and J is $\tau-$upper semicontinuous.

Finally, we show that J' is weakly sequentially continuous. Let $u^{(k)} \rightharpoonup u$ in E, we have that $u_n^{(k)} \to u_n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, as $k \to \infty$. and there exists $M > 0$ such that $\|u^{(k)}\| \leq M$ and $\|u\| \leq M$. By (f_3), there exists constant C_0 such that $|f_n(u)| \leq C_0|u|$ for $|u| \leq M$.

For any $v \in E$ fix $0 < N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\sum_{|n|>N} |v_n|^2 < \frac{\varepsilon^2}{16C_0^2M^2}$. Therefore, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |I'(u^{(k)})v - I'(u)v| &\leq |\sum_{n=-N}^{N}(f_n(u_n^{(k)}) - f_n(u_n))v_n| + |\sum_{|n|>N}(f_n(u_n^{(k)}) - f_n(u_n))v_n| \\ &\leq |\sum_{n=-N}^{N}(f_n(u_n^{(k)}) - f_n(u_n))v_n| + C_0(\|u^{(k)}\| + \|u\|)\left(\sum_{|n|>N}|v_n|^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq |\sum_{n=-N}^{N}(f_n(u_n^{(k)}) - f_n(u_n))v_n| + \frac{\varepsilon}{2}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that $f_n(u_n^{(k)}) \to f_n(u_n)$, as $k \to \infty$, then there exists k_0 such that for $k \geq k_0$,

$$|\sum_{n=-N}^{N}(f_n(u_n^{(k)}) - f_n(u_n))v_n| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}.$$

So $|I'(u^{(k)})v - I'(u)v| < \varepsilon$, for all $k \geq k_0$. By the definition of J', then J' is weakly sequentially continuous. $\square$

Proof of Theorem 2.1.

By (f_2) and (f_3), for any $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $C_\varepsilon > 0$ such that

$$|f_n(u)| \leq C_\varepsilon|u|, \quad |F_n(u)| \leq C_\varepsilon|u|^2.$$

For $u \in E^+$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} J(u) &= \frac{1}{2}\|u\|^2 - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} F_n(u_n) \\ &\geq \frac{1}{2}\|u\|^2 - C_\varepsilon\|u\|^2 \\ &= (\frac{1}{2} - C_\varepsilon)\|u\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

So $\inf_{E^+} J > -\infty$.

For $u \in E^-$, since $F(u) \geq 0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} J(u) &= -\frac{1}{2}\|u\|^2 - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} F_n(u_n) \\ &\leq -\frac{1}{2}\|u\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

For R large enough, we have

$$\inf_{E^+} J > \sup_{\partial M} J, \quad \sup_M J < \infty,$$

where $M = \{u \in E^- : \|u\| \leq R\}$.

By Lemma 2.1, for some $c \in \mathbb{R}$, there is a sequence $\{u^{(k)}\}$ such that

$$J(u^{(k)}) \to c \text{ and } J'(u^{(k)}) \to 0 \ as \ k \to \infty.$$

Let $\widetilde{u}^{(k)} = u^{(k)+} - u^{(k)-}$, then $\|\widetilde{u}^{(k)}\| = \|u^{(k)}\|$ and

$$\begin{aligned} \|u^{(k)}\| &= \|\widetilde{u}^{(k)}\| \geq (J'(u^{(k)}), \widetilde{u}^{(k)}) \\ &= \|u^{(k)+}\|^2 + \|u^{(k)-}\|^2 - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} f_n(u_n^{(k)})\widetilde{u}_n^{(k)} \\ &\geq \|u^{(k)}\|^2 - \sum_{n\in\mathbb{Z}} C_\varepsilon |u_n^{(k)}|(|u_n^{(k)+}| + |u_n^{(k)-}|) \\ &\geq \|u^{(k)}\|^2 - C_\varepsilon\|u^{(k)}\|\|u^{(k)+}\| - C_\varepsilon\|u^{(k)}\|\|u^{(k)-}\| \\ &= \|u^{(k)}\|^2 - C_\varepsilon\|u^{(k)}\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

It implies $\{u^{(k)}\}$ is bounded.

Next we may extract a subsequence, still denoted by $\{u^{(k)}\}$, such that $u^{(k)} \rightharpoonup u$ and $u_n^{(k)} \to u_n$ for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Moreover, we have

$$(J'(u), v) = \lim_{k\to\infty} (J'(u^{(k)}), v) = 0, \ \forall v \in E,$$

so $J'(u) = 0$ and u is a homoclinic solution of (1.1). □

Acknowledgments

This work is Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China(11526183), the Natural Science Foundation of Shanxi Province (2015021015) and Foundation of Yuncheng University(YQ-2017003, YQ-2014011).

References

[1] A. Davydov, The theory of contraction of proteins under their excitation, *J. Theor. Biol.* 38 (1973) 559-569.

[2] S. Flach, A. Gorbach, Discrete breakers-Advances in theory and applications, *Phys. Rep.* 467 (2008) 1-116.

[3] S. Flash, C. Willis, Discrete breathers, *Phys. Rep.* 295 (1998) 181-264.

[4] A. V. Gorbach, M. Johansson, Gap and out-gap breathers in a binary modulated discrete nonlinear Schrödinger model, *Eur. Phys. J. D* 29 (2004) 77-93.

[5] D. Henning, G. P. Tsironis, Wave transmission in nonlinear lattics, *Phys. Rep.* 307 (1999) 333-432.

[6] P. G. Kevrekidis, K. ϕ. Rasmussen, A. R. Bishop, The discrete nonlinear Schrödinger equation: a survey of recent results, *Int. J. Mod. Phys. B* 15 (2001) 2883-2900.

[7] Y. S. Kivshar, G. P. Agrawal, Optical Solitons: From Fibers to Photonic Crystals, Academic Press, San Diego, 2003.

[8] G. Li, A. Szulkin, An asymptotically periodic Schrödinger equation with indefinite linear part, *Commun. Contemp. Math.* 4 (2002) 763-776.

[9] S. Liu, Z. Shen, Generalized saddle point theorem and asymptotically linear problems with periodic potential, *Nonlinear Anal.* 86 (2013):52-57.

[10] A. Mai, G. Sun, Ground state solutions for second order nonlinear p-Laplacian difference equations with periodic coefficients, *J. Comput. Anal. Appl.*,2017, 22(7): 1288-1297.

[11] A. Mai, Z. Zhou, Discrete solitons for periodic discrete nonlinear Schrödinger equations, *Appl. Math. Comput.* 222(2013): 34-41.

[12] A. Pankov, N. Zakharchenko, On some discrete variational problems, *Acta. Appl. Math.* 65 (2000) 295-303.

[13] W. Su, J. Schieffer, A. Heeger, Solitons in polyacetylene, *Phys. Rev. Lett.* 42 (1979) 1698-1701.

[14] G. Teschl, Jacobi operators and completely integrable nonlinear lattices, *Mathematical Surveys and Monographs*, vol. 72, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, 2000.

[15] A. A. Sukhorukov, Y. S. Kivshar, Generation and stability of discrete gap solitons, *Opt. Lett.* 28 (2003) 2345-2347.

[16] H. Shi, Gap solitons in periodic discrete Schrödinger equations with nonlinearity, Acta Appl. Math. 109 (2010) 1065-1075.

[17] H. Shi, H. Zhang, Existence of gap solitons in periodic discrete nonlinear Schrödinger equations, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 361 (2010) 411-419.

[18] M. Weintein, Excitation thresholds for nonlinear localized modes on lattices, *Nonlinearity* 12 (1999) 673-691.

[19] M. Willem, Minimax Theorems, Birkhäuser, Boston, 1996.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

APPROXIMATION OF ALMOST CAUCHY'S POINTS BY CAUCHY'S POINTS

GWANG HUI KIM AND HWAN-YONG SHIN

Abstract. In this paper, we investigate Hyers–Ulam stability of Cauchy's mean value points which is a extended and generalized version of I. R. Peter and D. Popa's theorem [10] and then, as applications, we obtain Hyers-Ulam stability results of Lagrange's mean value points which refine the result of P. Găvruţă, J. Huang and Y. Li [5].

1. Introduction

The concept of Hyers–Ulam stability was raised by S. M. Ulam [11] in 1940. We are given a group G and a metric group G' with metric $d(\cdot,\cdot)$. Given $\varepsilon > 0$, does there exist a $\delta > 0$ such that if $f : G \to G'$ satisfies $d(f(xy), f(x)f(y)) < \delta$ for all $x, y \in G$, then a homomorphism $h : G \to G'$ exists with $d(f(x), h(x)) < \varepsilon$ for all $x \in G$? Ulam's question was partially solved by D. H. Hyers [6] in the case of approximately additive functions and when the groups in the question are Banach spaces. Due to the question of Ulam and the answer of Hyers, the stability of functional equations is called after their names. For more information of Hyers–Ulam stability, we can refer to [1, 2].

A similar problem of Ulam's question can be formulated for the mean value points : "Assume that a function f satisfies a mean value theorem with a point η. If ξ is a point near to η, does there exists a function g near to f satisfying the same mean value theorem with the point ξ?" [10].

It seems that the first result to the previous question was given by D. H. Hyers and S. M. Ulam [7] in the case of differential expressions.

Theorem 1.1. (*D. H. Hyers, S. M. Ulam, 1954,* [7]) *Let $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ be n-times differentiable in a neighborhood N of a point η. Suppose that $f^{(n)}(\eta) = 0$ and $f^{(n)}(x)$ changes sign at η. Then, for all $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for every function $g : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ which is n-times differentiable in N and satisfies $|f(x) - g(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N$, there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that $g^{(n)}(\xi) = 0$ and $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.*

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* 39B52, 39B82, 54C65.

Key words and phrases. mean value theorem, Cauchy's mean value points, Lagrange's mean value points, Hyers–Ulam stability.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

In 2003, M. Das, T. Riedel and P. K. Sahoo [3] proved the stability problem for Flett's mean value points by using Theorem 1.1. Subsequently, some authors applied the idean from [3] to prove the Hyers–Ulam stability of various mean value points [5, 8, 9, 10]. Especially, P. Găvruţă, S.-M. Jung and Y. Li [5] proved the following stability result of Lagrange's mean value points which is a point η of a differentiable function $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ satisfying $\frac{f(b)-f(a)}{b-a} = f'(\eta)$.

Theorem 1.2. (*P. Găvruţă, S.-M. Jung, Y. Li, 2010,* [5]) *Let a, b, η be real numbers satisfying $a < \eta < b$. Assume that $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is a twice continuously differentiable function and η is the unique Lagrange's mean value point of f in an open interval (a, b) and moreover that $f''(\eta) \neq 0$. Suppose $g : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ is a differentiable function. Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x) - g(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then there is a Lagrange's mean value point $\xi \in (a, b)$ of g with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.*

Hereafter, Theorem 1.2 was generalized by I. R. Peter and D. Popa [10] by proving the stability of Cauchy's mean value points which is a point η of two differentiable functions $f, g : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ satisfying

$$(f(b) - f(a))g'(\eta) - (g(b) - g(a))f'(\eta) = 0.$$

Let I be an open interval which contains the interval (a, b).

Theorem 1.3. (*I. R. Peter, D. Popa, 2013,* [10]) *Assume that $f, g : I \to \mathbb{R}$ are continuously differentiable functions, η is the unique Cauchy's mean value point of the pair (f, g) in I and f, g are twice continuously differentiable in a neighborhood of η, satisfying*

$$f''(\eta)(g(b) - g(a)) - g''(\eta)(f(b) - f(a)) \neq 0.$$

Then, for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists $\delta > 0$ such that, if $f_1, g_1 : (a, b) \to \mathbb{R}$ are continuously differentiable functions with the property that $|f(x) - f_1(x)| < \delta$ and $|g(x) - g_1(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in [a, b]$ there exists a Cauchy mean value point $\xi \in (a, b)$ of (f_1, g_1) with $|\eta - \xi| < \varepsilon$.

In this paper, we prove Hyers–Ulam stability of Cauchy's mean value points which is a extended and generalized version of Theorem 1.3 and then, as applications, we obtain the stability results of Lagrange's mean value points which refine Theorem 1.2.

2. Hyers–Ulam Stability of Cauchy's mean value points

We now present a main theorem, which is a Hyers–Ulam stability of Cauchy's mean value points for real-valued differentiable functions on $[a, b]$.

Theorem 2.1. *Let $f, g, f_1, g_1 : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be countinuously differentiable functions and η be a Cauchy's mean value point of the pair (f, g) in the interval (a, b) and $N \subseteq (a, b)$ be a neighborhood of η. Suppose the following control function*

$$(f(b) - f(a))g'(x) - (g(b) - g(a))f'(x)$$

changes sign at η. Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x)-f_1(x)| < \delta$ and $|g(x) - g_1(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N \cup \{a, b\}$, then there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that ξ is a Cauchy's mean value point of (f_1, g_1) with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

Proof. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given and $N \subseteq (a, b)$ be any neighborhood of η. Consider the auxiliary function $G_{f,g}(x) : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ corresponding to (f, g) defined by

$$G_{f,g}(x) = (f(b) - f(a))g(x) - (g(b) - g(a))f(x)$$

for all $x \in [a, b]$. Evidently $G_{f,g}(x)$ is continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on $[a, b]$. Further, we have

$$G'_{f,g}(x) = (f(b) - f(a))g'(x) - (g(b) - g(a))f'(x), \quad x \in [a, b].$$

Since η is the Cauchy's mean value point of (f, g), we get $G'_{f,g}(\eta) = 0$. Thus it follows from the assumption that there exists a neighborhood $(\eta - r, \eta + r) \subseteq N$ of η such that $G'_{f,g}(x)$ changes sign at η in $(\eta - r, \eta + r) \subseteq N$ for some $r > 0$ with $\eta - r > a$. Then it follows from Theorem 1.1 that there exists a $\overline{\delta} > 0$ such that for any differentiable function H on $[a, b]$ with $|H(x)-G_{f,g}(x)| < \overline{\delta}$ for x in $(\eta-r, \eta+r)$, there exists a point $\zeta \in (\eta-r, \eta+r)$ satisfying $H'(\zeta) = 0$ and $|\zeta - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

For a continuous function $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ define

$$M_f := \max\{|f(x)| : x \in [a, b]\}$$

and analogously M_g. Define $G_{f_1,g_1}(x) : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be the corresponding auxiliary function defined as

$$G_{f_1,g_1}(x) = (f_1(b) - f_1(a))g_1(x) - (g_1(b) - g_1(a))f_1(x)$$

for all $x \in [a, b]$.

For some fixed $\lambda > 0$, let

$$\delta := \min\Big\{\frac{\overline{\delta}}{4M_f + 4M_g + 4\lambda}, \lambda\Big\}.$$

and let $f_1, g_1 : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be any differentiable functions satisfying $|f(x) - f_1(x)| < \delta$ and $|g(x)-g_1(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N\cup\{a, b\}$. Then one can easy to see that $G_{f_1,g_1}(x)$ is differentiable

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

in N. And it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}|f_1(b)-f_1(a)| &\leq |f_1(b)-f(b)|+|f(b)-f(a)|+|f(a)-f_1(a)| \\ &\leq 2\lambda+2M_f.\end{aligned}$$

By the same reason we obtain that

$$|g_1(b)-g_1(a)| \leq 2\lambda+2M_g.$$

These yield that

$$\begin{aligned}|G_{f,g}(x)-G_{f_1,g_1}(x)| &= |(f(b)-f(a))g(x)-(g(b)-g(a))f(x) \\ &\quad -(f_1(b)-f_1(a))g_1(x)+(g_1(b)-g_1(a))f_1(x)| \\ &= |(f(b)-f(a))g(x)-(f_1(b)-f_1(a))g(x) \\ &\quad +(f_1(b)-f_1(a))g(x)-(f_1(b)-f_1(a))g_1(x) \\ &\quad +(g_1(b)-g_1(a))f_1(x)-(g_1(b)-g_1(a))f(x) \\ &\quad +(g_1(b)-g_1(a))f(x)-(g(b)-g(a))f(x)| \\ &\leq (|f(b)-f_1(b)|+|f(a)-f_1(a)|)|g(x)| \\ &\quad +|f_1(b)-f_1(a)|\cdot|g(x)-g_1(x)| \\ &\quad +|g_1(b)-g_1(a)|\cdot|f_1(x)-f(x)| \\ &\quad +(|g_1(b)-g(b)|+|g_1(a)-g(a)|)|f(x)| \\ &\leq (2M_g+|f_1(b)-f_1(a)|+|g_1(b)-g_1(a)|+2M_f)\delta \\ &\leq (4M_f+4M_g+4\lambda)\delta \\ &\leq \bar{\delta}\end{aligned}$$

for all $x \in (\eta-r,\eta+r) \subseteq N$. Hence, there exists a point $\xi \in (\eta-r,\eta+r)$ such that $G'_{f_1,g_1}(\xi)=0$ and $|\xi-\eta|<\varepsilon$. We note that $G'_{f_1,g_1}(\xi)=0$ implies

$$(f_1(b)-f_1(a))g_1'(\xi)-(g_1(b)-g_1(a))f_1'(\xi)=0.$$

Hence, the point ξ is a Cauchy's mean value point of (f_1,g_1) and the proof is complete. □

The following corollary is a refined result of Theorem 1.3.

Corollary 2.2. *Let $f,g,f_1,g_1:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ be countinuously differentiable functions and η be a Cauchy's mean value point of the pair (f,g) in the interval (a,b) and $N\subseteq(a,b)$ be a neighborhood of η. Suppose either η is unique Cauchy's mean value point of (f,g) or f, g have second derivative at η such that*

$$[f(b)-f(a)]g''(\eta) \neq [g(b)-g(a)]f''(\eta). \tag{2.1}$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x)-f_1(x)| < \delta$ and $|g(x)-g_1(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N \cup \{a, b\}$, then there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that ξ is a Cauchy's mean value point of (f_1, g_1) with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

Proof. Let $G_{f,g} : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be defined as

$$G_{f,g}(x) = (f(b) - f(a))(g(x) - g(a)) - (g(b) - g(a))(f(x) - f(a))$$

for all $x \in [a, b]$. Suppose η is a unique Cauchy's mean value point of (f, g). Then we obtain that $G_{f,g}(a) = G_{f,g}(b)$ and $\eta \in (a, b)$ is a unique point such that $G'_{f,g}(\eta) = 0$. These yield that $G'_{f,g}(x)$ changes sign at η.

If f and g have second derivative and satisfy (2.1), we have $G''_{f,g}(\eta) \neq 0$. Thus associating this fact and $G'_{f,g}(\eta) = 0$, we get $G'_{f,g}(x)$ changes sign at η.

Rewriting the fact $G_{f,g}$ changes sign at η, we obtain

$$(f(b) - f(a))g'(x) - (g(b) - g(a))f'(x)$$

changes sign at η. By applying Theorem 2.1, we get the desired result. □

If we take $f_1, g_1 : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ by $f_1 := h$ and $g_1 := g$ in Theorem 2.1 and Corollary 2.2, then we get the following two corollaries.

Corollary 2.3. *Let $f, g, h : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable and η be a Cauchy's mean value point of the pair (f, g) in the interval (a, b) and $N \subseteq (a, b)$ be a neighborhood of η. Suppose the following control function*

$$(f(b) - f(a))g'(x) - (g(b) - g(a))f'(x)$$

changes sign at η. Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x) - h(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N \cup \{a, b\}$, then there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that ξ is a Cauchy's mean value point of (g, h) with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

Corollary 2.4. *Let $f, g, h : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be countinuously differentiable functions and η be a Cauchy's mean value point of the pair (f, g) in the interval (a, b) and $N \subseteq (a, b)$ be a neighborhood of η. Suppose either η is a unique Cauchy's mean value point of (f, g) or f, g have second derivative at η such that*

$$(f(b) - f(a))g''(\eta) \neq (g(b) - g(a))f''(\eta).$$

Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x)-h(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N\cup\{a, b\}$, then there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that ξ is a Cauchy's mean value point of (g, h) with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

The following theorem is another type of Hyers-Ulam stability for Cauchy's mean value points.

Theorem 2.5. *Let a, b, ξ be real numbers satisfying $a < \xi < b$. Assume that $f, g : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ are countinuously differentiable functions such that*

$$g'(x), \frac{f'(x)g''(x) - f''(x)g'(x)}{g'(x)^2} \neq 0$$

for all $x \in [a, b]$. If

$$\Big|\frac{f'(\xi)}{g'(\xi)} - \frac{f(b) - f(a))}{g(b) - g(a)}\Big| \leq \varepsilon \tag{2.2}$$

for some $\varepsilon > 0$, then there exists a Cauchy's mean value point η of (f, g) on (a, b) satisfying

$$|\xi - \eta| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{min_{x\in[a,b]}\Big|\frac{f'(x)g''(x)-f''(x)g'(x)}{g'(x)^2}\Big|}.$$

Proof. Due to Cauchy's mean value theorem, there exists a point $\eta \in (a, b)$ such that

$$\frac{f'(\eta)}{g'(\eta)} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{g(b) - g(a)}.$$

Hence it follows from (2.2) that

$$\Big|\frac{f'(\xi)}{g'(\xi)} - \frac{f'(\eta)}{g'(\eta)}\Big| \leq \varepsilon.$$

If $\xi = \eta$ then the proof is clear. Otherwise, we assume that $a < \eta < \xi < b$. Since f and g have second derivative on $[a, b]$, by Lagrange's mean value theorem, there exists a point $\xi_0 \in (\eta, \xi)$ such that

$$\Big|(\xi - \eta)\Big(\frac{f'(\xi_0)g''(\xi_0) - f''(\xi_0)g'(\xi_0)}{g'(\xi_0)^2}\Big)\Big| = \Big|\frac{f'(\eta)}{g'(\eta)} - \frac{f'(\xi)}{g'(\xi)}\Big|.$$

Since f', f'', g', g'' are continuous on $[a, b]$, we obtain

$$|\xi - \eta| = \Big|\frac{\frac{f'(\eta)}{g'(\eta)} - \frac{f'(\xi)}{g'(\xi)}}{\frac{f'(\xi_0)g''(\xi_0)-f''(\xi_0)g'(\xi_0)}{g'(\xi_0)^2}}\Big| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{min_{x\in[a,b]}\Big|\frac{f'(x)g''(x)-f''(x)g'(x)}{g'(x)^2}\Big|},$$

which complete the proof. □

3. Applications to Lagrange's mean value points

In this section, we obtain stability results of Lagrange's mean value points for the differentiable functions on $[a, b]$.

Corollary 3.1. *Let $f, g : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be countinuously differentiable functions and η be a Lagrange's mean value point of f in (a, b) and $N \subseteq (a, b)$ be a neighborhood of η. Suppose the following control function*

$$f(b) - f(a) - (b - a)f'(x)$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

changes sign at η. Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x) - g(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N \cup \{a, b\}$ there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that ξ is a Lagrange's mean value point of g with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

Proof. Consider the auxiliary function $G_f(x) : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ corresponding to f defined by

$$G_f(x) = (f(b) - f(a))x - f(x)(b - a)$$

for all $x \in [a, b]$. Then the proof goes through the same way as that of Theorem 2.1. $\square$

Example 3.2. Let $f : [-2\pi, 2\pi] \to \mathbb{R}$ be defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x - 1, & \text{if} \quad x \leq 0, \\ 1 - \cos x, & \text{if} \quad x > 0. \end{cases}$$

It is obvious to see that there exist three Lagrange's mean value points $-\pi, 0, \pi$ of f. Let N_i be a neighborhood of $(-1)^i\pi$ for each $i = 1, 2$. We can easily check that $f(2\pi) - f(-2\pi) - (2\pi - (-2\pi))f'(x) = -4\pi f'(x)$ changes sign at $\pm\pi$. Therefore, by Corollary 3.1, for each $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that for every differentiable function g satisfying $|f(x) - g(x)| < \delta$ for all $x \in N_i \cup \{\pm 2\pi\}$ then there exists a point $\xi_i \in N_i$ such that ξ_i is a Lagrange's mean value point of g and $|\xi_i - (-1)^i\pi| < \varepsilon$. However, $f(2\pi) - f(-2\pi) - (2\pi - (-2\pi))f'(x) = -4\pi f'(x)$ does not change sign at 0, and so we cannot apply Corollary 3.1 for the function f at the Lagrange's mean value point 0.

Let $N := (-\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{4})$ and $\delta > 0$ be given. And let $g : [-2\pi, 2\pi] \to \mathbb{R}$ be defined by

$$g(x) := f(x) + \frac{\delta}{1024}(x^3 - 4\pi^2 x)$$

for all $x \in [-2\pi, 2\pi]$. Then

$$|f(x) - g(x)| = \frac{\delta}{1024}|x^3 - 4\pi^2 x| < \frac{\delta}{1024}((2\pi)^3 + 4\pi^2(2\pi)) < \delta$$

for all $x \in N \cup \{\pm 2\pi\}$. But, for all $x \in N$, the following inequlity holds

$$\frac{g(2\pi) - g(-2\pi)}{4\pi} - g'(x) > 0.$$

Therefore, we can conclude that there is no Lagrange's mean value point of g in N.

The following refined result of Theorem 1.2 is obtained as a corollary of Corollary 3.1.

Corollary 3.3. *Let $f, g : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be countinuously differentiable functions and η be a Lagrange's mean value point of f in (a, b) and $N \subseteq (a, b)$ be a neighborhood of η. Suppose either η is a unique Lagrange's mean value point of f or f has second derivative at η with $f''(\eta) \neq 0$. Then, for a given $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that if $|f(x) - g(x)| < \delta$ for all*

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

$x \in N \cup \{a, b\}$, then there exists a point $\xi \in N$ such that ξ is a Lagrange's mean value point of g with $|\xi - \eta| < \varepsilon$.

References

[1] J. Brzdek, W. Fechner, M. Moslehian, J. Sikorska, *Recent developments of the conditional stability of the homomorphism equation*, Banach J. Math. Anal., **9** (2015) no. 3, 278-326.

[2] K. Ciepliński, *Applications of fixed point theorems to the Hyers-Ulam stability of functional equations–a survey*, Ann. Funct. Anal., **3** (2012), no. 1, 151-164.

[3] M. Das, T. Riedel, P. K. Sahoo, *Hyers-Ulam stability of Flett's points*, Appl. Math. Lett., **16(3)** (2013), 269-271.

[4] P. Găvruţă, *A generalization of the Hyers-Ulam-Rassias stability of approximately additive mappings*, J. Math. Anal. Appl., **184** (1994), 431-436.

[5] P. Găvruţă, S.-M. Jung, Y. Li, *Hyers–Ulam stability of mean value points*, Ann. Funct. Anal., **295** (2010), no. 2, 68-74.

[6] D. H. Hyers, *On the stability of the linear functional equation*, Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci, U.S.A. **27**, (1941), 222-224.

[7] D. H. Hyers, S. M. Ulam, *On the stability of differential expressions*, Math. Mag., **28**, (1954), 59-64.

[8] H.-M. Kim, H.-Y. Shin, *Approximation of almost Sahoo–Riedel's points by Sahoo–Riedel's points*, Aequat. Mathe., **90**, (2016), 809-815.

[9] W. Lee, S. Xu, F. Ye, *Hyers-Ulam stability of Sahoo-Riedel's point*, Appl. Math. Lett., **22**, (2009), 1649-1652.

[10] I. R. Peter and D. Popa, *Stability of points in mean value theorems*, Publ. Math. Debrecen, **83/3** (2013), 375-384.

[11] S. M. Ulam, *Problems in Modern Mathematics*, Chapter 6 Wiley Interscience, New York, (1964).

Gwang Hui Kim, Department of Mathematics, Kangnam Universaty,Yongin, Gyeonggi 16979, Republic of Korea

E-mail address: ghkim@kangnam.ac.kr

Hwan-Yong Shin, Department of Mathematics, Chungnam National University,99 Daehangno, Yuseong-gu, Daejeon 34134, Republic of Korea

E-mail address: hyshin31@cnu.ac.kr

Weak Galerkin Finite Element Method for Convection-Diffusion-Reaction Problems

F. Z. Gao[a,1], **A. K. Hashim**[b,2], **S. C. Mohammed**[b,3]

[a] School of Math., Shandong Univ., Jinan, China
[b]Dept. of Math., College of Education for Pure Science
Univ. of Basrah, Basrah, Iraq

Abstract

In this paper, a weak Galerkin (WG) finite element method is proposed for solving the convection-diffusion-reaction problems. The main idea of WG finite element methods is the use of weak functions and their corresponding discrete weak derivatives in standard weak form of the model problem. We show that the continuous time WG finite element method preserves the energy conservation law as well the optimal order error estimate in L^2 norm. Numerical experiment is conducted to confirm the theoretical results.

Keywords: WG finite element method, convection-diffusion-reaction equation, energy conservation law, error estimate.

1 Introduction

The convection-diffusion-reaction processes appear in many areas of science and technology. For example, fluid dynamics, heat and mass transfer hydrology and so on. In this paper, we consider the following convection-diffusion-reaction equation:

$$\begin{aligned} u_t - \nabla\cdot(\lambda\nabla u) + b\cdot\nabla u + cu &= f, \quad (x,t)\in\Omega\times(0,T], && (1.1)\\ u(x,0) &= 0, \quad x\in\Omega, && (1.2)\\ u(x,t)|_\Gamma &= g, \quad t\in(0,T], && (1.3)\end{aligned}$$

where Ω is a bounded region in R^2, with a Lipschitz continuous boundary $\Gamma = \partial\Omega$, $u_t = \frac{\partial u}{\partial t}$, and ∇u denote the gradient of function $u = u(x,t)$. Further $\lambda > 0$ is a diffusion coefficient, b is a convection coeffient and f, g are given functions.

The standard weak form of equations $(1.1) - (1.3)$ seeks $u \in L^2(0,T; H^1(\Omega))$ such that $u = g$ on $\partial\Omega\times(0,T)$ and

$$(u_t, v) + (\lambda\nabla u, \nabla v) - (bu, \nabla v) + (cu, v) = (f, v), \quad \forall v \in H_0^1(\Omega). \tag{1.4}$$

The WG finite element method refers to a general finite element technique for partial differential equation where the differential operators (e.g., gradient, divergence, curl, Laplacian) are approximated by weak forms. The method, first introduced by Wang and Ye [1] for solving a second order elliptic problems, is a newly developed finite element method. Since

[1]E-mail address: fzgao@sdu.edu.cn
[2]E-mail addresses: hkashkool@yahoo.com
[3]Corresponding author. E-mail address: cheichan.mohammed@yahoo.com

then, some WG finite element methods have been developed to solve other problems, such as parabolic equation [2, 3, 4], Stokes equations [5, 6], Helmholtz equation [7], Biharmonic equation [8, 9] and Navier-Stokes equations [10, 11], etc.

In general, WG finite element formulations for partial differential equation can be derived naturally by replacing usual derivatives by variational forms. The implementations of all these possible extension are based on the computation of these weak operators.

The rest of this paper is organized as follows. In section 2, we shall introduce some preliminaries and notations for Sobolev spaces. We define the weak gradient and discrete weak gradient operator and the weak finite element spaces and present semi-discrete WG finite element method for problem (1.1) − (1.3) in section 3 and section 4, respectively. In section 5, we prove the energy conservation law of the continuous time WG approximation, and in section 6 we present optimal order error estimate in L^2 norm for the WG finite element approximations. Finally, we present a numerical example to verify theory.

2 Preliminaries and notations

We use standard definitions for the Sobolev spaces $H^m(\Omega)$ and their associated inner products $(\cdot,\cdot)_{m,\Omega}$, norms $\|\cdot\|_{m,\Omega}$, and seminorms $|\cdot|_{m,\Omega}$ for $m \geq 0$ [12, 13]. For any integers $m \geq 0$ the seminorm $|\cdot|_{m,\Omega}$ is given by

$$|v|_{m,\Omega} = (\sum_{|\alpha|=m} \int_{\Omega} |\partial^{\alpha} v|^2 d\Omega)^{1/2},$$

with the usual notation

$$\alpha = (\alpha_1, \alpha_2), \quad |\alpha| = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2, \quad \partial^{\alpha} = \partial_{x_1}^{\alpha_1} \partial_{x_2}^{\alpha_2}.$$

The Sobolev norm $\|\cdot\|_{n,\Omega}$, is given by

$$\|v\|_{n,\Omega} = (\sum_{j=0}^{n} |v|_{j,\Omega}^2)^{1/2}.$$

The space $H(div;\Omega)$ is defined as the set of vector-valued functions on Ω which, together with their divergence, are square integrable; i.e,

$$H(div;\Omega) = \{v : v \in [L^2(\Omega)]^2, \nabla \cdot v \in L^2(\Omega)\}.$$

The norm in $H(div;\Omega)$ is defined by

$$\|v\|_{H(div;\Omega)} = (\|v\|^2 + \|\nabla \cdot v\|^2)^{1/2}.$$

3 A weak Gradient operator and its approximation

In this section we introduce a weak gradient operator defined on a space of generalized functions. Let K be any polygonal domain with interior K^0 and boundary ∂K. A weak function on the region K refers to vector-valued function $v = \{v_0, v_b\}$ such that $v_0 \in L^2(K)$ and $v_b \in H^{1/2}(\partial K)$. The first component v_0 can be understood as the value of v in interior of K, and the second component v_b is the value of v on the boundary of ∂K. Denote by $W(K)$ the space of weak function associated with K ; i.e.,

$$W(K) := \{v = \{v_0, v_b\} : v_0 \in L^2(K), v_b \in H^{1/2}(\partial K)\}. \tag{3.1}$$

Definition 3.1. *For any $v \in W(K)$, the weak gradient of v is defined as a linear functional $\nabla_d v$ in the dual space of $H(div, K)$ whose action on each $q \in H(div, K)$ is given by*

$$\int_K \nabla_d v \cdot q dK = -\int_K v_0 \nabla \cdot q dK + \int_{\partial K} v_b q \cdot \boldsymbol{n} ds, \tag{3.2}$$

where $\boldsymbol{n}$ is the outward normal direction to ∂K.

Next, we introduce a discrete weak gradient operator by defining ∇_d in a polynomial subspace of $H(div, K)$. To this end , for any non-negative integer $r \geq 0$ denote by $P_r(K)$ the set of polynomials on K with degree no more than r. Let $V(K, r) \subset [P_r(K)]^2$ be a subspace of the space of vector-valued polynomials of degree r. A discrete weak gradient operator, denoted by $\nabla_{d,r}$, is defined so that $\nabla_{d,r} v \in V(K, r)$ is the unique solution of the following equation

$$\int_K \nabla_{d,r} v \cdot q dK = -\int_K v_0 \nabla \cdot q dK + \int_{\partial K} v_b q \cdot \mathbf{n} ds, \quad \forall q \in V(K, r). \tag{3.3}$$

4 A weak Galerkin finite element scheme

Let T_h be triangular partition of the domain Ω with mesh size h. Assume that the partition T_h is shape regular so that the routine inverse inequality holds true (see[13]). In the general spirit of Galerkin procedure, we shall design a WG method for (1.4) by following two basic principles: first replacing $H^1(\Omega)$ by a space of discrete weak functions defined on the finite element partition T_h and the boundary of triangular elements; second replacing the classical gradient operator by a discrete weak gradient operator $\nabla_{d,r}$ for weak functions on each triangle T.

For each $T \in T_h$. Denote by $P_j(T^0)$ the set of polynomials with degree no more than j and $P_\ell(\partial T)$ the set of polynomial on ∂T with degree no more than ℓ. A discrete weak function $v = \{v_0, v_b\}$ on T refers to a weak function $v = \{v_0, v_b\}$ such that $v_0 \in P_j(T^0)$ and $v_b \in P_\ell(\partial T)$ with $j \geq 0$ and $\ell \geq 0$. Denote this space by $W(T, j, \ell)$, i.e.,

$$W(T, j, \ell) = \{v = \{v_0, v_b\} : v_0 \in P_j(T^0), v_b \in P_\ell(\partial T)\}. \tag{4.1}$$

The corresponding finite element space would be defined by patching $W(T, j, \ell)$ over all the triangles $T \in T_h$. In other words, the weak finite element space is given by

$$S_h(j, \ell) = \{v = \{v_0, v_b\} : \{v_0, v_b\}|_T \in W(T, j, \ell), \forall T \in T_h\}. \tag{4.2}$$

Denote by $S_h^0(j, \ell)$ the subspace of $S_h(j, \ell)$ with vanishing boundary values on $\partial\Omega$, i.e.,

$$S_h^0(j, \ell) = \{v = \{v_0, v_b\} \in S_h(j, \ell), v_b|_{\partial T \cap \partial\Omega} = 0, \forall T \in T_h\}. \tag{4.3}$$

To investigate the approximation properties of the discrete weak space $S_h(j, \ell)$, we define three projections in this paper. The first two are local projections defined on each triangle T:

one is $Q_h u = \{Q_0 u, Q_b u\}$, the L^2 projection of $H^1(T)$ onto $P_j(T^0) \times P_{j+1}(\partial T)$ and another is R_h, the L^2 projection of $[L^2(T)]^2$ onto $V(T,r)$. The third projection Π_h is assumed to exist and satisfy the following property: for $q \in H(div,\Omega)$ with mildly added regularity, $\Pi_h q \in H(div,\Omega)$ such that $\Pi_h q \in V(T,r)$ on each $T \in T_h$, and

$$(\nabla \cdot q, v_0)_T = (\nabla \cdot \Pi_h q, v_0)_T, \quad \forall v_0 \in P_j(T). \tag{4.4}$$

It is easy to see the following two useful identities:

$$\nabla_{d,r}(Q_h u) = R_h(\nabla u), \ \ \forall u \in H^1(T), \tag{4.5}$$

and for any $q \in H(div,\Omega)$

$$\sum_{T\in T_h} (-\nabla \cdot q, v_0)_T = \sum_{T\in T_h} (\Pi_h q, \nabla_{d,r} v)_T, \ \ \forall v = \{v_0, v_b\} \in S_h^0(j,\ell). \tag{4.6}$$

Now for any $u, v \in S_h(j,\ell)$, we introduce the following bilinear form

$$a(u,v) = (\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u, \nabla_{d,r} v) - (b u_0, \nabla_{d,r} v) + (c u_0, v_0), \tag{4.7}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} (\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u, \nabla_{d,r} v) &= \int_\Omega \lambda \nabla_{d,r} u \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v d\Omega, \\ (b u_0, \nabla_{d,r} v) &= \int_\Omega b u_0 \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v d\Omega, \\ (c u_0, v_0) &= \int_\Omega c u_0 v_0 d\Omega. \end{aligned}$$

We pose the continuous time WG finite element method based on (3.3) and (1.4) which is to find $u_h(t) = \{u_0(\cdot,t), u_b(\cdot,t)\}$, belonging to $S_h(j,\ell))$ for $t > 0$, satisfying $u_b = Q_b g$ on $\partial\Omega$, and the following equation

$$((u_h)_t, v_0) + a(u_h, v) = (f, v_0), \qquad \forall v = \{v_0, v_b\} \in S_h^0(j,\ell), \tag{4.8}$$

where

$$a(u_h, v) = (\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u, \nabla_{d,r} v) - (b u_h, \nabla_{d,r} v) + (c u_h, v_0),$$

where, $Q_b g$ is an approximation of the boundary value in the polynomial space $P_\ell(\partial T \cap \partial\Omega)$. For simplicity, $Q_b g$ shall be taken as the standard L^2 projection for each boundary segment.

5 Energy conservation property of WG

In this section, we investigate the energy conservation property of the semi-discrete WG finite element approximation u_h. The solution u of the problem $(1.1) - (1.3)$ has the following energy preserving property on each $K \in T_h$ [2].

$$\int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_K u_t dx dt + \int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_{\partial K} q \cdot \mathbf{n} ds dt \ = \ \int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_K f dx dt, \tag{5.1}$$

where $q = -\lambda \nabla u + b u$ is the flow rate of heat energy.

4

We claim that the semi-discrete WG for (1.1) $-$ (1.3) preserves the energy conservation property in (5.1). Choosing in (4.8) the test function $v = \{v_0, v_b = 0\}$ so that $v_0 = 1$ on K and $v_0 = 0$ elsewhere. We then obtain by integration over the time period $[t - \Delta t, t + \Delta t]$

$$\int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_K u_t dx dt + \int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} a(u_h, v) dt \quad = \quad \int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_K f dx dt, \tag{5.2}$$

where

$$a(u_h, v) \quad = \quad \int_K \lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v dx - \int_K b u_0 \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v dx + \int_K c u_0 dx.$$

Using the definition of operators R_h and $\nabla_{d,r}$ in (4.4), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \int_K \lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v dx &= \int_K R_h(\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h) \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v dx \\ &= -\int_K \nabla \cdot R_h(\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h) dx \\ &= -\int_{\partial K} R_h(\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h) \cdot \mathbf{n} ds, \end{aligned} \tag{5.3}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \int_K b u_0 \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v dx &= \int_K R_h(b u_0) \cdot \nabla_{d,r} v dx \\ &= -\int_K \nabla \cdot R_h(b u_0) dx \\ &= -\int_{\partial K} R_h(b u_0) \cdot \mathbf{n} ds. \end{aligned} \tag{5.4}$$

Now substituting (5.3) and (5.4) into (5.2) yields

$$\int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_K u_t dx dt + \int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_{\partial K} R_h(-\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h + b u_0) \cdot \mathbf{n} ds \quad = \quad \int_{t-\Delta t}^{t+\Delta t} \int_K f dx dt,$$

which provides a numerical flux.

$$q_h \cdot \mathbf{n} = R_h(-\lambda \nabla_{d,r} u_h + b u_0) \cdot \mathbf{n}.$$

The numerical flux $q_h \cdot \mathbf{n}$ can be verified to be continuous across the edge of each element K through a selection of the test function $v = \{v_0, v_b\}$ so that $v_0 \equiv 0$ and v_b are arbitrary.

6 Error analysis

In this section, we derive optimal order error estimate for the semi-discrete scheme (4.8) in L^2 norm. Let us begin with proving the elliptic property of WG finite element method for equation (1.1).

Lemma 6.1. *Let $S_h(j,\ell)$ be the weak finite element space defined in* (4.2) *and $a(u_h, v)$ be the bilinear form given in* (4.8)*. There exists positive constant α satisfying*

$$a(v_h, v_h) \geq \alpha(\|\nabla_{d,r} v_h\|^2 + \|v_0\|^2),$$

for all $v_h \in S_h(j,\ell)$.

Proof. Taking $u = v$ in equation (4.8) we have

$$a(v_h, v_h) \quad = \quad (\lambda \nabla_{d,r} v, \nabla_{d,r} v) - (b v_0, \nabla_{d,r} v) + (c v_0, v_0). \tag{6.1}$$

Let $A = \|b\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)}$ and $B = \|c\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)}$ be the L^∞-norm of the coefficients b and c, respectively and using Cauchy- Schwarz inequality we have.

$$\begin{aligned} |(b v_0, \nabla_{d,r} v)| &\leq \|b\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \|\nabla_{d,r} v\| \|v_0\|, \\ &\leq A \|\nabla_{d,r} v\| \|v_0\| \end{aligned} \tag{6.2}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} |(c v_0, v_0)| &\leq \|c\|_{L^\infty(\Omega)} \|v_0\|^2 \\ &\leq B \|v_0\|^2. \end{aligned} \tag{6.3}$$

Substituting (6.2) and (6.3) into (6.1) we obtain

$$a(v_h, v_h) \quad \geq \quad |\lambda| \|\nabla_{d,r} v\|^2 + A \|\nabla_{d,r} v\| \|v_0\| - B \|v_0\|^2,$$

by using Young-inequality, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a(v_h, v_h) &\geq (|\lambda| + \frac{1}{2\epsilon}) \|\nabla_{d,r} v\|^2 + (\frac{\epsilon A^2}{2} - B) \|v_0\|^2 \\ &\geq \alpha_1 \|\nabla_{d,r} v\|^2 + \alpha_2 \|v_0\|^2 \\ &\geq \alpha(\|\nabla_{d,r} v\|^2 + \|v_0\|^2), \end{aligned}$$

where $\alpha = \min\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2\}$, which completes the proof. ∎

Lemma 6.2. ([*2*])
For $u \in H^{1+\kappa}(\Omega)$ with $\kappa > 0$, we have

$$\|\Pi_h(\lambda \nabla u) - \lambda R_h(\nabla u)\| \quad \leq \quad C h^\kappa \|u\|_{1+\kappa}. \tag{6.4}$$

Lemma 6.3. ([*14*])
For $u \in H^{1+\kappa}(\Omega)$ with $\kappa > 0$, we have

$$\|u - \Pi_h u\| \quad \leq \quad C h^\kappa \|u\|_{1+\kappa}. \tag{6.5}$$

6.1 Continuous time WG finite element method

Our aim is to prove the following estimate in L^2 norm for the semi-discrete approximation.

Theorem 6.1. *Let $u \in H^{1+\kappa}(\Omega)$ with $\kappa > 0$ and u_h be the solutions of* (1.1) − (1.3) *and* (4.8) *respectively. Denote by $e = u_h - Q_h u$ the difference between WG approximation and the L^2 projection of the exact solution $u = u(x,t)$. Then there exists a constant C such that*

$$\|e\|^2 + \int_0^t \alpha \|e\|^2 ds \quad \leq \quad \|e(\cdot,0)\|^2 + Ch^{2\kappa} \int_0^t \|u\|^2_{1+\kappa} ds \tag{6.6}$$

Proof. Let $v = \{v_0, v_b\} \in S_h^0(j,\ell)$ be the testing function. By testing (1.1) − (1.3) against v_0, together with (4.6) we arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} (f, v_0) &= (u_t, v_0) + \sum_{T\in T_h} (-\nabla \cdot (\lambda \nabla u), v_0)_T + \sum_{T\in T_h} (\nabla \cdot (bu), v_0) + (cu, v_0) \\ &= (u_t, v_0) + (\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u), \nabla_{d,r} v) - (\Pi_h(bu), \nabla_{d,r} v) + (cu, v_0). \end{aligned} \tag{6.7}$$

Adding and subtracting the term

$$a(Q_h u, v) \equiv (\lambda \nabla_{d,r}(Q_h u), \nabla_{d,r} v) - (b(Q_0), \nabla_{d,r} v) + (c(Q_0 u), v_0),$$

on the right hand side of the equation (6.7) and using $(Q_h u_t, v_0) = (u_t, v_0)$ we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} (f, v_0) &= (Q_h u_t, v_0) + (\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u) - \lambda\nabla_{d,r}(Q_h u), \nabla_{d,r} v) \\ &- (\Pi_h(bu) - b(Q_0 u), \nabla_{d,r} v) + (cu - c(Q_0 u), v_0) \\ &+ (\lambda\nabla_{d,r}(Q_h u), \nabla_{d,r} v) - (b(Q_0), \nabla_{d,r}) \\ &+ (c(Q_0 u), v_0), \end{aligned}$$

by using $R_h(\nabla u) = \nabla_{d,r}(Q_h u)$ for $u \in H^1$ and (4.8) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} ((u_h)_t, v_0) + a(u_h, v) &= (Q_h u_t, v_0) + (\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u) - \lambda R_h(\nabla u), \nabla_{d,r} v) \\ &- (\Pi_h(bu) - b(Q_0 u), \nabla_{d,r} v) + (cu - c(Q_0 u), v_0) \\ &+ a(Q_h u, v), \end{aligned}$$

which can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} ((u_h - Q_h)_t, v_0) + a(u_h - Q_h u, v) = (\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u) - \lambda R_h(\nabla u), \nabla_{d,r} v) \\ -(\Pi_h(bu) - b(Q_0 u), \nabla_{d,r} v) + (cu - c(Q_0 u), v_0). \end{aligned} \tag{6.8}$$

Equation (6.8) shall be called the error equation for the WG finite element method (4.8). Substituting v in (6.8) by $e = \{u_h - Q_h u\} = \{e_0, e_b\} = \{u_0 - Q_0 u, u_b - Q_b u\}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (e_t, e) + a(e, e) &= (\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u) - \lambda R_h(\nabla u), \nabla_{d,r} e) - (\Pi_h(bu) - b(Q_0 u), \nabla_{d,r} e) \\ &+ (cu - c(Q_0 u), e). \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{d}{dt}\|e\|^2 + \beta\|\nabla_{d,r} e\|^2 + \alpha\|e\|^2 \quad = \quad \sum_{i=1}^{3} I^{(i)}, \tag{6.9}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
I^{(1)} &= (\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u) - \lambda R_h(\nabla u), \nabla_{d,r}e) \\
I^{(2)} &= (\Pi_h(bu) - bu_0, \nabla_{d,r}e) \\
I^{(3)} &= (cu - c(Q_0 u), e).
\end{aligned}$$

To estimate $I^{(1)}$, by Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and Young inequality, we have

$$|I^{(1)}| \leq \frac{1}{2\beta}\|\Pi_h(\lambda\nabla u) - \lambda R_h(\nabla u)\|^2 + \frac{\beta}{2}\|\nabla_{d,r}e\|^2$$

by lemma (6.2), we have

$$|I^{(1)}| \leq Ch^{2\kappa}\|u\|_{1+\kappa}^2 + \frac{\beta}{2}\|\nabla_{d,r}e\|^2. \tag{6.10}$$

To estimate $I^{(2)}$, by Cauchy-Schwarz inequality and Young inequality, we have

$$|I^{(2)}| \leq \frac{1}{2\beta}\|\Pi_h(bu) - bu_0\|^2 + \frac{\beta}{2}\|\nabla_{d,r}e\|^2,$$

by lemma (6.3), we have

$$|I^{(2)}| \leq Ch^{2\kappa}\|u\|_{1+\kappa}^2 + \frac{\beta}{2}\|\nabla_{d,r}e\|^2. \tag{6.11}$$

To estimate $I^{(3)}$, again by Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, Young inequality and lemma(6.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
|I^{(3)}| &\leq \frac{1}{2\alpha}\|cu - c(Q_0 u)\|^2 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\|e\|^2 \\
&\leq Ch^{2\kappa}\|u\|_{1+\kappa}^2 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\|e\|^2. \qquad (6.12)
\end{aligned}$$

Substituting (6.10), (6.11), and (6.12), into (6.9) we get

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{d}{dt}\|e\|^2 + \beta\|\nabla_{d,r}e\|^2 + \alpha\|e\|^2 \leq Ch^{2\kappa}\|u\|_{1+\kappa}^2 + \beta\|\nabla_{d,r}e\|^2 + \frac{\alpha}{2}\|e\|^2.$$

It follows that

$$\frac{d}{dt}\|e\|^2 + \alpha\|e\|^2 \leq Ch^{2\kappa}\|u\|_{1+\kappa}^2.$$

Thus, integrating with respect to t, we obtain

$$\|e\|^2 + \int_0^t \alpha\|e\|^2 ds \leq \|e(\cdot,0)\|^2 + Ch^{2\kappa}\int_0^t \|u\|_{1+\kappa}^2 ds,$$

which completes the proof. □

8

6.2 Optimal order of error estimation in L^2

To get an optimal order of error estimate in L^2, the idea, similar to Wheeler's projection as in [14, 15], is used where an elliptic projection E_h onto the discrete weak space $S_h(j,\ell)$ is defined as the following: Find $E_h u \in S_h(j,\ell)$ such that $E_h u$ is the L^2 projection of the trace of u on the boundary $\partial\Omega$ and

$$\begin{aligned}(\lambda\nabla_{d,r}E_h u, \nabla_{d,r}w) + (b\cdot\nabla_{d,r}E_h u, w) &= (-\nabla\cdot(\lambda\nabla u), w) \\ &+ (-bu, \nabla w) \quad \forall w \in S_h^0(j,\ell). \qquad (6.13)\end{aligned}$$

In view of the weak formulation of the convection-diffusion-reaction problem.

$$\begin{aligned}-\nabla\cdot(\lambda\nabla u) + b\cdot\nabla u &= F, \quad in\ \Omega, \qquad (6.14)\\ u &= g, \quad on\ \partial\Omega, \qquad (6.15)\end{aligned}$$

this defined may be expressed by using that $E_h u$ is the WG finite element approximation of the solution of the corresponding convection-diffusion problem with exact solution u.

Lemma 6.4. (*see*[*1*])
Assume that problem (6.14) − (6.15) *has the* $H^{1+s}(\Omega)$ *regularity* ($s \in (0,1]$). *Let* $u \in H^{1+\kappa}(\Omega)$ *be the exact solution of* (6.14) − (6.15), *and* $E_h u$ *be a WG approximation of* u *defined in* (6.13). *Let* $Q_h u = \{Q_0 u, Q_b u\}$ *be the* L^2 *projection of* u *in the corresponding finite element space. Then there exists a constant* C *such that*

$$\|Q_0 u - E_h u\| \leq C(h^{\kappa+1}\|F - Q_0 F\| + h^{\kappa+s}\|u\|_{\kappa+1})$$

and

$$\|\nabla_{d,r}(Q_h u - E_h u\| \leq Ch^{\kappa}\|u\|_{\kappa+1}.$$

Theorem 6.2. *Under the assumption of Theorem* (6.1) *and the assumption that the corresponding convection-diffusion problem has the* H^{1+s} *regularity* ($s \in (0,1]$), *there exists a constant* C *such that*

$$\begin{aligned}\|u_h(t) - Q_h u(t)\| &\leq \|u_h(0) - Q_h u(0)\| + Ch^{\kappa+s}(\|\psi\|_{\kappa+1} + \int_0^t \|u_t\|_{\kappa+1} ds)\\ &+ Ch^{s+1}(\int_0^t (\|f_t - Q_0 f_t\| + \|u_{tt} - Q_0 u_{tt}\|) ds)\\ &+ Ch^{s+1}(\|f(0) - Q_0 f(0)\| + \|u_t(0) - Q_0 u_t(0)\|) \qquad (6.16)\end{aligned}$$

Proof. The error in the problem (1.1) − (1.3) is written as a sum of two terms,

$$u_h(t) - Q_h u(t) = \theta(t) + \rho(t), \qquad (6.17)$$

where

$$\theta = u_h - E_h u, \qquad \rho = E_h u - Q_h u.$$

The error bound for ρ easily by lemma (6.4) as the following [2]

$$\begin{aligned}\|\rho\| &\leq C(h^{s+1}(\|f - Q_0 f\| + \|u_t - Q_0 u_t\|)\\ &+ h^{\kappa+s}(\|\psi\|_{\kappa+1} + \int_0^t \|u_t\|_{\kappa+1} ds)). \qquad (6.18)\end{aligned}$$

9

Now, to estimate θ, we note that by our definitions

$$\begin{aligned}(\theta_t, w) + a(\theta, w) &= ((u_h)_t, w) + a(u_h, w) - (E_h u_t, w) - a(E_h u_h, w)\\ &= (f, w) - (E_h u_t, w) - a(E_h u_h, w)\\ &= (f, w) + (\nabla \cdot (\lambda \nabla u), w) + (b \cdot \nabla u, w) - (cu, w) - (E_h u_t, w)\\ &= (u_t, w) - (E_h u_t, w)\\ &= (Q_h u_t, w) - (E_h u_t, w)\\ &= -(\rho_t, w),\end{aligned}$$

which is

$$(\theta_t, w) + a(\theta, w) = -(\rho_t, w), \quad \forall w \in S_h^0(j, \ell), t > 0, \tag{6.19}$$

where we have used the fact that the operator E_h commutes with time differentiation. Since $\theta \in S_h^0(j, \ell)$, we may choose $w = \theta$ in (6.19) and obtain

$$(\theta_t, \theta) + a(\theta, \theta) = -(\rho_t, \theta), \quad t > 0, \tag{6.20}$$

by using lemma (6.1) we have

$$a(\theta, \theta) \geq \alpha(\|\nabla_{d,r}\theta\|^2 + \|\theta_0\|^2) > 0.$$

Therefore

$$\frac{1}{2}\frac{d}{dt}\|\theta\|^2 = \|\theta\|\frac{d}{dt}\|\theta\| \leq \|\rho_t\|\|\theta\|,$$

and integrating with respect to t, we obtain

$$\|\theta(t)\| \leq \|\theta(0)\| + \int_0^t \|\rho_t\| ds. \tag{6.21}$$

using lemma (6.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned}|\theta(0)\| &= \|u_h(0) - E_h u(0)\|\\ &\leq \|u_h(0) - Q_h u(0)\| + \|E_h u(0) - Q_h u(0)\|\\ &\leq \|u_h(0) - Q_h u(0)\| + C(h^{s+1}(\|f(0) - Q_0 f(0)\|\\ &+ \|u_t(0) - Q_0 u_t(0)\|) + h^{\kappa+s}\|\psi\|_{\kappa+1}),\end{aligned} \tag{6.22}$$

and since

$$\begin{aligned}\|\rho_t\| &= \|E_h u_t - Q_h u_t\|\\ &\leq C(h^{s+1}(\|f_t - Q_0 f_t\| + \|u_{tt} - Q_0 u_{tt}\|)\\ &+ h^{\kappa+s}\|u_t\|_{\kappa+1}).\end{aligned} \tag{6.23}$$

Substituting (6.18) and (6.21) into (6.17), we have an optimal order of error estimate in L^2 which completes the proof. $\square$

7 Numerical result

In this section, we present some numerical results to illustrate the theoretical analysis in the previous section. We consider the following convection-diffusion-reaction problem.

$$u_t - \nabla \cdot (D\nabla u) + b \cdot \nabla u + cu \quad = \quad f, \qquad in\ \Omega \times J, \tag{7.1}$$

with homogeneous Dirichlet boundary condition and initial condition. The data for problem (7.1) taken as follows: let $D = 100$, Ω be a unit square, i.e., $\Omega = [0,1] \times [0,1]$, time interval be $J = (0,T) = (0,1)$, the absorption coefficient is $c = 1$ and the velocity vector has been taken as $b = (\cos(\frac{\pi}{3}), \sin(\frac{\pi}{3}))$, we can get the initial and boundary conditions and source term $f(x,t)$ according to the corresponding analysis solution of example. First, we partition the square domain $\Omega = (0,1) \times (0,1)$ in to $N \times N$ sub-square uniformly. Then we divide each square element into two triangles by the diagonal line with a negative slopeso that we complete the construction of the triangular mesh let $h = 1/N(N = 4, 8, 16, 32, 64)$ be mesh size for triangular meshes.

In the example, the analytical solution is chosen as

$$u = sin(\pi x)sin(\pi y)exp(-t).$$

Numerical error results and convergence rate are listed in Table 7.1 and convergence rate in Figure 1.

Table 7.1:numerical result

h	L^2-**error**	L^2-**order**
1/4	3.7148e-00	
1/8	9.4454e-01	1.97
1/16	2.3719e-01	1.99
1/32	5.9383e-02	2.00
1/64	1.4875e-02	2.00

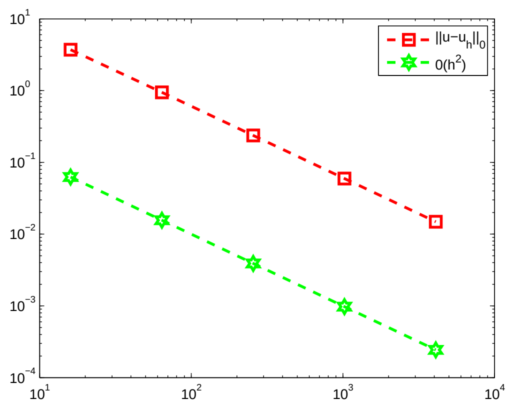


Figure 1: Convergence rate for $\kappa = 1$ and $s = 1$.

Acknowledgements

The first author's research is supported in part by National Natural Science Foundation of China (NSFC) no. 11871038, China Postdoctoral Science Foundation no.2014M560547, Fundamental Research Funds of Shandong University no.2017JC005.

References

[1] J. Wank, X. Ye. A weak Galerkin finite element method for the second order elliptic problem. J. Comput. Appl. Math, 241(2013) 103-115.

[2] Q.H. Li, J.P. Wang. Weak Galerkin finite element methods for parabolic equations. Numer. Meth. PDEs, 29 (2013) 2004-2024.

[3] F. Gao, L. Mu. On L^2 error estimate for weak Galerkin finite element method for parabolic problems. J. Comput. Math, 32 (2014) 195-204.

[4] F. Gao, X. Wang. A modified weak Galerkin finite element method for a class of parabolic problems. J. Comp. Appl. Math, 271 (2014) 1-19.

[5] L. Mu, J.P. Wang, X. Ye. A modified weak Galerkin finite element method for the stokes equations. J. Comp. Appl. Math, 275 (2015) 79-90.

[6] J. Wang, X. Ye. A weak Galerkin finite element method for the stokes equations. Adv. Comput. Math, 42 (2016) 155-174.

[7] L. Mu, J. Wang, X. Ye, S. Zhao. A numerical study on the weak Galerkin method for the Helmholtz equation. Commun. Comput. Phys, 15 (2014) 1461-1479.

[8] L. Mu, J.P. Wang, X. Ye. Weak Galerkin finite element method for the biharmonic equation on polytopal meshes, Numer. Meth. PDEs. 30 (2014) 1003-1029.

[9] R. Zhang, Q.L. Li. A weak Galerkin finite element scheme for the Biharmonic equations by using polynomials of reduced order. J. Sci. Comput, 64 (2015) 559-585.

[10] J. Zhang, K. Zhang, J. Li, X. Wang. A weak Galerkin finite element method for the Navier-Stokes equation. Commun. Comput. Phys, 10 (2017) 1-14.

[11] X. Lin, J. Li, Z. Chen. A weak Galerkin finite element method for the Navier-Stokes equation, J. Comp. Appl. Math, 333 (2018) 442-457.

[12] R.A. Adams. Sobolev spaces. Academic Press, New York, 1975.

[13] P.G.Ciarlet. The finite element method for elliptic problems. North-Holland, 1978.

[14] V. Thomée. Galerkin finite element method for parabolic problems. (Springer Series in Computational Mathematics), Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg, New York, Inc., Secancns, NJ, 1984.

[15] M.F. Wheeler. A priori L^2 error estimates for Galerkin approximations to parabolic partial differential equations. SIAM Journal on Numerical Analysis, 10 (1973) 723-759.

The Generalized Moment Problem on White Noise Spaces

A. S. Okb El Bab[1] and Hossam A. Ghany[2]
[1]Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, Azhar University,
Naser City(11884),Cairo Egypt.
[2]Department of Mathematics, Helwan University,
Sawah Street(11282), Cairo Egypt.
h.abdelghany@yahoo.com

Abstract

Our purpose in this paper, is to derive the main properties of the generalized moment functions defined on some types of white noise spaces. A new version of Wick product on some spaces of generalized functions is introduced. Applying the direct connection between the theory of construction for hypercomplex systems and white noise analysis, we setup a framework to construct a lot of spaces of generalized functions connected with different examples of hypercomplex systems.

2010 Mathematics Subject Classification: 43A62, 60H40, 30G35.
Keywords: White Noise; Wick product; moment function; generalized functions.

1 Introduction

In this paper, the main properties of the generalized moment functions defined on some types of white noise spaces are derived. A new version of Wick product with respect to non-Gaussian measures, the associated Hermite transform and the characterization theorem for the constructed spaces of generalized functions are introduced. Let Q denotes a locally compact basis on the space $\mathbb{R}^n$. The linear space of bounded continuous complex-valued functions $C_b(Q)$ is complete normed space with respect to the norm

$$\|f\|_\infty = \sup_{x\in Q} |f(x)|,$$

where f define on Q. We will denote by $C_b^\infty(Q)$ the space of infinitely differential bounded functions on Q, and by $\mathcal{S}(Q)$ the linear subspace of $C_b^\infty(Q)$ formed by the set of functions on Q such that $x^\alpha D^\beta f(x)$ is bounded on Q, where $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{Z}_+^n$. The space of continuous linear functional on $\mathcal{S}(Q)$ is called tempered distribution space and is denoted by $\mathcal{S}'(Q)$. There exist many works aims to investigate white noise spaces. Some of these works devoted to deal with the construction of spaces of test, generalized functions and operators acting in these spaces using the Wiener-Itô-Segal isomorphism and various riggings of the Fock space [2,9]. Distribution play a crucial role in the study of PDEs and quantum field theory [5,11], where quantum field are defined as operator valued distributions. The contemporary theory of generalized functions of infinitely many variables originates from the works of Berezanskyi and Samoilenko [3] and Hida [9]. In [3], the spaces of test and generalized functions were constructed as infinite tensor products of one-dimensional spaces. In [9], the classical approach to the construction of the theory of generalized functions was, in fact, used, but all functions under consideration were functions of a point of the infinite-dimensional space on which the Gaussian measure was defined; this measure played the same role as the Lebesgue measure in the classical theory of generalized functions. This paper is organized as follows: In section 2, we give the main properties of the generalized moment functions defined on the space of rabidly decreasing functions on Q. In section 3, a new way for constructing spaces of generalized functions is given. In section 4, we derive the main relations between the construction of hypercomplex system and the Theory of white noise analysis.

2 The moment problem on $\mathcal{S}(Q)$

The elements of $\mathcal{S}(Q)$ are called rabidly decreasing functions and for each $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{Z}_+^n$, $\mathcal{S}(Q)$ is equipped with the family of seminorms

$$\|f\|_{\alpha,\beta} = \sup_{x\in Q} |x^\alpha D^\beta f(x)|$$

In this section, we devoted to give a full description of the integral

$$\phi(x) = \int_Q \lambda(x) d\mu(\lambda), \quad \mu \in \mathcal{M}_+(Q),$$

where $\lambda : Q \to \mathbb{C}$ belongs to the linear space of bounded continuous complex-valued functions $C_b(Q)$ and the measure μ belongs to the space of positive Radon measures $\mathcal{M}_+(Q)$. Let $s = (s_\alpha)_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}_+^n}$ $(s_0 > 0)$ be an n-sequence of real numbers. We set

$$\mathcal{L}_s(x^\alpha) = s_\alpha, \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_+^n.$$

The n-sequence $s = (s_\alpha)_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}_+^n}$ is called quasi-positive definite if $\mathcal{L}_s$ is quasi-positive definite (i.e., $\mathcal{L}_s(f\bar{f}) \geq 0$ for all $f \in \mathcal{S}(Q)$). The n-sequence s is called a generalized moment sequence if there exists a Radon measure μ on Q such that $x^\alpha \in L_1(\mu)$ and $s_\alpha = \int_Q x^\alpha d\mu(x)$ for all $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_+^n$. When such measure exists, then it is called a representing measure of the sequence s. Let $\mathcal{F} = f_1, ..., f_m$ be a finite family in $\mathcal{S}(Q)$, and

$$Q_\mathcal{F} = \{q \in Q; f_j(q) \geq 0, \quad i = 1, ..., m\}.$$

Clearly, we have $m_j = sup_{x\in Q} f_j(x) < \infty$, setting

$$\hat{f}_j(x) = m_j^{-1} f_j(x), \quad x \in Q \quad if \quad m_j > 0,$$

and

$$\hat{f}_j = f_j, \quad m_j = 0,$$

$j = 1, ..., m$. We define $\hat{\mathcal{F}} = \{0, 1, \hat{f}_1, ..., \hat{f}_m\}$, and we will denote by $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$ the set of all products of the form $f_1...f_i(1-g_1)...(1-g_i)$ for functions $f_1, ..., f_i, g_1..., g_i \in \hat{\mathcal{F}}$ and integers $i, j \geq 1$.

Theorem 2.1. Let $\Pi(\mathcal{F})$ denote the convex set of all linear mappings $\mathcal{L} : \mathcal{S}(Q) \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $\mathcal{L}(1) = 1$ and $\mathcal{L}(f) \geq 0$ for all $f \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$. Then we have

$$0 \leq \mathcal{L}(f) \leq 1$$

for all $\mathcal{L} \in \Pi(\mathcal{F})$ and $f \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$.

Proof. Let $f_1...f_k \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$, where either $f_j \in \hat{\mathcal{F}}$ or $1 - f_j \in \hat{\mathcal{F}}$ for all $j = 1, ..., k$. We have

$$f_1...f_n = (1 - f_1) + f_1(1 - f_2) + ... + f_1...f_{k-1}(1 - f_k)$$

This implies $\mathcal{L}(1 - f) \geq 0$, whence $\mathcal{L}(f) \leq 1$.

Remark. Let $\Gamma_+(Q)$ be the positive cone generated by $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$. From the previous proof we notice that if $f \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$, then $1 - f \in \Gamma_+(Q)$. Moreover, we notice that if $f, g \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$, then $(1 - f)g \in \Gamma_+(Q)$. In particular, if $\mathcal{L} : \mathcal{S}(Q) \to \mathbb{R}$ is positive on $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$, then $\mathcal{L}((1 - f)g) \geq 0$ for all $f, g \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$. Finally, we notice that $\mathcal{L}(1) = 0$ implies $\mathcal{L} = 0$.

Lemma 2.2. Let $\mathcal{L}$ be an extreme point of the convex set $\Pi(\mathcal{F})$. Then $\mathcal{L}$ is multiplicative on $\mathcal{S}(Q)$.

Proof. Suppose $f \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$ be fixed. Sufficiently, we need to prove that

$$\mathcal{L}(fg) = \mathcal{L}(f)\mathcal{L}(g) \quad for \quad all \quad g \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$$

Let $d = \mathcal{L}(f)$. We have the following possibilities:

1. If $0 < d < 1$, we consider the linear functionals $\mathcal{L}_1(h) = d^{-1}\mathcal{L}(fh)$ and $\mathcal{L}_2(h) = (1 - d)^{-1}\mathcal{L}((1 - f)h), \quad h \in \mathcal{S}(Q)$. Clearly, $\mathcal{L}_1, \mathcal{L}_2 \in \Pi(\mathcal{F})$. since $\mathcal{L} = d\mathcal{L}_1 + (1 - d)\mathcal{L}_2$ and $\mathcal{L}$ is an extreme point of $\Pi(\mathcal{F})$, this implies $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}_1$, whence $\mathcal{L}(fg) = \mathcal{L}(f)\mathcal{L}(g)$.

2. If $d = 0$, then the functional $\mathcal{L}_0(h) = \mathcal{L}(fh)$ is positive on $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$ and $\mathcal{L}_0(1) = 0$, applying the above remark implies $\mathcal{L}_0 = 0$, whence $\mathcal{L}(fg) = 0 = \mathcal{L}(f)\mathcal{L}(g)$.

3. If $d = 1$, we use the above discussion to the functional $\mathcal{L}_1(g) = \mathcal{L}((1 - f)g)$, and obtain $\mathcal{L}(fg) = \mathcal{L}(g) = \mathcal{L}(f)\mathcal{L}(g)$.

Theorem 2.3. For every linear functional $\mathcal{L} \in \Pi(\mathcal{F})$ there exists a uniquely probability measure μ on Q such that

$$\mathcal{L}(f) = \int_Q f d\mu$$

for all $f \in \mathcal{S}(Q)$.

Proof. Let $\mathcal{L}_0 \in \Pi(\mathcal{F})$ be an extreme point. Then $\mathcal{L}_0$ is multiplicative on $\mathcal{S}(Q)$, by the above lemma. Thus, for the sequence $\gamma = (\gamma_1, ..., \gamma_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ defined by $\mathcal{L}_0(t_j) = \gamma_j$, we have $\mathcal{L}_0(f) = f(\gamma)$ for all $f \in \mathcal{S}(Q)$. But we have $0 \leq \mathcal{L}_0(f) \leq 1, \quad f \in \Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$, by Theorem 2.1, we obtain that

$$|\mathcal{L}_0(f)| = |f(\gamma)| \leq ||f||_Q = sup_{t\in Q}|f(t)|, \quad f \in \mathcal{S}(Q).$$

If $f \in \Pi(\mathcal{F})$ is of the form $\mathcal{L} = \sum_{j\in I} c_j L_j$, where $c_j \geq 0, \quad \sum_{j\in I} c_j = 1$, $\mathcal{L}_j$ an extreme point of $\Pi(\mathcal{F})$, then

$$|\mathcal{L}(f)| \leq \sum_{j\in I} c_j|\mathcal{L}_j(f)| \leq \sum_{j\in I} c_j||f||_Q = ||f||_Q, \quad f \in \mathcal{S}(Q).$$

Let $\gamma = (\gamma_\alpha)_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}_+^n}(\gamma_0 > 0$ be a generalized moment sequence. Then the linear form $\mathcal{L} = \gamma_0^{-1}$ is an element of $\Pi(\mathcal{F})$, and by using the result obtained from the above Theorem we have:

Corollary 2.4. Let Q is compact and $\mathcal{F} = f_0 = 1, f_1, ..., f_m$ be a finite family which generates the space $\mathcal{S}(Q)$. An n-sequence of real numbers $s = (s_\alpha)_{\alpha\in\mathbb{Z}_+^n}$ $(s_0 > 0)$ is a generalized moment sequence if and only if the linear form $\mathcal{L}_s$ is nonnegative on the set $\Delta_{\mathcal{F}}$.

3 The spaces of generalized functions

This section is devoted to give the main relations between the construction of hypercomplex system and the Theory of white noise analysis. We will consider the following rigging of a Hilbert space H_0 with positive and negative spaces H_+ and H_-:

$$H_- \supseteq H_0 \supseteq H_+. \tag{3.1}$$

Let $\mathbf{I}_0^+ : H_- \longrightarrow H_+$ be the canonical isometry transferring the negative space H_- onto the positive space H_+. A biorthogonal basis $(p_n, q_n)_{n=0}^\infty$ in the space H_0 can be understood as sequences $(p_n)_{n=0}^\infty \subset H_+$ and $(q_n = \mathbf{I}_0^- p_n)_{n=0}^\infty \subset H_-$, where the first sequence is an orthogonal basis in the positive space H_+ and the second is an orthogonal basis in the negative space H_-. Hence, these systems of sequences p_n and q_n are biorthogonal:

$$(p_n, q_n)_{H_0} = \delta_{n,m} h_n, \quad h_n = \|p_n\|_{H_+}^2 = \|q_n\|_{H_-}^2, \quad n, m \in \mathbb{Z}_+, \tag{3.2}$$

for all $\varphi \in H_+$,

$$\varphi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \varphi_n p_n, \quad \varphi_n = (\varphi, q_n)_{H_0} h_n^{-1}, \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\varphi_n|^2 h_n = \|\varphi\|_{H_+}^2 < \infty, \tag{3.3}$$

for all $\xi \in H_-$,

$$\xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n q_n, \quad \xi_n = (\xi, p_n)_{H_0} h_n^{-1}, \quad \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n|^2 h_n = \|\xi\|_{H_-}^2 < \infty, \tag{3.4}$$

$$(\xi, \varphi)_{H_0} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n \overline{\varphi_n} h_n. \tag{3.5}$$

Let $(p_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ be an arbitrary total sequence of vectors p_n of a Hilbert space H_0. It is easy to prove that such sequence $(h_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$ of positive numbers h_n exists for which the set of test functions

$$H_+ = \left\{ \varphi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \varphi_n \, p_n \mid \varphi_n \in \mathbb{C} : \|\varphi\|_{H_+}^2 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\varphi_n|^2 \, h_n < \infty \right\}, \tag{3.6}$$

with the corresponding scalar product is the positive space with respect to H_0. Note that, it is necessary to assume in addition the fulfilment of the following necessary and sufficient condition on $(p_n)_{n=0}^{\infty}$: an arbitrary sequence $(\varphi^{(i)})_{i=0}^{\infty}$ of vectors $\varphi^{(i)} \in H_+$ with finite sequences of coordinates $\varphi_n^{(i)}$ which is fundamental in H_+ and converges to 0 in H_0 must converge to 0 in H_+. This condition will always be fulfilled in our case. Similarly, for the negative space H_-, by replacing p_n by q_n, we have the set of generalized functions as follows

$$H_- = \left\{ \xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n \, q_n \mid \xi_n \in \mathbb{C} : \|\xi\|_{H_-}^2 = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n|^2 \, h_n < \infty \right\}. \tag{3.7}$$

As pointed out from [1-3], there exists a quasinuclear rigging such that, the zero space H_0 is a hypercomplex system $L_2(Q, dm(p))(p \in Q)$ and we assume that

$$\mathbf{I}_\chi^+ : H_+ \longrightarrow H_1^\chi, \qquad \mathbf{I}_\chi^- : H_- \longrightarrow H_{-1}^\chi.$$

such that

$$\langle \mathbf{I}_\chi^- \xi, \mathbf{I}_\chi^+ \varphi \rangle_{L_2(Q,dm(p))} = \langle \xi, \varphi \rangle_{H_0}, \quad \xi \in H_-, \varphi \in H_+.$$

So, we have a biunitary map $\{\mathbf{I}_\chi^-, \mathbf{I}_\chi^+\}$. This mapping transfers the rigging of the space H_0 to a rigging of the hypercomplex space $L_2(Q, dm(p))$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} H_- & \supseteq & H_0 & \supseteq & H_+. \\ \Big\downarrow \mathbf{I}_\chi^- & & & & \Big\downarrow \mathbf{I}_\chi^+ \\ H_{-1}^\chi & \supseteq & L_2(Q, dm(p)) & \supseteq & H_1^\chi, \end{array} \tag{3.8}$$

Hence, we consider the space H_1^χ is a positive space of the form

$$H_1^\chi = \left\{ \varphi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \varphi_n \, \chi_n \mid \, : \|\varphi\|^2_{H_1^\chi} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\varphi_n|^2 \, (n!)^2 K^n < \infty \right\}, \tag{3.9}$$

where $p_n = \chi_n, h_n = (n!)^2 K^n, n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$, ($K > 1$ is a fixed sufficiently large number), and consists of continuous functions on Q. Similarly, for the space H_1^χ, we have

$$H_{-1}^\chi = \left\{ \xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n \, \chi_n \mid \, : \|\xi\|^2_{H_{-1}^\chi} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n|^2 \, (n!)^2 K^n < \infty \right\}, \tag{3.10}$$

The system $(\chi_n, q_n^\chi)_{n=0}^\infty$, where $q_n^\chi = \mathbf{I}_1^- \chi_n \in H_{-1}^\chi$, is a biorthogonal basis of the space $L_2(Q, dm(p))$. It is essential to introduce the rigging of the hypercomplex space $L_2(Q, dm(p))$ by means of projective and inductive limits of Hilbert spaces which are constructed by rules of type (3.6), (3.8) and (3.9). For every $q \in \mathbb{N}$, we define the Hilbert space of type (3.6):

$$H_q^\chi = \left\{ \varphi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \varphi_n \chi_n \in H_0 : \|\varphi\|^2_{H_q^\chi} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\varphi_n|^2 (n!)^2 K^{qn} < \infty \right\}. \tag{3.11}$$

Then, we have the rigging:

$$(\Psi^\chi)' \supseteq H_{-q}^\chi \supseteq L_2(Q, dm(p)) \supseteq H_q^\chi \supseteq \Psi^\chi, \tag{3.12}$$

$$\Psi^\chi = \operatorname{pr}\lim_{q \in \mathbb{N}} H_q^\chi = \bigcap_{q \in \mathbb{N}} H_q^\chi, \qquad (\Psi^\chi)' = \operatorname{ind}\lim_{q \in \mathbb{N}} H_{-q}^\chi = \bigcup_{q \in \mathbb{N}} H_{-q}^\chi,$$

$$H_{-q}^\chi = \left\{ \xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n q_n^\chi : \|\xi\|^2_{H_{-q}^\chi} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n|^2 (n!)^2 K^{-qn} < \infty \right\}, \tag{3.13}$$

with the action

$$(\xi, \varphi)_{L_2(Q, dm(p))} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n \overline{\varphi_n} (n!)^2 K^{qn}, \quad \varphi \in H_q^\chi, \;\; \xi \in H_{-q}^\chi.$$

To illustrate the above result, we give the following example

Example 3.1. In the classical case when $H_0 := L_2(\mathbb{R}, dx)$ with respect to the Lebesgue measure dx and ordinary convolution. Then, the generalized character $\chi(x, \lambda) = e^{\lambda x}$ ($\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$) and $\chi_n(x) = x^n$ ($x \in \mathbb{R}, \; n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$). Therefore, the space (3.11) consists of entire functions $\varphi(x)$ and $\varphi_n(x)$ are the Taylor coefficients of $\varphi(x)$. Formula (3.2) gives their representation as the Fourier coefficients using the scalar product $(\xi, \varphi)_{H_0}$, ($\xi \in H_{-1}^\chi, \; \varphi \in H_1^\chi$).

Remark. Obviously, such a generalization gives the possibility of constructing a lot of spaces of generalized functions connected with different examples of hypercomplex systems.

6

4 The generalized Wick product

In this section, we devoted to introduce a new version of Wick product with respect to non-Gaussian measures, the associated Hermite transform and the characterization theorem for the constructed spaces of generalized functions. Wick is the first one introduced the product between two functions in white noise space, so this product carry his name [13]. He was used as a tool to renormalize certain infinite quantities in quantum field theory. Later on, the Wick product was considered, in a stochastic ordinary and partial differential equations (see, e.g., [6,8,10]). Under the assumption that $\|\chi\|^2_{H_0} \leq C^n$ for some $C > 0$, we define a new Wick product, called χ-Wick product on the space H^{χ}_{-q}. Then, we give the definition of the χ-Hermite transform and apply it to establish a characterization theorem for the space H^{χ}_{-q}.

Definition 4.1. Let $\xi = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \xi_m q^{\chi}_m$, $\eta = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \eta_n q^{\chi}_n \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$ with $\xi_m, \eta_n \in \mathbb{C}$. The χ-Wick product of ξ, η, denoted by $\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta$, is defined by the formula

$$\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta = \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \xi_m \eta_n q^{\chi}_{m+n}. \tag{4.1}$$

It is important to show that the spaces $H^{\chi}_{-q}, H^{\chi}_{q}$ are closed under χ-Wick product.

Lemma 4.2. If $\xi, \eta \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$ and $\varphi, \psi \in H^{\chi}_{q}$, we have

(i) $\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$,

(ii) $\varphi \diamond_{\chi} \psi \in H^{\chi}_{q}$.

Proof. If $\xi = \sum\limits_{m=0}^{\infty} \xi_m q^{\chi}_m$, $\eta = \sum\limits_{n=0}^{\infty} \eta_n q^{\chi}_n \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$, then for some $q_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ we have

$$\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} |\xi_m|^2 K^{-q_1 m} < \infty \text{ and } \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\eta_n|^2 K^{-q_1 n} < \infty. \tag{4.2}$$

We note that

$$\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta = \sum_{m,n=0}^{\infty} \xi_m \eta_n q^{\chi}_{m+n} = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \left(\sum_{m+n=l}^{\infty} \xi_m \eta_n \right) q^{\chi}_l = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \zeta_l q^{\chi}_l, \tag{4.3}$$

where $\zeta_l = \sum\limits_{m+n=l}^{\infty} \xi_m \eta_n$. With $q = q_1 + p$ we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} |\zeta_l|^2 K^{-ql} &= \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \left| \sum_{m+n=l}^{\infty} \xi_m \eta_n \right|^2 K^{-q_1 l} K^{-pl} \\
&\leq \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} \left(\sum_{m+n=l}^{\infty} |\xi_m|^2 K^{-q_1 m} \right) \left(\sum_{m+n=l}^{\infty} |\eta_n|^2 K^{-q_1 n} \right) K^{-pl} \\
&\leq \left(\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} K^{-pl} \right) \left(\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} |\xi_m|^2 K^{-q_1 m} \right) \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\eta_n|^2 K^{-q_1 n} \right) \\
&< \infty,
\end{aligned} \tag{4.4}$$

which proves $(\boldsymbol{i})$. The proof of $(\boldsymbol{ii})$ is similar. ■

The following important algebraic properties of the χ-Wick product follow directly from Definition 4.1.

Lemma 4.3. For each $\xi, \eta, \zeta \in H_{-q}^{\chi}$, we get

$(\boldsymbol{i})$ $\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta = \eta \diamond_{\chi} \xi$ (Commutative law),

$(\boldsymbol{ii})$ $\xi \diamond_{\chi} (\eta \diamond_{\chi} \zeta) = (\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta) \diamond_{\chi} \zeta$ (Associative law),

$(\boldsymbol{ii})$ $\xi \diamond_{\chi} (\eta + \zeta) = \xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta + \xi \diamond_{\chi} \zeta$ (Distributive law).

Remark. According to Lemmas 4.2. and 4.3., we can conclude that the spaces H_{-q}^{χ} and H_{q}^{χ} form topological algebras with respect to the χ-Wick product.

From the above arguement, the χ-Wick product satisfies all the ordinary algebraic rules for multiplication. But, there are some problems when limit operations are involved. To treat these situations it is convenient to apply a transformation, called the χ-Hermite transform, which converts χ-Wick products into ordinary (complex) products and convergence in H_{-q}^{χ} into bounded, pointwise convergence in a certain neighborhood of 0 in $\mathbb{C}$.

Definition 4.4. Let $\xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n q_n^{\chi} \in H_{-q}^{\chi}$ with $\xi_n \in \mathbb{C}$. Then, the χ-Hermite transform of ξ, denoted by $\mathcal{H}_{\chi}\xi$, is defined by

$$\mathcal{H}_{\chi}\xi(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n z^n \in \mathbb{C} \quad \text{(when convergent)}. \tag{4.5}$$

In the following, we define for $0 < M, q < \infty$ the neighborhoods of zero in $\mathbb{C}$ which denoted it by $\mathbb{O}_{q,M}(0)$:

$$\mathbb{O}_{q,M}(0) = \left\{ z \in \mathbb{C} : \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |z^n|^2 K^{qn} < M^2 \right\}. \tag{4.6}$$

It is easy to see that

$$q \leq p,\ N \leq M \Rightarrow \mathbb{O}_{q,N}(0) \subseteq \mathbb{O}_{q,M}(0). \tag{4.7}$$

Note that, if $\xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n q_n^{\chi} \in H_{-q}^{\chi}, z \in \mathbb{O}_{q,M}(0)$ for some $0 < M, q < \infty$, we have the estimate

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n||z^n| &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n||z^n| K^{-\frac{qn}{2}} K^{\frac{qn}{2}} \\ &\leq \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n|^2 K^{-qn} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |z^n|^2 K^{qn} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &< M \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |\xi_n|^2 K^{-qn} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &< \infty. \end{aligned} \tag{4.8}$$

The conclusion above can be stated as follows:

Proposition 4.5. If $\xi \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$, then $\mathcal{H}_{\chi}\xi$ converges for all $z \in \mathbb{O}_q(M)$ for all $q, M < \infty$.

Proposition 4.6. If $\xi, \eta \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$, then

$$\mathcal{H}_{\chi}(\xi \diamond_{\chi} \eta)(z) = \mathcal{H}_{\chi}\xi(z).\mathcal{H}_{\chi}\eta(z). \tag{4.9}$$

for all z such that $\mathcal{H}_{\chi}\xi$ and $\mathcal{H}_{\chi}\eta$ exist.

Proof. The proof is an immediate consequence of Definitions 4.1. and 4.4.

Let $\xi = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \xi_n q_n^{\chi} \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$, with $\xi_n \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, the number $\xi_0 = \mathcal{H}_{\chi}\xi(0) \in \mathbb{R}$ is called the generalized expectation of ξ and is denoted by $\mathbb{E}(\xi)$. Suppose that $V \ni z \mapsto f(z) \in \mathbb{C}$ is an analytic function, where V is a neighborhood of $\mathbb{E}(\xi)$. Assume that the Taylor series of f around $\mathbb{E}(\xi)$ has coefficients in $\mathbb{R}$. Then, the χ-Wick version $f^{\diamond_{\chi}}$ of f is defined by

$$H^{\chi}_{-q} \ni \xi \mapsto f^{\diamond_{\chi}}(\xi) = \mathcal{H}^{-1}\big(f \circ \mathcal{H}_{\chi}(\xi)\big) \in H^{\chi}_{-q}. \tag{4.10}$$

Example 4.7. If the function $f : \mathbb{C} \to \mathbb{C}$ is entire, then $f^{\diamond_{\chi}}$ is defined for all $\xi \in H^{\chi}_{-q}$. For example, the χ-Wick exponential is defined by

$$\exp^{\diamond_{\chi}}(\xi) = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{j!}\xi^{\diamond_{\chi} n}. \tag{4.11}$$

5 Concluding Remarks

The space of continuous linear functional on $\mathcal{S}(Q)$ are called tempered distributions, and is denoted by $\mathcal{S}'(Q)$. Let $L \in \mathcal{S}'(Q)$ and $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^d_+$. The weak derivative $D^{\alpha}L$ (or the derivative of the sense of distributions) is given by

$$(D^{\alpha}L)(f) = (-1)^{|\alpha|}L(D^{\alpha}f) \tag{5.1}$$

for $f \in (Q)$. This corresponds to $D^{\alpha}L\{g\} = L\{D^{\alpha}g\}$. Note that distribution always has a weak derivative. A function f is completely monotonic if for each $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}^n_+$, $(-1)^{|\alpha|}D^{\alpha}f(x) \geq 0$ on $\mathbb{R}^n_+$; see [4, 7, 12] for many properties of completely monotonic functions. Bernstien's theorem asserts that f is completely monotonic if and only if $f(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-x.t}d\mu(t)$ where μ is a positive measure supported on a subset of $\mathbb{R}^n_+$. If assume that $Q = \mathbb{R}^n$. So, $x = (x_1, ..., x_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n$. Let x^{α} be denote the product $x_1^{\alpha_1} ... x_n^{\alpha_n}$, $\mathbb{Z}^n_+$ denote the set of n-tuples $(\alpha_1, ..., \alpha_n)$ where each α_i is a non-negative integer, $|\alpha| = \sum_{i=1}^n \alpha_i$ and D^{α} denote the partial differential operator $\frac{\partial^{|\alpha|}}{\partial x_1^{\alpha_1} ... \partial x_n^{\alpha_n}}$. Then, we obtain the special case $\mathcal{S}(Q) = \mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the space of rabidly decreasing function on $\mathbb{R}^n$ (so-called Schwartz space) and its dual $\mathcal{S}'(Q) = \mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is the space of tempered distribution on $\mathbb{R}^n$.

References

[1] Yu. M. Berezansky and A. A. Kalyuzhnyi, *Harmonic Analysis in Hypercomplex Systems*, Naukova Dumka,Kyiv, Ukrania, 1992. (in Russian; English transl.: Kluwer: Dordrecht-Boston-London, 1996).

[2] Yu. M. Berezansky and Yu. G. Kondratiev, *Spectral methods in infinite dimensional analysis*, vol. 1, 2, Kluwer, Dordrecht 1995.

[3] Yu. M. Berezanskyi and Yu. S. Samoilenko, Nuclear spaces of functions of infinitely many variables, Ukr. Mat. Zh., 25, No. 6, 723-737 (1973).

[4] C. Berg, J. P. R. Christensen, P. Ressel, *Harmonic Analysis on Semigroups: Theory of Positive Definite and Related Functions*, Springer-Verlag: Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, 1984.

[5] I. M. Gelfand and G. E. Shilov, Generalized Function, Academic Press,Inc., 1964.

[6] H. A. Ghany, Exact solutions for stochastic generalized Hirota-Satsuma coupled KdV equations, *Chinese Journal of Physics*, vol. **49**, no. 4, (2011) 926-940.

[7] H. A. Ghany, Harmonic analysis in the product of commutative hypercomplex systems. *Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications,* **25** (5), (2018) 875-888.

[8] H. A. Ghany and M. A. Qurashi, Travelling Solitary Wave Solutions for Stochastic Kadomtsev-Petviashvili Equation. *Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications,* **21** (1), (2015) 121-131.

[9] T. Hida, Analysis of Brownian Functionals, Carleton Math. Lect. Notes, No. 13 (1975).

[10] H. Holden, B. Øsendal, J. Ubøe and T. Zhang, *Stochastic partial differential equations,* Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, (2010).

[11] J. Lighthill, Introduction to Fourier Analysis and Generalized Function,cambridge university press,1958.

[12] A. S. Okb El Bab and H. A. Ghany, Harmonic analysis on hypergroups systems, *AIP Conf. Proc.*, **312** (2010) 1309.

[13] G. C. Wick, The evaluation of the collinear matrix, *Phys. Rev* **80** (1950), 268-272.

QUADRATIC TYPE FUNCTIONAL INCLUSIONS ON SQUARE-SYMMETRIC GROUPOIDS AND HYERS-ULAM STABILITY

GWANG HUI KIM AND HWAN-YONG SHIN

Abstract. We consider that a set-valued map $F : X \to \mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ satisfying the functional inclusion $F(x * y)\Diamond F(x * y^{-1}) \subseteq \sigma_\Diamond(F(x)\Diamond F(y))$(or $\sigma_\Diamond(F(x)\Diamond F(y)) \subseteq \sigma_\Diamond(F(x * y)\Diamond F(x * y^{-1})))$ admits a unique selection $f : X \to Y$ satisfying the functional equation $f(x*y)\diamond f(x* y^{-1}) = \sigma_\diamond(f(x) \diamond f(y))$ in appropriate conditions, where $(X, *)$, $(Y, \diamond)$ are square-symmetric groupoids and $\Diamond$ is the extension of $\diamond$ to the collection $\mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ of all nonempty subsets of Y.

1. Introduction

Let $(X, *), (Y, \diamond)$ be groupoids with binary operations. If the binary oepration $*$ satisfies the following inequality

$$(x * y) * (x * y) = (x * x) * (y * y), \quad x, y \in X$$

then the operation $*$ is called square-symmetric. Note that the square symmetric $*$ implies that $\sigma_*(x) := x*x$ is an endomorphism. A binary operation $*$ such that σ_* is an automorphism of $(X, *)$ is called divisible and the corresponding groupoid is said to be a divisible groupoid. The triple $(Y, \diamond, d)$ is called a metric groupoid if $(Y, \diamond)$ is a groupoid, (Y, d) is a metric space and $\diamond$ is a continuous operation with respect to the topology of (Y, d). For a nonempty set Y we denote by $\mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ the collection of all nonempty subsets of Y. The diameter of a set $A \in \mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ is defined by

$$\delta(A) := \sup\{d(x, y)|x, y \in A\}.$$

The Lipschitz modulus of a function $f : X \to Y$ is the smallest real extended number L with the property

$$d(f(x), f(y)) \le Ld(x, y), \quad x, y \in Y.$$

The Lipschitz modulus of a function f is denoted by $Lipf$. A selection of a set-valued mapping $F : X \to \mathcal{P}_0$ is a single-valued map $f : X \to Y$ with the property $f(x) \in F(x)$ for all $x \in X$.

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* 39B72, 54C60.

Key words and phrases. Hyers–Ulam stability; square-symmetric groupoid; functional inclusion.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

In a linear normed space $(Y, \|\cdot\|)$ we define the following families of sets

$$\begin{aligned} c(Y) &:= \{A : A \in \mathcal{P}_0(Y), A \text{ is convex set}\} \\ ccl(Y) &:= \{A : A \in \mathcal{P}_0(Y), A \text{ is closed and convex set}\} \\ cc(Y) &:= \{A : A \in \mathcal{P}_0(Y), A \text{ is compact and convex set}\}. \end{aligned}$$

The theory of stability of functional equations had been formulated by Ulam [14]. In 1941, Hyers [3] had answered affirmatively the question of Ulam for Banach spaces and it represents the starting point of the Hyers–Ulam stability of functional equations. Let us recall the Hyers' result.

Theorem 1.1. [3] *Let X be a linear normed space, Y a Banach space and $\varepsilon > 0$. If a function $f : X \to Y$ satisfies the following inequality*

$$\|f(x+y) - f(x) - f(y)\| \leq \varepsilon, \quad x, y \in X \tag{1.1}$$

then there exists a unique additive function $g : X \to Y$ such that

$$\|f(x) - g(x)\| \leq \varepsilon, \quad x \in X. \tag{1.2}$$

Smajdor [13] and Gajda and Ger [2] observed an interesting connection between the stability of the Cauchy functional equation and set-valued functions satisfying $F(x+y) \subseteq F(x) + F(y)$. If $f : X \to Y$ satisfies (1.1), then the set-valued mapping $F : X \to \mathcal{P}_0$ defined by

$$F(x) = f(x) + \overline{B}(0, \varepsilon), \quad x \in X,$$

where $\overline{B}(0, \varepsilon)$ is the closed ball in Y centered at 0 and radius $\varepsilon > 0$, implies that $F(x+y) \subseteq F(x) + F(y)$ for $x, y \in X$, and the function g from relation (1.2) is an additive selection of F. Naturally Gajda and Ger [2] considered under what conditions a set-valued mapping with $F(x+y) \subseteq F(x) + F(y)$ admits an additive selection and they obtained the following theorem.

Theorem 1.2. [2] *Let $(S, +)$ be a commutative semigroup with zero element, X a Banach space over $\mathbb{R}$ and $F : S \to ccl(X)$ a set-valued mapping with convex and closed values such that $F(x+y) \subseteq F(x) + F(y)$ for $x, y \in S$ and $\sup_{x \in S} \delta(F(x)) < \infty$. Then F admits a unique additive selection.*

For the last two decades, many mathematicians have developed Theorem 1.2 [6, 9, 10, 11] and investigated various properties of functional inclusion and its connectedness of Hyers–Ulam stability of functional equations [4, 5, 7, 8, 12].

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

The aim of this paper is to study some properties for set-valued mappings satisfying the following quadratic type functional inclusions

$$\sigma_{\lozenge}(F(x)\lozenge F(y)) \subseteq F(x*y)\lozenge F(x*y^{-1})$$
$$F(x*y)\lozenge F(x*y^{-1}) \subseteq \sigma_{\lozenge}(F(x)\lozenge F(y))$$

and obtain Hyers-Ulam stability of functional equation.

2. Main results

Let $\mathbb{N}_0 = \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$. Throughout this section, suppose that the operation $\lozenge$ satisfies the following condition : for all $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists $\eta > 0$ such that if $\delta(A), \delta(B) < \eta, A, B \in \mathcal{P}_0(Y)$, then

$$\delta(A\lozenge B) < \varepsilon$$

and we assume that X and Y have unique identity id_X and id_Y respectively.

If the operation $\diamond$ satisfies that

$$(x_1 \diamond y_1) \diamond (x_2 \diamond y_2) = (x_1 \diamond x_2) \diamond (y_1 \diamond y_2)$$

for all $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2 \in Y$, then we say $\diamond$ is bisymmetric operation.

Lemma 2.1. [9] *If $(Y, \diamond)$ is a groupoid with a bisymmetric operation, then $\sigma_\diamond$ is increasing endomorphism of $(\mathcal{P}_0(Y), \lozenge, \subseteq)$.*

Now, we present the main theorem of this paper.

Theorem 2.2. *Let $(X, *)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Y, \diamond, d)$ a complete metric bisymmetric divisible groupoid and $F : X \to \mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ with $F(id_X) = \{id_Y\}$ a set-valued mapping such that*

$$\sigma_{\lozenge}(F(x)\lozenge F(y)) \subseteq F(x*y)\lozenge F(x*y^{-1}) \tag{2.1}$$

for all $x, y \in X$. Assume that

$$\lim_{m\to\infty} \delta(F \circ \sigma_*^{-m}(x))Lip(\sigma_\diamond^{2m}) = 0, \quad \text{and} \tag{2.2}$$
$$\sigma_{\lozenge}^{2n} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x) \in cl(Y)$$

for all $x \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Then there exists a unique selection $f : X \to Y$ of F such that

$$\sigma_\diamond(f(x) \diamond f(y)) = f(x*y) \diamond f(x*y^{-1}) \tag{2.3}$$

for all $x, y \in X$.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Proof. First we prove that there exists a selection of F satisfying (2.3). Consider the set valued mapping $F_n : X \to \mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ corresponding to F defined by

$$F_0 := F, \quad F_n := \sigma_{\Diamond}^{2n} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^{-n}. \tag{2.4}$$

for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Letting x, y by $\sigma_*^{-n-1}(x)$ in (2.14) respectively, we get

$$\sigma_{\Diamond}^{2} \circ F(\sigma_*^{-n-1}(x)) \subseteq F(\sigma_*^{-n}(x)) \tag{2.5}$$

for all $x \in X$. By composing $\sigma_{\diamond}^{2n}$ to the both sides of (2.5) and using Lemma 2.1, we obtain

$$\sigma_{\Diamond}^{2n+2} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^{-n-1}(x) \subseteq \sigma_{\Diamond}^{2n} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x)$$

for all $x \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. This means that $\{F_n(x)\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ is a decreasing sequence of closed subsets of the Banach space Y. Let $s, t \in F_m(x)$ for some fixed $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Denoting $\sigma_{\diamond}^{-2m}(s) = u$, $\sigma_{\diamond}^{-2m}(t) = v$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} d(s,t) &= d(\sigma_{\diamond}^{2m}(u), \sigma_{\diamond}^{2m}(v)) \leq Lip(\sigma_{\diamond}^{2m}) \cdot d(u,v) \\ &\leq Lip(\sigma_{\diamond}^{2m}) \delta(F \circ \sigma_*^{-m}(x)) \end{aligned}$$

and this implies that

$$\delta(F_m(x)) \leq Lip(\sigma_{\diamond}^{2m}) \cdot \delta(F \circ \sigma_*^{-m}(x)) \tag{2.6}$$

for all $x \in X$. Taking the limit $m \to \infty$ of (2.6), we find that

$$\lim_{m \to \infty} \delta(F_m(x))$$

for all $x \in X$. It is follows from the Cantor intersection theorem in the complete metric spaces that

$$\bigcap_{n=0}^{\infty} F_n(x) \tag{2.7}$$

is singleton $f(x)$. Since the function $f : X \to Y$ satisfies $f(x) \in F_0(x) = F(x)$ for all $x \in X$, f is a selection of F.

Putting x, y for $\sigma_*^{-n}(x)$ and $\sigma_*^{-n}(y)$, respectively in (2.14) and applying $\sigma_{\Diamond}^{2n}$ to the both sides of (2.14), we arrive at

$$\sigma_{\Diamond}(F_n(x) \Diamond F_n(y)) \subseteq F_n(x * y) \Diamond F_n(x * y^{-1}) \tag{2.8}$$

for all $x, y \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Since $\{f(x)\} = \bigcap_{n=0}^{\infty} F_n(x), x \in X$, we have $\sigma_{\diamond}(f(x) \diamond f(y)) \in \sigma_{\Diamond}(F_n(x) \Diamond F_n(y))$, for all $x, y \in X$, $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Therefore, in view of (2.8), we get

$$d(\sigma_{\diamond}(f(x) \diamond f(y)), f(x * y) \diamond f(x * y^{-1})) \leq \delta(F_n(x * y) \diamond F_n(x * y^{-1})) \tag{2.9}$$

for all $x, y \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Taking the limit $n \to \infty$ of (2.9), it is reduced to the equation

$$\sigma_{\diamond}(f(x) \diamond f(y)) = f(x * y) \diamond f(x * y^{-1}), \text{ for all } x, y \in X. \tag{2.10}$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

To show the uniqueness of f, assume that $g : X \to Y$ is a selection of F such that

$$\sigma_\diamond(g(x) \diamond g(y)) = g(x * y) \diamond g(x * y^{-1}), \text{ for all } x, y \in X. \tag{2.11}$$

From (2.10) and (2.11), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \sigma_\diamond^{2n} \circ f \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x), \\ g(x) &= \sigma_\diamond^{2n} \circ g \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x) \end{aligned}$$

for all $x \in X, n \in \mathbb{N}$. Hence, for $x \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} d(f(x), g(x)) &= d(\sigma_\diamond^{2n} \circ f \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x), \sigma_\diamond^{2n} \circ g \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x)) \\ &= Liq(\sigma_\diamond^{2n}) d(f \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x), g \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x)) \\ &\leq Liq(\sigma_\diamond^{2n}) \delta(F \circ \sigma_\circ^{-n}(x)). \end{aligned}$$

Taking $n \to \infty$, we arrive at the desired conclusion. □

Next, we are going to establish another theorem about the inclusion (2.14).

Theorem 2.3. *Let $(X, *)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Y, \diamond, d)$ a metric bisymmetric divisible groupoid and A a divisible subgroupoid of $(\mathcal{P}_0(Y), \Diamond)$. Suppose that $F : X \to A$ with $F(id_X) = \{id_Y\}$ is a set-valued mapping subject to the condition* (2.14) *and satisfying*

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \delta(F \circ \sigma_*^n(x)) Lip(\sigma_\diamond^{-2n}) = 0, \quad x \in X. \tag{2.12}$$

Then F is single-valued mapping and

$$\sigma_\Diamond(F(x) \Diamond F(y)) = F(x * y) \Diamond F(x * y^{-1}), \quad \text{for all } x, y \in X. \tag{2.13}$$

Proof. Consider the function $G_n : X \to A$ corresponding to F defined by

$$G_0 := F, \quad G_n := \sigma_\Diamond^{-2n} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^n$$

for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Replacing x, y by $\sigma_*^n(x)$ in (2.12) respectively, and then composing on both sides by $\sigma_\Diamond^{-2n-2}$, we have

$$\sigma_\Diamond^{-2n} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^n(x) \subseteq \sigma_\Diamond^{-2n-2} \circ F \circ \sigma_*^{n+1}(x)$$

for all $x, y \in X$. This means that $\{G_n(x)\}_{n=0}^\infty$ is an increasing sequence of $(A, \Diamond)$. By the similar argument in the proof of Theorem 2.2, we see that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \delta(G_n(x)) \leq \lim_{n\to\infty} \delta(F \circ \sigma_*^n(x)) Lip(\sigma_\diamond^{-2n}) = 0, \quad \text{for all } x \in X.$$

It implies that $\delta(G_n(x)) = 0$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$ and $G_n(x)$ is single-valued for all $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Therefore, in view of (2.14), $G_0 = F$ satisfies (2.13) and the proof is completed. □

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Corollary 2.4. *Let $(X, *)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Z, \|\cdot\|)$ a Banace space over $\mathbb{R}$, $p, q \in \mathbb{R}$, $p+q \neq 0$, $p+q \neq 1$, and $F : X \to c(Z)$ with $F(id_X) = \{0_Z\}$ a set-valued mapping such that*

$$p(p+q)F(x) + q(p+q)F(y)) \subseteq pF(x*y) + qF(x*y^{-1}) \tag{2.14}$$

for all $x, y \in X$. Assume that there exists $M > 0$ such that

$$\delta(F(x)) \leq M, \quad and$$
$$F \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x) \in cl(Y)$$

for all $x, y \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then there exists a unique selection $f : X \to Z$ of F such that

$$p(p+q)f(x) + q(p+q)f(y) = pf(x*y) + qf(x*y^{-1}), \quad x, y \in X. \tag{2.15}$$

Proof. Consider the operation $\diamond : Z \times Z \to Z$ is defined by

$$x \diamond y = px + qy, \quad x, y \in Z,$$

where $p, q \in \mathbb{R}$ are given real numbers. Then the triple $(Z, \diamond, \|\cdot\|)$ is a metric groupoid with a bisymmetric operation. For all $U, V \in \mathcal{P}_0(Z)$, the operation $\Diamond$ is naturally defined by

$$U \Diamond V = pU + qV$$

and we have $\sigma_\Diamond(U) = (p+q)U$ and in general, $\sigma_\Diamond^n(U) = (p+q)^n U$, for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. And we get

$$Lip(\sigma_\diamond^{2n}) = |p+q|^{2n}, \quad n \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

If $|p+q| < 1$, we have

$$\sigma_\Diamond^{2n} \circ F \circ_*^{-n}(x) = (p+q)^{2n} F \circ \sigma_*^{-n}(x) \in cl(Z)$$

and

$$\delta(F \circ \sigma_*^{-n}) \leq M|p+q|^{2n}, \quad x \in X, n \in \mathbb{N}_0,$$

thus, by Theorem 2.2, there exists a unique selection of F satisfying (2.15).

If $|p+q| > 1$, we obtain

$$\delta(F \circ \sigma_*^n) Lip(\sigma_\diamond^{-2n}) \leq \frac{M}{|p+q|^{2n}}, \quad x \in X, n \in \mathbb{N}_0.$$

By using Theorem 2.3, F is single-valued mapping satisfying (2.15). We arrive at the desired conclusion. $\square$

Corollary 2.5. *Let $(X, *)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Z, \|\cdot\|)$ a Banach space over $\mathbb{R}$, $p, q, \varepsilon > 0, p+q < 1$, and $z \in Z$. Assume that $f : X \to Z$ is a function satisfying*

$$\|pf(x*y) + qf(x*y^{-1}) - p(p+q)f(x) - q(p+q)f(y) - z\| \leq \varepsilon, \quad x, y \in X.$$

Then there exists a unique function $g : X \to Z$ satisfying

$$pg(x*y) + qg(x*y^{-1}) = p(p+q)g(x) + q(p+q)g(y) + z, \quad x, y \in X \tag{2.16}$$

and

$$\|f(x) - g(x)\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}, \quad x \in X. \tag{2.17}$$

Proof. Consider the auxiliary set-valued mapping $G_f : X \to ccl(Z)$ corresponding to f defined by

$$G_f(x) = f(x) + \frac{1}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}(\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z), \quad \text{if } x \in X - \{id_X\}$$

and $G_f(id_X) = \{0_Z\}$. Then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
p(p+q)G_f(x) + q(p+q)G_f(y) &= p(p+q)f(x) + \frac{p(p+q)}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}(\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z) \\
&\quad + q(p+q)f(y) + \frac{q(p+q)}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}(\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z) \\
&\subseteq pf(x*y) + qf(x*y^{-1}) + (\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z) \\
&\quad + \frac{(p+q)^2}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}(\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z) \\
&= pf(x*y) + \frac{p}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}(\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z) \\
&\quad + qf(x*y^{-1}) + \frac{q}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}(\overline{B}(0,\varepsilon) - z) \\
&= pG_f(x*y) + qG_f(x*y^{-1})
\end{aligned}$$

for all $x, y \in X$. By the definition of $\delta(G_f(x))$, we have

$$\delta(G_f(x)) \leq \frac{2\varepsilon}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}$$

for all $x \in X$. Since all conditions of Corollary 2.4 are equipped, G_f has a unique selection $h : X \to Z$ such that

$$ph(x*y) + qh(x*y^{-1}) = p(p+q)h(x) + q(p+q)h(y), \quad x, y \in X.$$

Defining the function $g : X \to Z$ as

$$g(x) = h(x) + \frac{z}{(1-p-q)(p+q)}$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

for all $x \in X$, we see that the function g satisfies (2.16) and (2.17). □

Next, we will introduce some theorems and corollaries which are obtained by the similar proofs of Theorem 2.2, 2.3 and Corollary 2.4, 2.5.

Theorem 2.6. *Let $(X,*)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Y,\diamond,d)$ a complete metric bisymmetric divisible groupoid and $F: X \to \mathcal{P}_0(Y)$ with $F(id_X) = \{id_Y\}$ a set-valued mapping such that*

$$F(x*y)\Diamond F(x*y^{-1}) \subseteq \sigma_{\Diamond}(F(x)\Diamond F(y)) \tag{2.18}$$

for all $x, y \in X$. Assume that

$$\lim_{m\to\infty} \delta(F\circ\sigma_*^m(x))Lip(\sigma_{\Diamond}^{-2m}) = 0, \quad and$$
$$\sigma_{\Diamond}^{2n}\circ F\circ\sigma_*^{-n}(x) \in cl(Y)$$

for all $x \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Then there exists a unique selection $f: X \to Y$ of F such that

$$\sigma_{\diamond}(f(x)\diamond f(y)) = f(x*y)\diamond f(x*y^{-1})$$

for all $x, y \in X$.

Theorem 2.7. *Let $(X,*)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Y,\diamond,d)$ a metric bisymmetric divisible groupoid and A a divisible subgroupoid of $(\mathcal{P}_0(Y),\Diamond)$. Suppose that $F: X \to A$ with $F(id_X) = \{id_Y\}$ is a set-valued mapping subject to the condition (2.18) and satisfying*

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \delta(F\circ\sigma_*^{2n}(x))Lip(\sigma_{\Diamond}^{2n}) = 0, \quad x \in X.$$

Then F is single valued and

$$\sigma_{\Diamond}(F(x)\Diamond F(y)) = F(x*y)\Diamond F(x*y^{-1}), \quad for\ all\ x, y \in X.$$

Corollary 2.8. *Let $(X,*)$ be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid, $(Z,\|\cdot\|)$ a Banace space over $\mathbb{R}$, $p, q \in \mathbb{R}$, $p+q \neq 0$, $p+q \neq 1$, and $F: X \to c(Z)$ with $F(id_X) = \{0_Z\}$ a set-valued mapping subject to the condition (2.18). Assume that there exists $M > 0$ such that*

$$\delta(F(x)) \le M, \quad and$$
$$F\circ\sigma_*^{-n}(x) \in cl(Z)$$

for all $x, y \in X$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}_0$. Then there exists a unique selection $f: X \to Z$ of F such that

$$p(p+q)f(x) + q(p+q)f(y) = pf(x*y) + qf(x*y^{-1}), \quad x, y \in X.$$

Corollary 2.9. *Let* $(X, *)$ *be a square-symmetric divisible groupoid,* $(Z, \|\cdot\|)$ *a Banach space over* $\mathbb{R}$*,* $p, q, \varepsilon > 0, p+q > 1,$ *and* $z \in Z$*. Assume that* $f : X \to Z$ *is a function satisfying*

$$\|pf(x*y) + qf(x*y^{-1}) - p(p+q)f(x) - q(p+q)f(y) - z\| \leq \varepsilon, \quad x, y \in X.$$

Then there exists a unique function $g : X \to Z$ *satisfying*

$$pg(x*y) + qg(x*y^{-1}) = p(p+q)g(x) + q(p+q)g(y) + z, \quad x, y \in X$$

and

$$\|f(x) - g(x)\| \leq \frac{\varepsilon}{(p+q-1)(p+q)}, \quad x \in X.$$

Remark. If $(X, +, \cdot)$ is a vector space and $*$ is defined by $x * y = x + y$ and $z = 0$, $p = q = 1$, $y^{-1} = -y$ in Corollary 2.9, then it is a same result of Czerwik [1].

Acknowledgment

The second author of this work was supported by Basic Science Research Program through the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) funded by the Ministry of Education, Science and Technology (Grant number: 2015R1D1A1A01058083).

References

[1] S. Czerwik, *On the stability of the quadratic mapping in normed space*, Bull. Abh. Math. Sem. Univ. Hamburg, **62** (1992), 59-64.

[2] Z. Gajda, R. Ger. *Subadditive multifunctions and Hyers–Ulam stability*, Numer. Math. **80**, (1987), 281-291.

[3] D. H. Hyers, *On the stability of the linear functional equation*, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., **27**, (1941), 222–224.

[4] G.H. Kim, *On the stability of homogeneous functional equations with degree t and n-variables*, Mathematical Inequalities and Applications, **6**, (2003), 675-688.

[5] G.H. Kim, *On the stability of functional equations on a square-symmetric groupoid*, Nonlinear Analysis: Theory, Methods and Applications, **63**, (2005), 2559-2568.

[6] K. Nikodem, D. Popa, *On selections of general linear inclusions*, Publ. Math. Debrecen **75**, (2009), 239-249.

[7] M. Piszczek, *On selections of set-valued inclusions in a single variable with applications to several variables*, Results. Math., **64**, (2013), 1-12.

[8] M. Piszczek, *The properties of functional inclusions and Hyers–Ulam stability*, Aequat. Math., **85**, (2013), 111-118.

[9] D. Popa, *Functional inclusions on square-symmetric grupoids and Hyers–Ulam stability*, Math. Inequal. Appl., **3**, (2004), 419–428.

[10] D. Popa, *A property of a functional inclusion connected with Hyers–Ulam stability*, J. Math. Inequal., **4**, (2009), 591-598.

[11] J. Brzdek, D. Popa, B. Xu, *Selections of set-valued maps satisfying a linear inclusion in a single variable*, Nonlinear Analysis, **74**, (2011), 324-330.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

[12] J. Sikorska, *Set-valued Orthogonal Additivity*,Set-Valued Var. Anal. **23**, (2015), 547-557.
[13] W. Smajdor, *Superadditive set-valued functions*, Glas. Math. **21**, (1986), 343-348.
[14] S. M. Ulam, Problems in Modern Mathematics, Chapter 6, Wiley Interscience, New York, (1964).

Gwang Hui Kim, Department of Mathematics, Kangnam Universaty,Yongin, Gyeonggi 16979, Republic of Korea
E-mail address: ghkim@kangnam.ac.kr

Hwan-Yong Shin, Department of Mathematics, Chungnam National University,99 Daehangno, Yuseong-gu, Daejeon 34134, Republic of Korea
E-mail address: hyshin31@cnu.ac.kr

Explicit identities involving r-Bell polynomials

Cheon Seoung Ryoo

Department of Mathematics, Hannam University, Daejeon 306-791, Korea

Abstract : In this paper, we study differential equations arising from the generating functions of the r-Bell polynomials. We give explicit identities for the r-Bell polynomials.

Key words : Differential equations, Bell polynomials, r-Bell polynomials.

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification : 05A19, 11B68, 11S40, 11S80, 11B83, 34A30, 65L99.

1 Introduction

The moments of the Poisson distribution are well-known to be connected to the combinatorics of the Bell and Stirling numbers(see [1, 4, 5]). As is well known, the Bell numbers B_n are given by the generating function

$$e^{(e^t-1)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n \frac{t^n}{n!}. \tag{1.1}$$

The Bell polynomials $B_n(\lambda)$ are given by the generating function

$$e^{\lambda(e^t-1)} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} B_n(\lambda) \frac{t^n}{n!}. \tag{1.2}$$

The Bell polynomials $B_n(\lambda)$ satisfy the relation $B_n(\lambda) = E_\lambda[Z^n], n \in \mathbb{N}$, where Z is a Poisson random variable with parameter $\lambda > 0$.

The r-Bell polynomials $G_n(x,r)$ are defined by the exponential generating function:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} G_n(x,r) \frac{t^n}{n!} = e^{rt+x(e^t-1)}, \text{ (see [4])}, \tag{1.3}$$

where, r may be real or complex numbers. Note that $B_n(x) = G_n(x,0)$. The first few examples of r-Bell polynomials $G_n(x,r)$ are

$$\begin{aligned}
&G_0(x,r) = 1,\\
&G_1(x,r) = r + x,\\
&G_2(x,r) = r^2 + x + 2rx + x^2,\\
&G_3(x,r) = r^3 + x + 3rx + 3r^2x + 3x^2 + 3rx^2 + x^3,\\
&G_4(x,r) = r^4 + x + 4rx + 6r^2x + 4r^3x + 7x^2 + 12rx^2\\
&\qquad\qquad + 6r^2x^2 + 6x^3 + 4rx^3 + x^4,\\
&G_5(x,r) = r^5 + x + 5rx + 10r^2x + 10r^3x + 5r^4x + 15x^2 + 35rx^2\\
&\qquad\qquad + 30r^2x^2 + 10r^3x^2 + 25x^3 + 30rx^3 + 10r^2x^3 + 10x^4 + 5rx^4 + x^5.
\end{aligned}$$

From (1.2) and (1.3), we see that

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} G_n(x,r)\frac{t^n}{n!} &= e^{(e^t-1)x}e^{rt}\\ &= \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} B_k(x)\frac{t^k}{k!}\right)\left(\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} r^m\frac{t^m}{m!}\right)\\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\left(\sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}B_k(x)r^{n-k}\right)\frac{t^n}{n!}.\end{aligned} \tag{1.4}$$

Comparing the coefficients on both sides of (1.4), we obtain

$$G_n(x,r) = \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}B_k(x)r^{n-k} \quad (n \geq 0).$$

Similarly we also have

$$G_n(x+y,r) = \sum_{k=0}^{n}\binom{n}{k}G_k(x,r)B_{n-k}(y).$$

Recently, many mathematicians have have studied the differential equations arising from the generating function of special polynomials(see [2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 9]). In this paper, we study differential equations arising from the generating function of r-Bell polynomials. We give explicit identities for the r-Bell polynomials.

2 Explicit identities involving r-Bell polynomials

Differential equations arising from the generating functions of special polynomials are studied by many authors in order to give explicit identities for special polynomials(see [7, 8, 13]). In this section, we study differential equations arising from the generating functions of r-Bell polynomials.

Let

$$F = F(t,x,r) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} G_n(x,r)\frac{t^n}{n!} = e^{rt+(e^t-1)x}, \quad x, r \in \mathbb{C}. \tag{2.1}$$

Then, by (2.1), we have

$$\begin{aligned}F^{(1)} = \frac{d}{dt}F(t,x,r) = \frac{d}{dt}\left(e^{rt+(e^t-1)x}\right)\\ &= e^{rt+(e^t-1)x}(r+xe^t)\\ &= re^{rt+(e^t-1)x} + xe^{(r+1)t+(e^t-1)x}\\ &= rF(t,x,r) + xF(t,x,r+1),\end{aligned} \tag{2.2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}F^{(2)} &= \frac{d}{dt}F^{(1)} = rF^{(1)}(t,x,r) + xF^{(1)}(t,x,r+1)\\ &= r^2F(t,x,r) + x(2r+1)F(t,x,r+1) + x^2F(t,x,r+2),\end{aligned} \tag{2.3}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}F^{(3)} &= \frac{d}{dt}F^{(2)}\\ &= r^2F^{(1)}(t,x,r) + x(2r+1)F^{(1)}(t,x,r+1) + x^2F^{(1)}(t,x,r+2)\\ &= r^3F(t,x,r) + x\left(r^2+(2r+1)(r+1)\right)F(t,x,r+1)\\ &\quad + x^2(3r+3)F(t,x,r+2) + x^3F(t,x,r+3).\end{aligned}$$

Continuing this process, we can guess that

$$\begin{aligned} F^{(N)} &= \left(\frac{d}{dt}\right)^N F(t,x,r) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)F(t,x,r+i), (N=0,1,2,\ldots). \end{aligned} \tag{2.4}$$

Taking the derivative with respect to t in (2.4), we get

$$\begin{aligned} F^{(N+1)} = \frac{dF^{(N)}}{dt} &= \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)F^{(1)}(t,x,r+i) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)\left\{(r+i)F(t,x,r+i) + xF(t,x,r+i+1)\right\} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)(r+i)F(t,x,r+i) \\ &\qquad + x\sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)F(t,x,r+(i+1)) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{N}(r+i)a_i(N,x,r)F(t,x,r+i) \\ &\qquad + x\sum_{i=1}^{N+1} a_{i-1}(N,x,r)F(t,x,r+i). \end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

On the other hand, by replacing N by $N+1$ in (2.4), we get

$$F^{(N+1)} = \sum_{i=0}^{N+1} a_i(N+1,x,r)F(t,x,r+i). \tag{2.6}$$

Comparing the coefficients on both sides of (2.5) and (2.6), we obtain

$$a_0(N+1,x,r) = ra_0(N,x,r), \quad a_{N+1}(N+1,x,r) = xa_N(N,x,r), \tag{2.7}$$

and

$$a_i(N+1,x,r) = (r+i)a_{i-1}(N,x,r) + xa_{i-1}(N,x,r), (1 \le i \le N). \tag{2.8}$$

In addition, by (2.4), we get

$$F(t,x,r) = F^{(0)}(t,x,r) = a_0(0,x,r)F(t,x,r). \tag{2.9}$$

By (2.9), we get

$$a_0(0,x,r) = 1. \tag{2.10}$$

It is not difficult to show that

$$\begin{aligned} &rF(t,x,r) + xF(t,x,r+1) \\ &= F^{(1)}(t,x,r) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{1} a_i(1,x,r)F(t,x,r+1) \\ &= a_0(1,x,r)F(t,x,r) + a_1(1,x,r)F(t,x,r+1). \end{aligned} \tag{2.11}$$

Thus, by (2.11), we also get

$$a_0(1,x,r)=r,\quad a_1(1,x,r)=x. \tag{2.12}$$

From (2.7), we note that

$$a_0(N+1,x,r)=ra_0(N,x,r)=\cdots=r^Na_0(1,x,r)=r^{N+1}, \tag{2.13}$$

and

$$a_{N+1}(N+1,x,r)=xa_N(N,x,r)=\cdots=x^Na_1(1,x,r)=x^{N+1}. \tag{2.14}$$

For $i=1,2,3$ in (2.8), we have

$$a_1(N+1,x,r)=x\sum_{k=0}^{N}(r+1)^ka_0(N-k,x,r), \tag{2.15}$$

$$a_2(N+1,x,r)=x\sum_{k=0}^{N-1}(r+2)^ka_1(N-k,x,r), \tag{2.16}$$

and

$$a_3(N+1,x,r)=x\sum_{k=0}^{N-2}(r+3)^ka_2(N-k,x,r). \tag{2.17}$$

Continuing this process, we can deduce that, for $1\le i\le N$,

$$a_i(N+1,x,r)=x\sum_{k=0}^{N-i+1}(r+i)^ka_{i-1}(N-k,x,r). \tag{2.18}$$

Here, we note that the matrix $a_i(j,x,r)_{0\le i,j\le N+1}$ is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix}1 & r & r^2 & r^3 & \cdots & r^{N+1}\\ 0 & x & \cdot & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot\\ 0 & 0 & x^2 & \cdot & \cdots & \cdot\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & x^3 & \cdots & \cdot\\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & x^{N+1}\end{pmatrix}$$

Now, we give explicit expressions for $a_i(N+1,x,r)$. By (2.15), (2.16), and (2.17), we get

$$a_1(N+1,x,r)=x\sum_{k_1=0}^{N}(r+1)^{k_1}a_0(N-k_1,x,r)=\sum_{k_1=0}^{N}(r+1)^{k_1}r^{N-k_1},$$

$$\begin{aligned}a_2(N+1,x,r)&=x\sum_{k_2=0}^{N-1}(r+2)^{k_2}a_1(N-k_2,x,r)\\&=x^2\sum_{k_2=0}^{N-1}\sum_{k_1=0}^{N-1-k_2}(r+1)^{k_1}(r+2)^{k_2}r^{N-k_2-k_1-1},\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}&a_3(N+1,x,r)\\&=x\sum_{k_3=0}^{N-2}(r+3)^{k_3}a_2(N-k_3,x,r)\\&=x^3\sum_{k_3=0}^{N-2}\sum_{k_2=0}^{N-2-k_3}\sum_{k_1=0}^{N-2-k_3-k_2}(r+3)^{k_3}(r+2)^{k_2}(r+1)^{k_1}r^{N-k_3-k_2-k_1-2}.\end{aligned}$$

Continuing this process, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &a_i(N+1,x,r) \\ &= x^i \sum_{k_i=0}^{N-i+1} \sum_{k_{i-1}=0}^{N-i+1-k_i} \cdots \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-i+1-k_i-\cdots-k_2} \left(\prod_{l=1}^{i}(r+l)^{k_l}\right) r^{N-i+1-\sum_{l=1}^{i} k_l}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.19}$$

Therefore, by (2.19), we obtain the following theorem.

Theorem 2.1 *For $N = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, the differential equation*

$$F^{(N)} = \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)e^{it}F(t,x,r)$$

has a solution

$$F = F(t,x,r) = e^{rt+(e^t-1)x},$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} &a_0(N,x,r) = r^N, \\ &a_N(N,x,r) = x^N, \\ &a_i(N,x,r) = x^i \sum_{k_i=0}^{N-i} \sum_{k_{i-1}=0}^{N-i-k_i} \cdots \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-i-k_i-\cdots-k_2} \left(\prod_{l=1}^{i}(r+l)^{k_l}\right) r^{N-i-\sum_{l=1}^{i} k_l}, \\ &\qquad (1 \le i \le N). \end{aligned}$$

From (2.1), we note that

$$F^{(N)} = \left(\frac{d}{dt}\right)^N F(t,x,r) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} G_{k+N}(x,r)\frac{t^k}{k!}. \tag{2.20}$$

From Theorem 1 and (2.20), we can derive the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} G_{k+N}(x,r)\frac{t^k}{k!} = F^{(N)} &= \left(\sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r)e^{it}\right) F(t,x,r) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r) \left(\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} i^l \frac{t^l}{l!}\right) \left(\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} G_m(x,r)\frac{t^m}{m!}\right) \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N,x,r) \left(\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\sum_{m=0}^{k} \binom{k}{m} i^{k-m} G_m(x,r)\frac{t^k}{k!}\right) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\sum_{i=0}^{N}\sum_{m=0}^{k} \binom{k}{m} i^{k-m} a_i(N,x,r)G_m(x,r)\right) \frac{t^k}{k!}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.21}$$

By comparing the coefficients on both sides of (2.21), we obtain the following theorem.

Theorem 2.2 *For $k, N = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, we have*

$$G_{k+N}(x,r) = \sum_{i=0}^{N}\sum_{m=0}^{k} \binom{k}{m} i^{k-m} a_i(N,x,r)G_m(x,r), \tag{2.22}$$

where where

$$\begin{aligned} &a_0(N,x,r) = r^N, \quad a_N(N,x,r) = x^N, \\ &a_i(N,x,r) = x^i \sum_{k_i=0}^{N-i} \sum_{k_{i-1}=0}^{N-i-k_i} \cdots \sum_{k_1=0}^{N-i-k_i-\cdots-k_2} \left(\prod_{l=1}^{i}(r+l)^{k_l}\right) r^{N-i-\sum_{l=1}^{i} k_l}, \\ &\qquad (1 \le i \le N). \end{aligned}$$

Let us take $k = 0$ in (2.22). Then, we have the following corollary.

Corollary 2.3 *For $N = 0, 1, 2, \ldots,$ we have*

$$G_N(x, r) = \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N, x, r).$$

For $N = 0, 1, 2, \ldots,$ the functional equation $F^{(N)} = \sum_{i=0}^{N} a_i(N, x, r)e^{it}F(t, x, r)$ has a solution $F = F(t, x, r) = e^{rt+(e^t-1)x}$. Here is a plot of the surface for this solution. In Figure 1(left), we

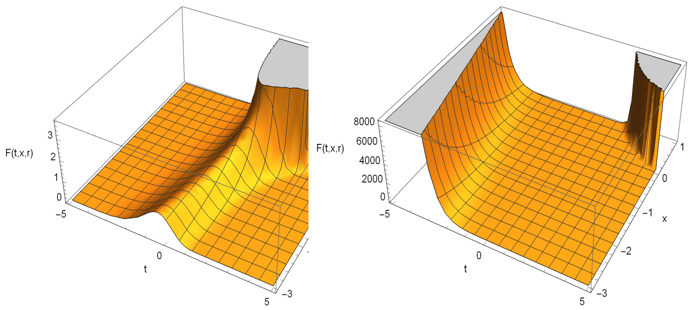


Figure 1: The surface for the solution $F(t, x, r)$

choose $-3 \le x \le 1, -5 \le t \le 5$, and $r = -2$. In Figure 1(right), we choose $-3 \le x \le 3, -5 \le t \le 5$, and $r = 2$.

Acknowledgement: This work was supported by the National Research Foundation of Korea(NRF) grant funded by the Korea government(MEST) (No. 2017R1A2B4006092).

REFERENCES

1. Roberto B. Corcino and Cristina B. Corcino, *On generalized Bell polynomials,* Discrete Dynamics in Nature and Society, **2011** (2011), Article ID 623456, 21 pages.

2. T. Kim, D.S. Kim, C.S. Ryoo, H.I. Kwon, *Differential equations associated with Mahler and Sheffer-Mahler polynomials*, submitted for publication.

3. T. Kim, D.S. Kim, *Identities involving degenerate Euler numbers and polynomials arising from non-linear differential equations*, J. Nonlinear Sci. Appl., **9**(2016), 2086-2098.

4. I. Mező, *The r-Bell numbers*, J. Integer Seq., **13** (2010), Article 10.9.8.

5. N. Privault, *Genrealized Bell polynomials and the combinatorics of Poisson central moments*, The Electronic Journal of Combinatorics, **18**(2011), #54

6. C.S. Ryoo, *Differential equations associated with tangent numbers,* J. Appl. Math. & Informatics, **34** (2016), 487-494.

7. C. S. Ryoo, *Differential equations associated with generalized Bell polynomials and their zeros*, Open Mathematics, **14** (2016), 807-815.

8. C. S. Ryoo, *A numerical investigation on the structure of the zeros of the degenerate Euler-tangent mixed-type polynomials*, J. Nonlinear Sci. Appl., **10** (2017), 4474-4484

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

A CLASS INVOLVING DERIVATIVES OF RATIO OF THE ANALYTIC FUNCTIONS

JI HYANG PARK, VIRENDRA KUMAR, AND NAK EUN CHO

Abstract. The class of functions defined using linear combination of the derivatives of ratio of the normalized analytic function with the identity function is considered in this manuscript. Further, the sharp bounds on the Hankel determinants and estimates on the higher order Schwarzian derivatives for the first three consecutive derivatives are investigated.

1. Introduction

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be the family of functions f in the open unit disk $\mathbb{D}$ and satisfying the normalization conditions $f(0) = 0 = f'(0) - 1$. Let the collection $\mathcal{S} \subset \mathcal{A}$ contains univalent functions in $\mathbb{D}$. An analytic function f is subordinate to another analytic function g if there is an analytic function w with $|w(z)| \leq |z|$ and $w(0) = 0$ such that $f(z) = g(w(z))$ and we write $f \prec g$. If g is univalent, then $f \prec g$ if and only if $f(0) = g(0)$ and $f(\mathbb{D}) \subseteq g(\mathbb{D})$. The classes $\mathcal{S}^*$ and $\mathcal{K}$ of starlike and convex functions, respectively, are defined by $\operatorname{Re}(zf'(z)/f(z)) > 0$ and $\operatorname{Re}(1 + zf''(z)/f'(z)) > 0$. There are several sufficient conditions for functions to be univalent. Among them the simplest one is to verify $\operatorname{Re} f'(z) > 0$ in $z \in \mathbb{D}$. However, there are several other sufficient conditions for univalency were investigated in the recent years. Obradovič [17] proved that if $f \in \mathcal{A}$ satisfy $|f''(z)| < 1/2$, then f is convex in $\mathbb{D}$. Later, this condition was generalized by Frasin [7]. For $0 < \gamma \leq 1$, Tunseki [24] investigated the conditions on the expressions $f'(z) - (1-\gamma)f(z)/z$ and $zf''(z) - \gamma f'(z)$ for the sufficient conditions of starlikeness and convexity. Frasin [8] obtained some sufficient conditions on $f'''(z)$ for starlikeness and convexity. In particular, he proved that when the function $f \in \mathcal{A}$ with $f''(0) = 0$ satisfies $|f'''(z)| < 1$, then f is starlike in $\mathbb{D}$ and if $|f'''(z)| < 1/2$, then f is convex in $\mathbb{D}$, see [8, Cororllary 2, Cororllary 3, p. 65].

Motivated by this, in 2010, Uyanik *et al.* [25] introduced and investigated a new subclass of $\mathcal{A}$ defined using the linear combination of the derivatives of ratio of the normalized analytic function with the identity function. For $\beta_1, \beta_2 \in \mathbb{C}, \lambda > 0$ and $f \in \mathcal{A}$ he defined $\mathcal{V}(\beta_1, \beta_2, \lambda)$ as follows:

$$\left|\beta_1 z \left(\frac{f(z)}{z}\right)' + \beta_2 z^2 \left(\frac{f(z)}{z}\right)''\right| \leq \lambda.$$

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* 30C45, 30C50, 30C80.

Key words and phrases. Univalent function, Coefficient bound, Hankel determinant.

He obtained sufficient condition for normalized analytic functions to be in the class $\mathcal{V}(\beta_1,\beta_2,\lambda)$. He proved that the nth coefficient of functions in this class is bounded by $\lambda/((n-1)(|\beta_1|+(n-2)|\beta_2|))$.

It is well-known that the function in the class $\mathcal{S}$ satisfy $|a_n| \leq 2$ $(n=2,3,\cdots)$. Moreover, if $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n|a_n| \leq 1$, then $f \in \mathcal{S}^*$ and if $\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} n^2|a_n| \leq 1$, then $f \in \mathcal{K}$. There is another important quantity related to coefficients, called the Hankel determinant, which enable us to determine the necessary condition on coefficient functional for functions belonging to a given class of functions. For given natural numbers n, q, the Hankel determinant $H_{q,n}(f)$ of a function $f(z)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n z^n,\ a_1=1$ is defined by means of the following determinant

$$H_{q,n}(f) := \begin{vmatrix} a_n & a_{n+1} & \cdots & a_{n+q-1} \\ a_{n+1} & a_{n+2} & \cdots & a_{n+q} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n+q-1} & a_{n+q} & \cdots & a_{n+2(q-1)} \end{vmatrix}.$$

It is easy to see that the functional $H_{2,1}(f)=a_3-a_2^2$ is the well-known Fekete-Szegö functional. However, the second Hankel determinant is given by $H_{2,2}(f):=a_2a_4-a_3^2$. Further, the third Hankel determinant is $H_{3,\,1}(f):=a_3(a_2a_4-a_3^2)-a_4(a_4-a_2a_3)+a_5(a_3-a_2^2)$. The Hankel determinant $H_{q,n}(f)$ for the class $\mathcal{S}$ was investigated by Pommerenke [19] and Hayman [10]. For more details, see [4,5,11,13,19,21] and the references cited therein.

The Schwarzian derivative of a locally univalent function f, defined by

$$\mathbf{S}(f)(z) := \left(\frac{f''(z)}{f'(z)}\right)' - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{f''(z)}{f'(z)}\right)^2.$$

The Schwarzian derivative is an important quantity in Univalent Function Theory. Further properties were investigated by Nehari [16]. He obtained the necessary and sufficient conditions for $f \in \mathcal{S}$. The higher order Schwarzian derivative [9, 23]), is defined by $\sigma_3(f)=\mathbf{S}(f)$ and for any integer $n \geq 4$, it is given by

$$\sigma_{n+1}(f) = (\sigma_n(f))' - (n-1)\sigma_n(f)\frac{f''}{f'}.$$

Droff and Szynal [6] studied the higher order Schwarzian derivative for convex functions. Now $\sigma_n(f)(0) =: \mathbf{S}_n$ and $\mathbf{S}_3=\sigma_3(f)(0)=6(a_3-a_2^2)$, $\mathbf{S}_4=\sigma_4(f)(0)=24(a_4-3a_2a_3+2a_2^3)$ and $\mathbf{S}_5=\sigma_5(f)(0)=24(5a_5-20a_2a_4-9a_3^2+48a_3a_2^2-24a_2^4)$. The sharp bound on $|\mathbf{S}_i|$ $(i=2,3,4)$, for $f \in \mathcal{K}$, investigated by Droff and Szynal. The generalization of their work, recently, carried out in [3] by Cho *et al.*

We shall investigate, the estimates on the Hankel determinants and the higher order Schwarzian derivatives by associating the functions of the class under consideration with the Carathéodory functions. Now we recall those results which shall be needed for investigation of our results. Let $\mathcal{P}$ denote the class of Carathéodory [1,2] functions of the form

$$p(z) = 1 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} p_n z^n \quad (z \in \mathbb{D}). \tag{1.1}$$

Let $\mathcal{B}$ be the class of analytic functions $w(z) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} c_n z^n$ $(z \in \mathbb{D})$ and satisfying the condition $|w(z)| < 1$ for $z \in \mathbb{D}$. The function $w \in \mathcal{B}$ and $p \in \mathcal{P}$ are related as $p(z) = (1 + w(z))/(1 - w(z))$. Consider a functional $\Psi(w) = |c_3 + \alpha c_1 c_2 + \beta c_1^3|$ for $w \in \mathcal{B}$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$.

Lemma 1.1. [20, Lemma 2, p. 128] *If $w \in \mathcal{B}$, then for any real numbers α and β the following sharp estimate $\Psi(w) \leq \Phi(\alpha, \beta)$ holds, where*

$$\Phi(\alpha,\beta) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } (\alpha,\beta) \in \Omega_1 \cup \Omega_2, \\ |\beta|, & \text{if } (\alpha,\beta) \in \Omega_3 \cup \Omega_4 \cup \Omega_5 \\ \frac{2}{3}(|\alpha|+1)\left(\frac{|\alpha|+1}{3(|\alpha|+\beta+1)}\right)^{1/2}, & \text{if } (\alpha,\beta) \in \Omega_6 \cup \Omega_7. \end{cases}$$

Here the sets Ω_i's are defined by
$\Omega_1 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |\alpha| \leq 1/2, \;\; -1 \leq \beta \leq 1\right\}$,
$\Omega_2 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \frac{1}{2} \leq |\alpha| \leq 2, \;\; \frac{4}{27}(|\alpha|+1)^3 - (|\alpha|+1) \leq \beta \leq 1\right\}$,
$\Omega_3 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |\alpha| \leq 2, \;\; \beta \geq 1\right\}$,
$\Omega_4 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : 2 \leq |\alpha| \leq 4, \;\; \beta \geq \frac{1}{12}(\alpha^2+8)\right\}$, *and*
$\Omega_5 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |\alpha| \geq 4, \; \beta \geq \frac{2}{3}(|\alpha|-1)\right\}$.
$\Omega_6 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : \frac{1}{2} \leq |\alpha| \leq 2, \; -\frac{2}{3}(|\alpha|+1) \leq \beta \leq \frac{4}{27}(|\alpha|+1)^3 - (|\alpha|+1)\right\}$,
$\Omega_7 := \left\{(\alpha,\beta) \in \mathbb{R}^2 : |\alpha| \geq 2, \; -\frac{2}{3}(|\alpha|+1) \leq \beta \leq \frac{2|\alpha|(|\alpha|+1)}{\alpha^2+2|\alpha|+4}\right\}$.

Lemma 1.2. [14,15, Libera and Zlotkiewicz] *If $p \in \mathcal{P}$ has the form given by* (1.1) *with $p_1 \geq 0$, then*

$$2p_2 = p_1^2 + x(4 - p_1^2) \tag{1.2}$$

and

$$4p_3 = p_1^3 + 2p_1(4-p_1^2)x - p_1(4-p_1^2)x^2 + 2(4-p_1^2)(1-|x|^2)y \tag{1.3}$$

for some x and y such that $|x| \leq 1$ and $|y| \leq 1$.

Lemma 1.3. [22, Ravichandran and Verma] *Let $\hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta}, \hat{\gamma}$ and $\hat{a}$ satisfy the inequalities* $0 < \hat{\alpha} < 1$, $0 < \hat{a} < 1$ *and*

$$8a(1-a)[(\hat{\alpha}\hat{\beta} - 2\hat{\gamma})^2 + (\hat{\alpha}(\hat{a}+\hat{\alpha}) - \hat{\beta})^2] + \hat{\alpha}(1-\hat{\alpha})(\hat{\beta} - 2\hat{a}\hat{\alpha})^2 \leq 4\hat{a}\hat{\alpha}^2(1-\hat{\alpha})^2(1-\hat{a}).$$

If $p \in \mathcal{P}$ has the form given by (1.1), *then*

$$|\hat{\gamma}p_1^4 + \hat{a}p_2^2 + 2\hat{\alpha}p_1p_3 - (3/2)\hat{\beta}p_1^2p_2 - p_4| \leq 2.$$

Lemma 1.4. [18, Ohno and Sugawa] *For any real numbers a, b and c, let the quantity $Y(a,b,c)$ be given by*

$$Y(a,b,c) = \max_{z \in \overline{\mathbb{D}}} \left\{|a + bz + cz^2| + 1 - |z|^2\right\},$$

where $\overline{\mathbb{D}} := \{z \in \mathbb{C} : |z| \leq 1\}$. If $ac \geq 0$, then

$$Y(a,b,c) = \begin{cases} |a| + |b| + |c|, & \text{if } |b| \geq 2(1-|c|), \\ 1 + |a| + \frac{b^2}{4(1-|c|)}, & \text{if } |b| < 2(1-|c|). \end{cases}$$

Further, if $ac < 0$, *then*

$$Y(a,b,c) = \begin{cases} 1-|a|+\frac{b^2}{4(1-|c|)}, & \textit{if } -4ac(c^{-2}-1) \leq b^2 \textit{ and } |b| < 2(1-|c|), \\ 1+|a|+\frac{b^2}{4(1+|c|)}, & \textit{if } b^2 < \min\{4(1+|c|)^2, -4ac(c^{-2}-1)\}, \\ R(a,b,c), & \textit{otherwise}, \end{cases}$$

where

$$R(a,b,c) = \begin{cases} |a|+|b|-|c|, & \textit{if } |c|(|b|+4|a|) \leq |ab|, \\ -|a|+|b|+|c|, & \textit{if } |ab| \leq |c|(|b|-4|a|), \\ (|c|+|a|)\sqrt{1-\frac{b^2}{4ac}}, & \textit{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

2. Coefficient bounds

The following theorem gives the sharp upper bound for Fekete-Szegö functional and Hankel determinant for functions in the class $\mathcal{V}(\beta_1, \beta_2, \lambda)$.

Theorem 2.1. *Let* $0 < \beta_1 < 1, 0 < \beta_2 < 1$ *and* $f \in \mathcal{V}(\beta_1, \beta_2, \lambda)$. *Then the following sharp inequalities hold:*

(1) $|a_3 - \mu a_2^2| \leq \frac{\lambda}{2\beta_1+\beta_2} \max\left\{1; \frac{2\lambda(\beta_1+\beta_2)|\mu|}{{\beta_2}^2}\right\}, \ \mu \in \mathbb{C}.$

(2) $|a_2 a_4 - {a_3}^2| \leq \frac{\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}{3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)}.$

(3) $|a_2 a_3 - a_4| \leq \begin{cases} \frac{\lambda}{3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}, & 0 < \lambda \leq \frac{(3\sqrt{2}-2){\beta_1}^2+(3\sqrt{2}-2)\beta_1\beta_2}{3\beta_1+6\beta_2}; \\ \frac{2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)+3\lambda(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}{9\sqrt{3}\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}\lambda, & \lambda > \frac{(3\sqrt{2}-2){\beta_1}^2+(3\sqrt{2}-2)\beta_1\beta_2}{3\beta_1+6\beta_2}. \end{cases}$

Proof. Since $f \in \mathcal{V}(\beta_1, \beta_2, \lambda)$, it follows that there exists a Schwarz function $w(z) = c_1 z + c_2 z^2 + c_3 z^3 + \cdots \in \mathcal{B}$ such that

$$\beta_1 z \left(\frac{f(z)}{z}\right)' + \beta_2 z^2 \left(\frac{f(z)}{z}\right)'' = \lambda w(z)). \tag{2.1}$$

In the view of interconnection $w(z) = (p(z)-1)/(p(z)+1) \in \mathbf{B}$ if and only if $p \in \mathcal{P}$ between the Schwarz function w and the Carathéodory function $p(z) = 1 + p_1 z + p_2 z^2 + p_3 z^3 + \cdots \in \mathcal{P}$, from (2.1), we get

$$a_2 = \frac{\lambda p_1}{2\beta_1}, \quad a_3 = \frac{\lambda(2p_2 - {p_1}^2)}{8(\beta_1+\beta_2)}, \tag{2.2}$$

and

$$a_4 = \frac{\lambda(4p_3 - 4p_1p_2 + {p_1}^3)}{24(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}, \quad a_5 = \frac{\lambda(8p_4 - 8p_1p_3 - 4{p_2}^2 + 6{p_1}^2p_2 - {p_1}^4)}{64(\beta_1+3\beta_2)}. \tag{2.3}$$

(1) From (2.2), Using the result [see [12]], for any complex number μ,

$$\left|p_2 - \mu p_1^2\right| \leq 2\max\{1; |2\mu - 1|\},$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} |a_3-\mu{a_2}^2| &= \frac{\lambda}{4(\beta_1+\beta_2)}\left[p_2-\frac{{\beta_1}^2+2\mu\lambda(\beta_1+\beta_2)}{2{\beta_1}^2}p_1^2\right] \\ &= \frac{\lambda}{2(\beta_1+\beta_2)}\max\left\{1,\frac{2\lambda(\beta_1+\beta_2)}{{\beta_1}^2}|\mu|\right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.4}$$

The equality holds in case of the function f defined by (2.1) with choice of the function $w(z)=z$.

(2) Using (2.2) and (2.3), we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_2a_4-{a_3}^2 = \frac{\lambda^2}{192\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)} & \left[({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2){p_1}^4\right. \\ & -4({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2){p_1}^2p_2-12\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2){p_2}^2 \\ & \left.+16(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2p_1p_3\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

Putting equivalent expressions for p_2 and p_3 in terms of p_1 from (1.2) and (1.3) in (2.5), we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_2a_4-{a_3}^2 = \frac{\lambda^2}{192\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)} & \left[\{-3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(4-{p_1}^2)+4(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2{p_1}^2\}\right. \\ & \left.\times(4-{p_1}^2)x^2+8p_1(4-{p_1}^2)(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(1-|x|^2)y\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{2.6}$$

Because $p\in\mathcal{P}$, and the class $\mathcal{P}$ is invariant under rotation, without loss of any generality, we can set $p_1=|p_1|=:s\in[0,2]$. Further, since $|x|\le 1$ and $|y|\le 1$ for some $x,y\in\mathbb{C}$, using this facts and the triangle inequality in (2.6) we can write

$$|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2| \;\le\; T\left[\left|-\frac{3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(4-s^2)+4(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2s^2}{8(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}x^2\right|+s(1-|x|^2)\right], \tag{2.7}$$

where

$$T:=\frac{\lambda^2(4-s^2)}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}.$$

We note that for $s=p_1=0$, and $s=p_1=2$ from (2.7), we have $|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2|\le \lambda^2/4(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2$ and $|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2|=0$, respectively.

Now we assume that $s\in(0,2)$. Then, form (2.7), we obtain

$$|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2|\le\frac{\lambda^2}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}s(4-s^2)F(a,b,c), \tag{2.8}$$

where

$$F(a,b,c):=|a+bx+cx^2|+1-|x|^2,$$

with

$$a:=0,\quad b:=0 \text{ and } c:=-\frac{3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(4-s^2)+4(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2s^2}{8(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2s}.$$

Here it is easily seen that $ac=0$. Here we have two cases now:

(i) When $0<\beta_1<\beta_2(\sqrt{3}-1)$ and $s^*\le s<2$, we obtain $|b|\ge 2(1-|c|)$. Therefore, by Lemma 1.4, we have

$$\begin{aligned}|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2| &\le \frac{\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2 s(4-s^2)}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}F(a,b,c)\\ &= \frac{\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2 s(4-s^2)}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}\left(\frac{3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(4-s^2)+4(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2s^2}{8(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2 s}\right)\\ &= \frac{\lambda^2}{192\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}g(s),\end{aligned}$$

where $g:[s^*,2)\to\mathbb{R}$ is defined by

$$g(s):=3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(4-s^2)+4(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(4-s^2)s^2.$$

Cleanly, g has maximum at

$$s=s_1:=\frac{2\sqrt{-{\beta_1}^2-2\beta_1\beta_2+{\beta_2}^2}}{\sqrt{{\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2}},$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned}|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2| &\le \frac{\lambda^2}{192\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}g(s_1)\\ &= \frac{\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}{3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)}.\end{aligned}$$

(ii) When $0<\beta_1\le\beta_2(\sqrt{3}-1)$ and $0<s<s^*$, $\beta_1>\beta_2(\sqrt{3}-1)>0$ and $0<s<2$, we obtain $|b|<2(1-|c|)$. Therefore, by Lemma 1.4, we have

$$\begin{aligned}|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2| &\le \frac{\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2 s(4-s^2)}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}F(a,b,c)\\ &= \frac{\lambda^2(4-s^2)s}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}\\ &= \frac{\lambda^2}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}h(s),\end{aligned}$$

where the function $h:(0,2)\to\mathbb{R}$ is defined by

$$h(s):=(4-s^2)s.$$

Further computation reveals that h has its maximum at $s=s_2:=2/\sqrt{3}$, and thus we have

$$|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2|\le\frac{\lambda^2}{24\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}h(s_2)=\frac{2\sqrt{3}\lambda^2}{27\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}.$$

Therefore, from (i) and (ii), we conclude that

$$|a_2a_4-{a_3}^2|\le\frac{\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}{3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)}.$$

The equality holds in case of the function defined in (2.1) with

$$w(z) = \frac{z(u_0 - 2z^2)}{2 - u_0 z},$$

where $u_0 = 2\sqrt{-{\beta_1}^2 - 2\beta_1\beta_2 + {\beta_2}^2}/\sqrt{{\beta_1}^2 + 2\beta_1\beta_2 + 4{\beta_2}^2}$.

(3) To find the estimates on the functional $|a_2a_3 - a_4|$, we shall express the coefficients (a_i) in terms of Schwarz's coefficients (c_i). From (2.1), we have

$$a_2 = \frac{c_1\lambda}{\beta_1}, \quad a_3 = \frac{c_2\lambda}{2(\beta_1+\beta_2)}, \quad a_4 = \frac{c_3\lambda}{3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}, \; a_5 = \frac{c_4\lambda}{4(\beta_1+3\beta_2)}. \tag{2.9}$$

Using (2.10), we get

$$\begin{aligned} |a_2a_3 - a_4| &= \left| -\frac{\lambda^2 c_1c_2}{2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)} + \frac{\lambda c_3}{3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)} \right| \\ &= \frac{\lambda}{3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)} \left| -\frac{3\lambda(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}{2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)} c_1c_2 + c_3 \right| \\ &= \frac{\lambda}{3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)} \Phi(\mu,\nu), \end{aligned}$$

where $\Phi(\mu,\nu) := |c_3 + \mu c_1 c_2 + \nu {c_1}^3|$ with

$$\mu := -\frac{3\lambda(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}{2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)}, \text{ and } \nu := 0.$$

Assume that Ω_i's are as defined in lemma 1.1 with μ and ν as given above. We now complete the proof in the following cases.

(i) Suppose that $0 < \lambda \leq \beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$, then we see that $-1/2 \leq \mu \leq 1/2$ and $-1 \leq \nu \leq 1$. So, we conclude that $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_1$.

(ii) Let $\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2) \leq \lambda \leq \beta_1(3\sqrt{3}-2)(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$. Then we can easily verify that $-2 \leq \mu \leq -1/2$ and $(4/27)(|\mu|+1)^3 - (|\mu|+1) \leq \nu \leq 1$ holds and we get $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_2$.

(iii) Let $\beta_1(3\sqrt{3}-2)(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2) \leq \lambda \leq 4\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$. Now we see that $-2 \leq \mu \leq -1/2$ and $-2(|\mu|+1)/3 \leq \lambda \leq (4/27)(|\mu|+1)^3 - (|\mu|+1)$ hold for all such positive values of λ and so $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_6$.

(iv) Let $\lambda \geq 4\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$. Then we see that the conditions $\mu \leq -2$ and $-(2/3)(|\mu|+1) \leq \nu \leq 2|\mu|(|\mu|+1)/(\mu^2+|\mu|+4)$ hold. Therefore, $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_7$.

Now by using Lemma 1.1, the cases (i) and (ii), we conclude that if

$$0 < \lambda \leq \beta_1(3\sqrt{3}-2)(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2),$$

then $\Phi(\mu,\nu) \leq 1$. Further, the (iii) and (iv) hold, then

$$\Phi(\mu,\nu) \leq (2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2) + 3\lambda(\beta_1+2\beta_2))/3\sqrt{3}\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)$$

for $\lambda \geq \beta_1(3\sqrt{3}-2)(\beta_1+\beta_2)/3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$. The result is sharp in case of the function f defined by (2.1) with choice of the Schwarz function $w(z) = z^3$ and $w(z) = z(t_1 +$

$z)/(1+t_1z)$, respectively, where

$$t_1=\left(\frac{|\mu|-1}{3(|\mu|-1-\nu)}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

This ends the proof. ∎

Remark 2.2. In the case, when β_1 and β_2 are real numbers, from the result [25, Corollary 2.1, p.383], we conclude that

$$|a_n|\leq\frac{\lambda}{(n-1)(|\beta_1|+(n-2)|\beta_2|)}.$$

Using the above results, we deduce the following estimates on the third Hankel determinant:

Corollary 2.3. *Let $0<\beta_1<1, 0<\beta_2<1$ and $f\in\mathcal{V}(\beta_1,\beta_2;\lambda)$. Then the following holds:*

$$|H_{3,\,1}(f)|\leq\begin{cases}\tau_1\lambda^2, & 0<\lambda\leq\lambda_1;\\ \tau_2\lambda, & \lambda_1<\lambda\leq\lambda_2;\\ \tau_3, & \lambda\geq\lambda_2,\end{cases}$$

where

$$\tau_1:=\frac{\begin{array}{r}24\lambda(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(\beta_1+3\beta_2)+\beta_1({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)\\ \times(5\beta_1+6\beta_2)(5\beta_1+14\beta_2)\end{array}}{2(\alpha g_3+\beta h_3)B_1^2},$$

$$\tau_2:=\frac{\begin{array}{r}6\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)(\beta_1+2\beta_2)(\beta_1+3\beta_2)+4\lambda\beta_1(\beta_1+3\beta_2)({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)\\ +9\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)^2({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)\end{array}}{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)^2(\beta_1+3\beta_2)({\beta_1}^2+2\beta_1\beta_2+4{\beta_2}^2)}$$

and

$$\tau_3:=\frac{\mu^2\left(1296\mu^4+3456\mu^3+2304\mu^2+1740\mu+1015\right)}{5184(12\mu+7)}.$$

Theorem 2.4. *Let $f\in\mathcal{V}(\beta_1,\beta_2;\lambda)$, then the following sharp inequalities hold:*

(1) *If $0<\beta_1<1$ and $0<\beta_2<1$, then*

$$|\mathbf{S}_3|\leq\begin{cases}\frac{3\lambda}{\beta_1+\beta_2}, & 0<\lambda\leq\frac{{\beta_1}^2}{2(\beta_1+\beta_2)};\\ \frac{6\lambda^2}{{\beta_1}^2}, & \lambda>\frac{{\beta_1}^2}{2(\beta_1+\beta_2)}.\end{cases}$$

(2) *(a) If either of the set of conditions $0<\lambda\leq\lambda^*$ or ${\lambda_1}^*\leq\lambda\leq\lambda^{**}$ and*

$$\begin{aligned}\{9(\beta_1+2\beta_2)\lambda+2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)\}[\{9(\beta_1+2\beta_2)\lambda+2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)\}^2-27{\beta_1}^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2]\\ \leq 324(\beta_1+2\beta_2)\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^3\end{aligned}$$

holds, then

$$|\mathbf{S}_4|\leq\frac{24\lambda}{3(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}.$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

(b) If either of the set of conditions ${\lambda_2}^* \leq \lambda \leq 4{\lambda_1}^*$ *and* $\frac{9}{4}\sqrt{\frac{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta)}{6}} \leq \beta_1 + \beta_2$ *or* $\lambda \geq 4{\lambda_1}^*$ *holds, then*

$$|\mathbf{S}_4| \leq \frac{48\lambda^4}{{\beta_1}^3}.$$

(3) *If* $0 < \beta_1 < 1, 0 < \beta_2 < 1$ *and* $0 < \lambda < 3\beta_1(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)/8(\beta_1 + 3\beta_3)$, *then*

$$|\mathbf{S}_5| \leq \frac{720\lambda}{\beta_1 + 3\beta_2}.$$

Proof. Let $f \in \mathcal{V}(\beta_1, \beta_2; \lambda)$. Then, to find the estimates on the higher order Schwarzian derivatives, we shall express the coefficients (a_i) in terms of Schwarz's coefficients (c_i). From (2.1), we have

$$a_2 = \frac{c_1\lambda}{\beta_1}, \quad a_3 = \frac{c_2\lambda}{2(\beta_1 + \beta_2)}, \quad a_4 = \frac{c_3\lambda}{3(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)}, \; a_5 = \frac{c_4\lambda}{4(\beta_1 + 3\beta_2)}. \tag{2.10}$$

Using first part of Theorem 2.1, we have

$$\begin{aligned} |\mathbf{S}_3| &= 6|a_3 - {a_2}^2)| \\ &\leq \frac{3\lambda}{\beta_1 + \beta_2} \max\left\{1, \frac{2(\beta_1 + \beta_2)\lambda}{{\beta_1}^2}\right\}. \end{aligned}$$

The function for the equality holds by (2.1) with the choice $w(z) = z$.

Now we consider the estimate on $|S_4|$. From (2.10), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{S}_4 &= 24(a_4 - 3a_2a_3 + 2{a_3}^2) \\ &= \frac{24\lambda}{3(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)}\left[\frac{6(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)\lambda^2}{{\beta_1}^3}{c_1}^3 - \frac{9(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)\lambda}{2\beta_1(\beta_1 + \beta_2)}c_1c_2 + c_3\right] \\ &= \frac{24\lambda}{3(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)}\Upsilon(\mu, \nu) \end{aligned}$$

where $\Upsilon(\mu, \nu) := c_3 + \mu c_1 c_2 + \nu {c_1}^3$ with

$$\mu := -\frac{9(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)\lambda}{2\beta_1(\beta_1 + \beta_2)}, \quad \text{and} \quad \nu := \frac{6(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)\lambda^2}{{\beta_1}^3}.$$

Assume that Ω_i's are as defined in Lemma 1.1 with μ and ν as given above. We now complete the proof with the following cases.

(i) Suppose that $0 < \lambda \leq {\lambda_1}^*$. In this case, we see that $-1/2 \leq \mu \leq 1/2$ holds. Moreover, $-1 \leq \nu \leq 1$ holds if and only if $0 < \lambda \leq {\lambda_2}^*$, where ${\lambda_1}^* := \beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)/9(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$ and ${\lambda_2}^* := \beta_1\sqrt{\beta_1/6(\beta_1 + 2\beta_2)}$. Thus, for all $0 < \lambda \leq \min\{{\lambda_1}^*, {\lambda_2}^*\}$, we conclude that $(\mu, \nu) \in \Omega_1$.

(ii) Next suppose that ${\lambda_1}^* < \lambda \leq 4{\lambda_1}^*$, then we see that the condition $-2 \leq \mu \leq -1/2$ holds. Further, $(4/27)(\mu + 1)^3 - (\mu + 1) \leq \nu \leq 1$ holds if and only if $0 < \lambda \leq {\lambda_2}^*$

and

$$\{9(\beta_1+2\beta_2)\lambda+2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)\}[\{9(\beta_1+2\beta_2)\lambda+2\beta_1(\beta_1+\beta_2)\}^2 \\ -27{\beta_1}^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2] \leq 324(\beta_1+2\beta_2)\lambda^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^3. \quad (2.11)$$

So, if ${\lambda_1}^* \leq \lambda \leq \lambda^{**} := \min\{4{\lambda_1}^*, {\lambda_2}^*\}$ and (2.11) hold, then $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_2$.

(iii) Let ${\lambda_2}^* \leq \lambda \leq {\lambda_3}^* := 4(\beta_1+\beta_2)/9(\beta_1+2\beta_2)$ and $\beta_1+\beta_2 \geq 9\sqrt{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}/4\sqrt{6}$. Then, we can easily verify that $|\mu| \leq 2$ and $\nu \geq 1$. Therefore, $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_5$.

(iv) Let $4{\lambda_1}^* \leq \lambda \leq 8{\lambda_1}^*$. Now we see that $-4 \leq \mu \leq -2$ and $\nu \geq (\mu^2+8)/12$ hold for all such positive values of λ and hence $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_6$.

(v) Let $\lambda \geq 8{\lambda_1}^*$. Then we see that $\mu \leq -4$ and $\nu \geq 2(|\mu|-1)$, so $(\mu,\nu) \in \Omega_7$.

Now by using Lemma 1.1 and the cases (i) and (ii), we conclude that if $0 < \lambda \leq \min\{{\lambda_1}^*, {\lambda_2}^*\}$ or ${\lambda_1}^* \leq \lambda \leq \lambda^{**}$ and (2.11) hold, then $\Upsilon(\mu,\nu) \leq 1$. Further, from the cases $(iii)-(v)$ and Lemma 1.1, we conclude that $\Upsilon(\mu,\nu) \leq \nu$, for ${\lambda_2}^* \leq \lambda \leq {\lambda_3}^*$ and $\beta_1+\beta_2 \geq 9\sqrt{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}/4\sqrt{6}$ or $\lambda \geq 4{\lambda_1}^*$. The result is sharp in case of the function f defined by (2.1) with choice of the Schwarz function $w(z)=z^3$ and $w(z)=z$, respectively. This completes the proof.

Now we find the estimate on $|\mathbf{S}_5|$. Using 2.2 and 2.3, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{S}_5 &= 24(5a_5-20a_2a_4-9a_3^2+48a_2^2a_3-24a_2^4) \\
&= \frac{-720\lambda}{\beta_1+3\beta_2}[\hat{\gamma}p_1^4+\hat{a}p_2^2+2\hat{\alpha}p_1p_3-(3/2)\hat{\beta}p_1^2p_2-p_4)] \\
&= \frac{-720\lambda}{\beta_1+3\beta_2}\Psi(\hat{\gamma},\hat{a},\hat{\alpha},\hat{\beta}), \qquad (2.12)
\end{aligned}$$

where $\Psi(\hat{\gamma},\hat{a},\hat{\alpha},\hat{\beta}) := \hat{\gamma}p_1^4+\hat{a}p_2^2+2\hat{\alpha}p_1p_3-(3/2)\hat{\beta}p_1^2p_2-p_4$ with the parameters $\hat{\gamma},\hat{a},\hat{\alpha}$ and $\hat{\beta}$ are given by

$$\hat{\gamma} := \frac{\beta_1+3\beta_2}{15}\left(\frac{15}{8(\beta_1+3\beta_2)}+\frac{27\lambda}{8(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}+\frac{10\lambda}{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}+\frac{36\lambda^2}{{\beta_1}^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)}+\frac{36\lambda^3}{{\beta_1}^4}\right),$$

$$\hat{a} := \frac{\beta_1+3\beta_2}{6}\left(\frac{8\lambda}{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}+\frac{3}{\beta_1+3\beta_2}\right),$$

$$\hat{\alpha} := \frac{\beta_1+3\beta_2}{5}\left(\frac{5}{2(\beta_1+3\beta_2)}+\frac{9\lambda}{2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}\right)$$

and

$$\hat{\beta} := \frac{2(\beta_1+3\beta_2)}{45}\left(\frac{45}{4(\beta_1+3\beta_2)}+\frac{27\lambda}{2(\beta_1+\beta_2)^2}+\frac{20\lambda}{\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)}+\frac{72\lambda^2}{{\beta_1}^2(\beta_1+\beta_2)}\right).$$

We assume that $0<\beta_1<1$ and $0<\beta_2<1$ and $0<\lambda<3\beta_1(\beta_1+2\beta_2)/8(\beta_1+3\beta_3)$. Under these conditions, it is a simple matter to verify that $0<\hat{\alpha}<1$ and $0<\hat{a}<1$. Moreover, with these restrictions all conditions of Lemma 1.3 are fulfilled and thus, we get $|\Psi(\hat{\gamma},\hat{a},\hat{\alpha},\hat{\beta})| \leq 2$. Thus, the result follows from (2.12). ∎

Acknowledgement

The third author was supported by the Basic Science Research Program through the National Research Foundation of Korea (NRF) funded by the Ministry of Education, Science and Technology (No. 2016R1D1A1A09916450).

References

[1] C. Carathéodory, Über den variabilitätsbereich der fourier'schen konstanten von positiven harmonischen funktionen, Rend. Circ. Mat. Palermo **32** (1911), 193–217.

[2] C. Carathéodory, Über den variabilitätsbereich der coeffizienten von potenzreihen, die gegebene werte nicht annehmen, Math. Ann. **64** (1907), no. 1, 95–115.

[3] N. E. Cho, V. Kumar and V. Ravichandran, Sharp bounds on the higher order Schwarzian derivatives for Janowski classes, submitted.

[4] N. E. Cho, B. Kowalczyk, O. S. Kwon, A. Lecko and Y. J. Sim The bounds of some determinants for starlike functions of order alpha, Bull. Malays. Math. Sci. Soc. (2017), 13 pp.

[5] N. E. Cho, B. Kowalczyk, O. S. Kwon, A. Lecko and Y. J. Sim, Some coefficient inequalities related to the Hankel determinant for strongly starlike functions of order alpha, J. Math. Ineq. **11**, 2 (2017), 429–439.

[6] M. Dorff and J. Szynal, Higher order Schwarzian derivatives for convex univalent functions, Tr. Petrozavodsk. Gos. Univ. Ser. Mat. **15** (2009), 7–11.

[7] B. A. Frasin, New sufficient conditions for univalence, Gen. Math. **17** (2009), no. 3, 91–98.

[8] B. A. Frasin, New sufficient conditions for analytic and univalent functions, Acta Univ. Apulensis Math. Inform. No. 17 (2009), 61–67.

[9] R. Harmelin, Aharonov invariants and univalent functions, Israel J. Math. **43** (1982), no. 3, 244–254.

[10] W. K. Hayman, On the second Hankel determinant of mean univalent functions, Proc. London Math. Soc. **18** (1968), no. 3, 77–94.

[11] A. Janteng, S. A. Halim and M. Darus, Hankel determinant for starlike and convex functions, Int. J. Math. Anal. (Ruse) **1** (2007), no. 13-16, 619–625.

[12] F. R. Keogh and E. P. Merkes, A coefficient inequality for certain classes of analytic functions, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. **20** (1969), 8–12.

[13] S. K. Lee, V. Ravichandran and S. Supramaniam, Bounds for the second Hankel determinant of certain univalent functions, J. Inequal. Appl. Art. ID. 281 (2013), 17 pp.

[14] R. J. Libera and E. J. Zlotkiewicz, Early coefficients of the inverse of a regular convex function, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. **85** (1982), no. 2, 225–230.

[15] R. J. Libera and E. J. Zlotkiewicz, Coefficient bounds for the inverse of a function with derivatives in $\mathcal{P}$, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. **87** (1983), no. 2, 251–257.

[16] Z. Nehari, The Schwarzian derivative and schlicht functions, Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. **55** (1949), 545–551.

[17] M. Obradovič, Simple suients conditions for starlikeness, Matematicki Vesnik. 49 (1997), 241–244.

[18] R. Ohno and T. Sugawa, Coefficient estimates of analytic endomorphisms of the unit disk fixing a point with applications to concave functions, Kyoto J. Math. (advance publication, 9 June 2017), doi: 10.1215/21562261-2017-0015.

[19] C. Pommerenke, On the coefficients and Hankel determinants of univalent functions, J. London Math. Soc. **41** (1966), 111–122.

[20] D. V. Prokhorov and J. Szynal, Inverse coefficients for (α, β)-convex functions, Ann. Univ. Mariae Curie-Skłodowska Sect. A **35** (1981), 125–143.

[21] C. Pommerenke, On the Hankel determinants of univalent functions, Mathematika **14** (1967), 108–112.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

[22] V. Ravichandran and S. Verma, Bound for the fifth coefficient of certain starlike functions, C. R. Math. Acad. Sci. Paris **353**, 6 (2015), 505–510.

[23] E. Schippers, Distortion theorems for higher order Schwarzian derivatives of univalent functions, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. **128** (2000), no. 11, 3241–3249.

[24] N. Tuneski, Some simple sufficient conditions for starlikeness and convexity, Appl. Math. Lett. **22** (2009), no. 5, 693–697.

[25] N. Uyanik, S. Owa, E. Kadioğlu, Some properties of functions associated with close-to-convex and starlike of order α, Appl. Math. Comput. **216** (2010), no. 2, 381–387.

(Ji Hyang Park) Department of Applied Mathematics, Pukyong National University, Busan 48513, Korea

E-mail address: `jihyang1022@naver.com`

(Virendra Kumar) Department of Applied Mathematics, Pukyong National University, Busan 48513, Korea

E-mail address: `vktmaths@yahoo.in`

(Nak Eun Cho) Corresponding Author, Department of Applied Mathematics, Pukyong National University, Busan 48513, Korea

E-mail address: `necho@pknu.ac.kr`

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

EXPLICIT FORMULAE OF CAUCHY POLYNOMIALS WITH A q PARAMETER IN TERMS OF r-WHITNEY NUMBERS

F. A. SHIHA

Abstract. The Cauchy polynomials with a q parameter were recently defined, and several arithmetical properties were studied. In this paper, we establish explicit formulae for computing the Cauchy polynomials with a q parameter in terms of r-Whitney numbers of the first kind. We also obtain several properties and combinatorial identities.

AMS (2010) Subject Classification: 05A15, 05A19, 11B73, 11B75.
Key Words. Cauchy numbers and polynomials, r-Whitney numbers, Stirling numbers.

1. Introduction

The Cauchy polynomials of the first kind $c_n(z)$ are defined by

$$c_n(z) = \int_0^1 (x-z)_n \, dx, \tag{1.1}$$

and the Cauchy polynomials of the second kind $\hat{c}_n(z)$ are defined by

$$\hat{c}_n(z) = \int_0^1 (-x+z)_n \, dx, \tag{1.2}$$

where $(y)_n = \prod_{i=0}^{n-1}(y-i)$ is the falling factorial with $(y)_0 = 1$. The exponential generating function of these polynomials are

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n(z) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{t}{(1+t)^z \ln(1+t)}. \tag{1.3}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \hat{c}_n(z) \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{t(1+t)^z}{(1+t) \ln(1+t)}. \tag{1.4}$$

(see [7, 4]). When $z = 0$, $c_n(0) = c_n$ and $\hat{c}_n(0) = \hat{c}_n$ are the Cauchy numbers of the first and second kind (see [2, 9, 12, 8]).

Recently [5] obtained a representation of the integer values of Cauchy polynomials in terms of r-Stirling numbers of the first kind $s_r(n,k)$ [3]. For all integers $n, r \geq 0$,

$$c_n(r) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} s_r(n+r, k+r) \frac{1}{k+1}, \tag{1.5}$$

$$\hat{c}_n(-r) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} (-1)^k s_r(n+r, k+r) \frac{1}{k+1}. \tag{1.6}$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Given variables y and m and a positive integer k, define the generalized rising and falling factorials of order k with increment m by

$$[y|m]_k = \prod_{j=0}^{k-1}(y+jm), \qquad [y|m]_0 = 1$$

$$(y|m)_k = \prod_{j=0}^{k-1}(y-jm), \qquad (y|m)_0 = 1.$$

Komatsu [6] introduced the Poly-Cauchy polynomials and numbers with a q parameter, and the Cauchy polynomials and numbers with a q parameter as special cases.

Let q be a real number with $q \neq 0$, Komatsu [6] defined the Cauchy polynomials with a q parameter of the first kind $c_n^q(z)$ by

$$c_n^q(z) = \int_0^1 (x-z|q)_n \, dx \tag{1.7}$$

and the Cauchy polynomials with a q parameter of the second kind $\hat{c}_n^q(z)$ by

$$\hat{c}_n^q(z) = \int_0^1 (-x+z|q)_n \, dx. \tag{1.8}$$

The exponential generating functions are

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n^q(z)\frac{t^n}{n!} = (1+qt)^{\frac{-z}{q}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^k \frac{1}{k!}\,\frac{1}{k+1}, \tag{1.9}$$

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \hat{c}_n^q(z)\frac{t^n}{n!} = (1+qt)^{\frac{z}{q}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\left(-\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^k \frac{1}{k!}\,\frac{1}{k+1}. \tag{1.10}$$

If $z=0$, then $c_n^q(0) = c_n^q$ and $\hat{c}_n^q(0) = \hat{c}_n^q$ are the Cauchy numbers with q parameter of the first and second kind, respectively. If $q=1$, then $c_n^1(z) = c_n(z)$ and $\hat{c}_n^1(z) = \hat{c}_n(z)$.

The r-Whitney numbers of the first and second kind were introduced by Mezö [10]. For non-negative integers n and k with $0 \le k \le n$, let $w(n,k) = w_{q,r}(n,k)$ denote the r-Whitney numbers of the first kind, which are defined by

$$q^n(x)_n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} w(n,k)\,(qx+r)^k. \tag{1.11}$$

Let $W(n,k) = W_{q,r}(n,k)$ denote the r-Whitney numbers of the second kind, which are defined by

$$(qx+r)^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} q^k\, W(n,k)\,(x)_k. \tag{1.12}$$

Usually r is taken to be a non-negative integer and q a positive integer, but both may also be regarded as real numbers [11]. The exponential generating function of $w(n,k)$ is given by [10]

$$\sum_{n\ge k} w(n,k)\frac{t^n}{n!} = (1+qt)^{\frac{-r}{q}}\left(\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^k \frac{1}{k!}, \tag{1.13}$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

2. Basic results

Replace x by $\frac{x-r}{q}$ in (1.11), then the r-Whitney numbers of the first kind $w(n,k)$ are given by

$$(x-r|q)_n = \prod_{j=0}^{n-1}(x-r-jq) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} w(n,k)\, x^k, \qquad q \neq 0, \tag{2.1}$$

Using (1.7), we get the following theorem.

Theorem 1. *The Cauchy polynomials with q parameter of the first kind $c_n^q(r)$, $q \neq 0$ can be written explicitly as*

$$c_n^q(r) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} w(n,k)\, \frac{1}{k+1}. \tag{2.2}$$

The first few polynomials are
$c_0^q(r) = 1$,
$c_1^q(r) = -r + \frac{1}{2}$,
$c_2^q(r) = r^2 + (q-1)r - \frac{1}{2}q + \frac{1}{3}$,
$c_3^q(r) = -r^3 - \frac{3}{2}(2q-1)r^2 + (-2q^2+3q-1)r + q^2 - q + \frac{1}{4}$,
$c_4^q(r) = r^4 + (6q-2)r^3 + (11q^2-9q+2)r^2 + (6q^3-11q^2+6q-1)r - 3q^3 + \frac{11}{3}q^2 - \frac{3}{2}q + \frac{1}{5}$.

Remark 1. *If $r=0$, then $c_n^q(0) = c_n^q$ are the Cauchy numbers with q parameter of the first kind* [6]

$$c_n^q = \int_0^1 (x|q)_n \, dx = \sum_{k=0}^{n} q^{n-k}\, s(n,k)\, \frac{1}{k+1},$$

where $s(n,k)$ are the Stirling numbers of the first kind.

If $q=1$, we have $c_n^1(r) = c_n(r)$ and $w_{1,r}(n,k)$ are reduced to $s_r(n+r, k+r)$, and hence we obtain the explicit formula (1.5).

From (1.13), we can easily derive the exponential generating function of $c_n^q(r)$ as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n^q(r) \frac{t^n}{n!} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sum_{k=0}^{n} w(n,k) \frac{1}{k+1}\, \frac{t^n}{n!} \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\sum_{n=k}^{\infty} w(n,k) \frac{t^n}{n!}\, \frac{1}{k+1} \\
&= (1+qt)^{\frac{-r}{q}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^k \frac{1}{k!}\, \frac{1}{k+1} \\
&= (1+qt)^{\frac{-r}{q}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^{k+1} \frac{1}{(k+1)!}\, \frac{q}{\ln(1+qt)} \\
&= \frac{q(1+qt)^{\frac{-r}{q}}}{\ln(1+qt)} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^k \frac{1}{k!} \\
&= \frac{q(1+qt)^{\frac{-r}{q}}}{\ln(1+qt)} \left((1+qt)^{\frac{1}{q}} - 1\right).
\end{aligned}$$

When $r = 0$, we get the exponential generating function of c_n^q

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n^q \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{q}{\ln(1+qt)} \left((1+qt)^{\frac{1}{q}} - 1\right)$$

According to (2.1),

$$(-x-r|q)_n = \prod_{j=0}^{n-1}(-x-r-jq) = \sum_{k=0}^{n} w(n,k)\,(-1)^k\,x^k, \qquad q \neq 0. \tag{2.3}$$

Using (1.7), we get the following theorem.

Theorem 2. *The Cauchy polynomials with q parameter of the second kind $\hat{c}_n^q(r)$, $q \neq 0$ can be written explicitly as*

$$\hat{c}_n^q(-r) = \sum_{k=0}^{n}(-1)^k\,w(n,k)\,\frac{1}{k+1}. \tag{2.4}$$

The first few polynomials are
$\hat{c}_0^q(r) = 1$,
$\hat{c}_1^q(r) = r - \frac{1}{2}$,
$\hat{c}_2^q(r) = r^2 - (q+1)r + \frac{1}{2}q + \frac{1}{3}$,
$\hat{c}_3^q(r) = r^3 - \frac{3}{2}(2q+1)r^2 + (2q^2+3q+1)r - q^2 - q - \frac{1}{4}$,
$\hat{c}_4^q(r) = r^4 - (6q+2)r^3 + (11q^2+9q+2)r^2 - (6q^3+11q^2+6q+1)r + 3q^3 + \frac{11}{3}q^2 + \frac{3}{2}q + \frac{1}{5}$.

Remark 2. *If $r = 0$, then $\hat{c}_n^q(0) = \hat{c}_n^q$ are the Cauchy numbers with q parameter of the second kind* [6]

$$\hat{c}_n^q = \int_0^1 (-x|q)_n\,dx = \sum_{k=0}^{n} q^{n-k}\,s(n,k)\,\frac{(-1)^k}{k+1},$$

Similarly, we can obtain the exponential generating function of $\hat{c}_n^q(r)$:

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \hat{c}_n^q(r)\frac{t^n}{n!} &= (1+qt)^{\frac{r}{q}} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\left(-\frac{\ln(1+qt)}{q}\right)^k \frac{1}{k!}\,\frac{1}{k+1} \\ &= \frac{q(1+qt)^{\frac{r}{q}}}{\ln(1+qt)}\left(1-(1+qt)^{\frac{-1}{q}}\right).\end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

And

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \hat{c}_n^q \frac{t^n}{n!} = \frac{q}{\ln(1+qt)}\left(1-(1+qt)^{\frac{-1}{q}}\right). \tag{2.6}$$

Replace x by $\frac{x-r}{q}$ in (1.12), then the r-Whitney numbers of the second kind $W(n,k)$ are given by

$$x^n = \sum_{k=0}^{n} W(n,k)(x-r|q)_k = \sum_{k=0}^{n} W(n,k)\prod_{j=0}^{k-1}(x-r-jq), \qquad q \neq 0. \tag{2.7}$$

Thus, the relation between $c_n^q(r)$, $\hat{c}_n^q(r)$ and $W(n,k)$ can be obtained as follows:

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} W(n,k)\,c_k^q(r) = \int_0^1 \sum_{k=0}^{n} W(n,k)(x-r|q)_k\,dx = \int_0^1 x^n\,dx = \frac{1}{n+1} \tag{2.8}$$

(2.9)
$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} W(n,k)\,\hat{c}_k^q(-r) = \int_0^1 \sum_{k=0}^{n} W(n,k)(-x-r|q)_k\,dx = \int_0^1 (-1)^n\,x^n\,dx = \frac{(-1)^n}{n+1}$$

Cheon et al. [1] gave the following representation of $w(n,k)$ in terms of $s(n,k)$

$$w(n,k) = \sum_{i=k}^{n} \binom{n}{i} (-1)^{n-i}\,q^{i-k}\,[r|q]_{n-i}\,s(i,k).$$

Hence,

Corollary 1. *The Cauchy polynomials $c_n^q(r)$ can be computed by using $s(n,k)$ as follows:*

$$\begin{aligned} c_n^q(r) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\sum_{i=k}^{n} \binom{n}{i} (-1)^{n-i}\,q^{i-k}\,[r|q]_{n-i}\,s(i,k)\,\frac{1}{k+1} \\ &= \sum_{i=0}^{n}\sum_{k=0}^{i} \binom{n}{i} (-1)^{n-i}\,q^{i-k}\,[r|q]_{n-i}\,s(i,k)\,\frac{1}{k+1}. \end{aligned} \tag{2.10}$$

When $q=1$, we obtain the identity

$$c_n(r) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{i} (-1)^{n-i}\,[r|1]_{n-i}c_i. \tag{2.11}$$

The r-Whitney numbers $w_{q,r}(n,k)$ satisfy the following identity [1].

$$w_{q,r+s}(n,k) = \sum_{j=k}^{n}(-1)^{n-j}\binom{n}{j}\,[r|q]_{n-j}\,w_{q,s}(j,k), \tag{2.12}$$

hence, we obtain the following theorem.

Theorem 3. *For $n \ge 0$, we have*

$$c_n^q(r+s) = \sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{n-j}\binom{n}{j}\,[r|q]_{n-j}\,c_j^q(s). \tag{2.13}$$

Proof.

$$\begin{aligned} c_n^q(r+s) &= \sum_{k=0}^{n} w_{q,r+s}(n,k)\,\frac{1}{k+1} \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n}\sum_{j=k}^{n}(-1)^{n-j}\binom{n}{j}\,[r|q]_{n-j}\,w_{q,s}(j,k)\,\frac{1}{k+1} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{n}\sum_{k=0}^{j}(-1)^{n-j}\binom{n}{j}\,[r|q]_{n-j}\,w_{q,s}(j,k)\,\frac{1}{k+1} \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{n-j}\binom{n}{j}\,[r|q]_{n-j}\,c_j^q(s). \end{aligned}$$

□

Remark 3. *For $s = 0$, we get*

$$c_n^q(r) = \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^{n-j} \binom{n}{j} [r|q]_{n-j}\, c_j^q. \tag{2.14}$$

For $q = 1$, we get

$$c_n(r+s) = \sum_{j=0}^{n} (-1)^{n-j} \binom{n}{j} [r|1]_{n-j}\, c_j(s). \tag{2.15}$$

Acknowledgement 1. *The author thank Prof. István Mezö for reading carefully the paper and giving helpful suggestions.*

References

[1] G. S. Cheon and J. H. Jung, r-Whitney numbers of Dowling lattices, *Discrete Math.* **312**, 2337–2348 (2012).
[2] L. Comtet, *Advanced Combinatorics*, Reidel, Dordrecht, 1974.
[3] A. Z. Broder, The r-Stirling numbers, *Discrete Math.* **49**, 241-259 (1984).
[4] K. Kamano and T. Komatsu, Poly-Cauchy polynomials, *Mosc. J. Comb. Number Theory* **3**, 61–87 (2013).
[5] T. Komatsu and I. Mezö, Several explicit formulae of Cauchy polynomials in terms of r-Stirling numbers, *Acta Math. Hungar.* **148** 2, 522–529 (2016).
[6] T. Komatsu, Poly-Cauchy numbers with a q parameter, *Ramanujan J.* **31**, 353–371, (2013).
[7] T. Komatsu, Poly-Cauchy numbers, *Kyushu J. Math.* **67**, 143–153 (2013).
[8] T. Komatsu, Sums of products of Cauchy numbers, including Poly-Cauchy numbers, *J. Discrete Math.* **2013**, Article ID 373927, 10 pages (2013).
[9] D. Merlini, R. Sprugnoli and M. C. Verri, The Cauchy numbers, *Discrete Math.* **306**, 1906-1920 (2006).
[10] I. Mezö, A new formula for the Bernoulli polynomials, *Results Math.* **58**, 329–335 (2010).
[11] M. Shattuck, Identities for Generalized Whitney and Stirling Numbers, *J. Integer Seq.* **20**, Article 17.10.4. (2017)
[12] F-Z. Zhao, Sums of products of Cauchy numbers, *Discrete Math.* **309**, 3830–3842 (2009).

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, Mansoura University, 35516 Mansoura, EGYPT.

E-mail address: fshiha@yahoo.com, fshiha@mans.edu.eg

Global dynamics of Chikungunya virus with two routes of infection

A. M. Elaiw[a], S. E. Almalki[a,b] and A. Hobiny[a]

[a]Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, King Abdulaziz University, P.O. Box 80203, Jeddah 21589, Saudi Arabia.

[b]Jeddah College of Technology, Technical and Vocational Training Corporation

Emails: a_m_elaiw@yahoo.com (A. Elaiw), samialmalki0@gmail.com (S. E. Almalki)

Abstract

In this paper, we address the stability analysis of within-host Chikungunya virus (CHIKV) infection models with antibodies. We incorporate two modes of infections, attaching a CHIKV to a host monocyte, and contacting an infected monocyte with an uninfected monocyte. The global stability analysis of the equilibria are established using Lyapunov method. The existence and global stability of the steady states are determined by the basic reproduction number $\mathcal{R}_0$. We have proven that the CHIKV-free equilibrium E_0 is globally asymptotically stable when $\mathcal{R}_0 \leq 1$, and the infected equilibrium E_1 is globally asymptotically stable when $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$. The theoretical results are confirmed by numerical simulations.

1 Introduction

During last decades, many researchers have developed and analyzed several mathematical models human pathogens (see e.g. [1]-[16]). Chikungunya virus (CHIKV) is an alphavirus causes chikungunya fever. CHIKV is a mosquito-transmitted and is transmitted by the Aedes albopictus and Aedes agypti mosquito. Most of authors develop the mathematical models to describe the disease transmission mosquito and human populations. Recently, Wang and Liu [16] have proved a mathematical model for the within-host CHIKV dynamics as:

$$\dot{s} = \beta - \delta s - \eta s y, \tag{1}$$

$$\dot{y} = \eta s y - \epsilon y, \tag{2}$$

$$\dot{p} = \pi y - c p - r x p, \tag{3}$$

$$\dot{x} = \lambda + \rho x p - m x, \tag{4}$$

Here, s, y, p and x are the concentrations of uninfected monocytes, infected monocytes, CHIKV pathogen and antibodies, respectively. β and δ represent the birth rate and death rate constants of the uninfected monocytes, respectively. The monocytes become infected at rate ηsy, where η is the infection rate constant. Constants ϵ, c and m represent, respectively, the death rate of the infected monocytes, CHIKV and antibodies. Constant π is the generation rate of the CHIKV from actively infected monocytes. Antibodies attack the CHIKV at rate rxp. Once antigen is encountered, the antibodies expand at a constant rate λ and proliferate at rate ρxp. In a very recent work, Elaiw et al. [17], [18] have studied the global stability analysis of a class of CHIKV dynamics models. The models presented in [16]-[18] assume that the uninfected monocyte becomes infected by contacting with CHIKV(CHIKV-to-monocyte transmission). Kristin and Mork [19] reported that the CHIKV can also spread by infected-to-monocyte transmission. Viral danamics models with both cellular and viral infections have been studied in several works [20]-[24]. However, the dynamics of CHIKV with two routes of infection did not studied before.

Our aim is to propose and analyse a CHIKV dynamics model with two routes of infection. We calculate the basic reproduction number $\mathcal{R}_0$, and construct Lyapunov functions to prove the global stability of the equilbria.

2 CHIKV dynamics model

We investigate the following CHIKV dynamics model with CHIKV-to-monocyte and infected-to-monocyte with two routes of infection:

$$\dot{s} = \beta - \delta s - \eta_1 sp - \eta_2 sy, \tag{5}$$

$$\dot{y} = \eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy - \epsilon y, \tag{6}$$

$$\dot{p} = \pi y - cp - rxp, \tag{7}$$

$$\dot{x} = \lambda + \rho xp - mx. \tag{8}$$

Here, the uninfected monocytes become infected at rate $(\eta_1 y + \eta_2 p)s$, where η_1 and η_2 are the CHIKV-monocyte and infected-monocyte incidence constants, respectively.

2.1 Nonnegativity and boundedness

Lemma 1 *There exist $M_1, M_2, M_3 > 0$, such that the following compact set is positively invariant for system (5)-(8)*

$$\Gamma_1 = \{(s, y, p, x) \in \mathbb{R}^4_{\geq 0} : 0 \leq s, y \leq M_1, 0 \leq p \leq M_2, 0 \leq x \leq M_3\}$$

Proof. We have

$$\dot{s}\mid_{s=0} = \beta > 0, \qquad \dot{y}\mid_{y=0} = \eta_1 sp \geq 0, \quad \text{for all} \ \ s, p \geq 0,$$

$$\dot{p}\mid_{p=0} = \pi y \geq 0, \quad \text{for all} \ \ y \geq 0, \quad \dot{x}\mid_{x=0} = \lambda > 0.$$

Thus $\mathbb{R}^4_{\geq 0}$ positively invariant with respect to system (5)-(8). Let us define

$$F_1(t) = s(t) + y(t),$$
$$F_2(t) = p(t) + \frac{r}{\rho}x(t).$$

Then from Eqs. (5)-(8) we get

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{F}_1(t) &= \beta - \delta s(t) - \epsilon y(t) \\ &\leq \beta - \sigma_1(s(t) + y(t)) \\ &= \beta - \sigma_1 F_1(t),\end{aligned}$$

where, $\sigma_1 = min\{\delta, \epsilon\}$. Hence $F_1(t) \leq M_1$, if $F_1(0) \leq M_1$, where $M_1 = \frac{\beta}{\sigma_1}$. It follows that $0 \leq s(t), y(t) \leq M_1$ if $0 \leq s(0) + y(0) \leq M_1$. Moreover, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{F}_2(t) &= \pi y(t) - cp(t) + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \frac{mr}{\rho}x(t) \\ &\leq \pi M_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \sigma_2\left(p(t) + \frac{r}{\rho}x(t)\right) \\ &= \pi M_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \sigma_2 F_2(t),\end{aligned}$$

where, $\sigma_2 = min\{c, m\}$. Hence $F_2(t) \leq M_2$, if $F_2(0) \leq M_2$, where $M_2 = \frac{\pi M_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda}{\sigma_2}$. Since $p(t)$ and $x(t)$ are all nonnegative, then $0 \leq p(t) \leq M_2$ and $x(t) \leq M_3$ if $0 \leq p(0) + \frac{r}{\rho}x(0) \leq M_2$, where $M_3 = \frac{\rho M_2}{r}$.
■

2.2 Equilbria

We define the basic reproduction number

$$\mathcal{R}_0 = \frac{(\eta_1\pi m + \eta_2 cm + \eta_2 r\lambda)\beta}{\epsilon\delta(cm + r\lambda)}.$$

Lemma 2 *(i) if $\mathcal{R}_0 \leq 1$, then there exists only one equilbrium $E_0 \in \Gamma_1$ (ii) if $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$, then there exist two equilbria $E_0 \in \Gamma_1$ and $E_1 \in \overset{\circ}{\Gamma}_1$, where $\overset{\circ}{\Gamma}_1$ is the interior of Γ_1.*

Proof. Any equilbrium satisfying

$$\beta - \delta s - \eta_1 sp - \eta_2 sy = 0, \tag{9}$$

$$\eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy - \epsilon y = 0, \tag{10}$$

$$\pi y - cp - rxp = 0, \tag{11}$$

$$\lambda + \rho xp - mx = 0. \tag{12}$$

By solving Eqs. (9)-(12) we we get two equilbria a CHIKV-free equilbrium $E_0 = (s_0, 0, 0, x_0)$, where $s_0 = \frac{\beta}{\delta}$ and $x_0 = \frac{\lambda}{m}$. Moreover we have

$$C_1 p^3 + C_2 p^2 + C_3 p + C_4 = 0,$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
C_1 &= -c\pi\epsilon\eta_1\rho^2 - c^2\epsilon\eta_2\rho^2,\\
C_2 &= 2cm\pi\epsilon\eta_1\rho + 2c^2 m\epsilon\eta_2\rho + \pi r\epsilon\eta_1\lambda\rho + 2cr\epsilon\eta_2\lambda\rho - c\pi\delta\epsilon\rho^2 + \pi^2\beta\eta_1\rho^2 + c\pi\beta\eta_2\rho^2\\
C_3 &= -cm^2\pi\epsilon\eta_1 - c^2m^2\epsilon\eta_2 - m\pi r\epsilon\eta_1\lambda - 2cmr\epsilon\eta_2\lambda - r^2\epsilon\eta_2\lambda^2 + 2cm\pi\delta\epsilon\rho - 2m\pi^2\beta\eta_1\rho\\
&\quad - 2cm\pi\beta\eta_2\rho + \pi r\delta\epsilon\lambda\rho - \pi r\beta\eta_2\lambda\rho,\\
C_4 &= -cm^2\pi\delta\epsilon + m^2\pi^2\beta\eta_1 + cm^2\pi\beta\eta_2 - m\pi r\delta\epsilon\lambda + m\pi r\beta\eta_2\lambda.
\end{aligned}$$

Let define a function $X(p)$ as:

$$X(p) = C_1 p^3 + C_2 p^2 + C_3 p + C_4 = 0.$$

Then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
X(0) &= C_4,\\
X\left(\frac{m}{\rho}\right) &= -\frac{mr^2\epsilon\eta_2\lambda^2}{\rho} < 0.
\end{aligned}$$

The constant C_4 can be written as

$$C_4 = m\pi\delta\epsilon(cm + r\lambda)\left(\frac{(\eta_1\pi m + \eta_2 cm + \eta_2 r\lambda)\beta}{\epsilon\delta(cm + r\lambda)} - 1\right)$$

Then $C_4 > 0$ if the following condition is satisfied

$$\frac{(\eta_1\pi m + \eta_2 cm + \eta_2 r\lambda)\beta}{\epsilon\delta(cm + r\lambda)} > 1, \tag{13}$$

then there exists $p_1 \in (0, \frac{m}{\rho})$ such that $X(p_1) = 0$. Therefore, if condition (13) is satisfied, then

$$\begin{aligned}
s_1 &= \frac{\epsilon c(m - \rho p_1) + \epsilon r\lambda}{\eta_1\pi(m - \rho p_1) + \eta_2 c(m - \rho p_1) + \eta_2 r\lambda} > 0,\\
y_1 &= \frac{p_1(c(m - \rho p_1) + r\lambda)}{\pi(m - \rho p_1)} > 0, \qquad x_1 = \frac{\lambda}{m - \rho p_1} > 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Then an infected equilbrium $E_1 = (s_1, y_1, p_1, x_1)$ exists when $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$.

Now we show that $E_0 \in \Gamma_1$ and $E_1 \in \overset{\circ}{\Gamma}_1$. Clearly, $E_0 \in \Gamma_1$. From the equilbrium conditions of E_1 we have

$$\beta = \delta s_1 + \eta_1 s_1 p_1 + \eta_2 s_1 y_1 \Rightarrow \delta s_1 + \epsilon y_1 = \beta \Rightarrow 0 < s_1 < \frac{\beta}{\delta} \leq M_1, 0 < y_1 < \frac{\beta}{\epsilon} \leq M_1.$$

Moreover, from Eqs. (11) and (12) we have

$$cp_1 = \pi y_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \frac{mr}{\rho}x_1 \Rightarrow cp_1 + \frac{mr}{\rho}x_1 = \pi y_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda < \pi M_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda$$
$$p_1 < \frac{\pi M_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda}{c} \leq M_2, x_1 < \frac{\rho}{r}\frac{\pi M_1 + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda}{m} \leq \frac{\rho M_2}{r} = M_3.$$

It follows that, $E_1 \in \overset{\circ}{\Gamma}$. ■

3 Global properties

Define a function $G(z) = z - 1 - \ln z$.

Theorem 1 *If $\mathcal{R}_0 \leq 1$, then E_0 is globally asymptotically stable in Γ_1.*

Proof. Letting $\mathcal{R}_0 \leq 1$ and constructing a Lyapunov function $U_0(s, y, p, x)$ as:

$$U_0(s, y, p, x) = s_0 G\left(\frac{s}{s_0}\right) + y + \frac{\eta_1 s_0}{c + rx_0}p + \frac{r\eta_1 s_0}{\rho(c + rx_0)}x_0 G\left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right).$$

Calculating $\frac{dU_0}{dt}$ along system (5)-(8) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dU_0}{dt} &= \left(1 - \frac{s_0}{s}\right)\left(\beta - \delta s - \eta_1 sp - \eta_2 sy\right) + \eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy - \epsilon y \\ &+ \frac{\eta_1 s_0}{c + rx_0}\left(\pi y - cp - rxp\right) + \frac{r\eta_1 s_0}{\rho(c + rx_0)}\left(1 - \frac{x_0}{x}\right)\left(\lambda + \rho xp - mx\right) \\ &= \left(1 - \frac{s_0}{s}\right)\left(\beta - \delta s\right) + \eta_2 s_0 y - \epsilon y + \frac{\eta_1 s_0}{c + rx_0}\pi y + \frac{r\eta_1 s_0}{\rho(c + rx_0)}\left(1 - \frac{x_0}{x}\right)\left(\lambda - mx\right)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dU_0}{dt} &= -\delta\frac{(s - s_0)^2}{s} + \epsilon\left(\frac{\eta_2 s_0}{\epsilon} + \frac{\eta_1 s_0 \pi}{\epsilon(c + rx_0)} - 1\right)y - \frac{r\eta_1 s_0 m}{\rho(c + rx_0)}\frac{(x - x_0)^2}{x} \\ &= -\delta\frac{(s - s_0)^2}{s} - \frac{r\eta_1 s_0 m}{\rho(c + rx_0)}\frac{(x - x_0)^2}{x} + \epsilon(\mathcal{R}_0 - 1)y. \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Since $\mathcal{R}_0 \leq 1$, then for all $s, y, p, x > 0$ we have $\frac{dU_0}{dt} \leq 0$. Let $W_0 = \{(s, y, p, x) : \frac{dU_0}{dt} = 0\}$. It can be easily shown that $\frac{dU_0}{dt} = 0$ at E_0. Appling LaSalle's invariance principle, we get E_0 is globally asymptotically stable when $\mathcal{R}_0 \leq 1$. ■

Theorem 2 *If $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$, then E_1 is globally asymptotically stable in $\overset{\circ}{\Gamma}_1$.*

Proof. Define

$$U_1(s, y, p, x) = s_1 G\left(\frac{s}{s_1}\right) + y_1 G\left(\frac{y}{y_1}\right) + \frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}p_1 G\left(\frac{p}{p_1}\right) + \frac{r}{\rho}\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}x_1 G\left(\frac{x}{x_1}\right).$$

Calculating $\frac{dU_1}{dt}$ along the trajectories of (5)-(8) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dU_1}{dt} &= \left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\beta-\delta s-\eta_1 sp-\eta_2 sy\right)+\left(1-\frac{y_1}{y}\right)\left(\eta_1 sp+\eta_2 sy-\epsilon y\right)\\ &+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}\left(1-\frac{p_1}{p}\right)\left(\pi y-cp-rxp\right)+\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\rho\pi y_1}\left(1-\frac{x_1}{x}\right)\left(\lambda+\rho xp-mx\right)\\ &= \left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\beta-\delta s\right)+\eta_1 s_1 p+\eta_2 s_1 y-\eta_1 sp\frac{y_1}{y}-\eta_2 sy_1-\epsilon y+\epsilon y_1+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{y_1}y-\eta_1 s_1 p_1\frac{p_1 y}{py_1}\\ &-\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}cp+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}cp_1+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rxp_1-\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}x_1 p+\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\rho\pi y_1}\left(1-\frac{x_1}{x}\right)\left(\lambda-mx\right).\end{aligned}$$

Applying the equilbrium conditions for E_1

$$\beta=\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1+\delta s_1,\quad \epsilon y_1=\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1,\quad cp_1=\pi y_1-rx_1 p_1,\quad \lambda=mx_1-\rho x_1 p_1.$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dU_1}{dt} &= -\delta\frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s}+\left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1\right)\\ &-\eta_1 s_1 p_1\frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y}-\eta_2 s_1 y_1\frac{s}{s_1}+\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1-\eta_1 s_1 p_1\frac{p_1 y}{py_1}+\eta_1 s_1 p_1\\ &-2\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rx_1 p_1+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rxp_1+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rx_1 p_1\frac{x_1}{x}-\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1 m}{\rho\pi y_1}\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x}.\end{aligned}\tag{15}$$

Eq. (15) can be simplified as:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dU_1}{dt} &= -\delta\frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s}+\eta_2 s_1 y_1\left[2-\frac{s_1}{s}-\frac{s}{s_1}\right]+\eta_1 s_1 p_1\left[3-\frac{s_1}{s}-\frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y}-\frac{p_1 y}{py_1}\right]\\ &-\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rx_1 p_1\left[2-\frac{x}{x_1}-\frac{x_1}{x}\right]-\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1 m}{\rho\pi y_1}\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x}\\ &= -\delta\frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s}-\frac{\eta_2 y_1(s-s_1)^2}{s}+\eta_1 s_1 p_1\left[3-\frac{s_1}{s}-\frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y}-\frac{p_1 y}{py_1}\right]\\ &+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rp_1\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x}-\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1 m}{\rho\pi y_1}\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x}\\ &= -(\delta+\eta_2 y_1)\frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s}-\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}\frac{r\lambda}{\rho x_1}\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x}+\eta_1 s_1 p_1\left[3-\frac{s_1}{s}-\frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y}-\frac{p_1 y}{py_1}\right].\end{aligned}$$

We use the following arithmetic mean-geometric mean inequality rule. If $a_i\geq 0$, $i=1,2,...,n$, then

$$\frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n}a_i\geq\sqrt[n]{\prod_{i=1}^{n}a_i},\tag{16}$$

where equality holding if and only if $a_1=a_2=...=a_n$. It follows that

$$\frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{s_1}{s}+\frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y}+\frac{p_1 y}{py_1}\right)\geq 1.$$

Therefore, $\frac{dU_1}{dt}\leq 0$ for all $s,y,p,x>0$ and $\frac{dU_1}{dt}=0$ if and only if $s=s_1, y=y_1, p=p_1$ and $x=x_1$. It follows that the global stability of E_1 is induced from LaSalle's invariance principle. ■

Table 1: The value of the parameters of model (5)-(8).

Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value
β	2	δ	0.1
η_1, η_2	varied	ϵ	0.5
π	4	c	0.1
r	0.5	λ	1.4
m	1	ρ	0.2

4 Numerical Simulations

We will use the values of the parameters given in Table 1. Moreover, we similate the system with three different initial values as:

IV1: $s(0) = 14.0, y(0) = 1.0, p(0) = 1.0$, and $x(0) = 1.0$,

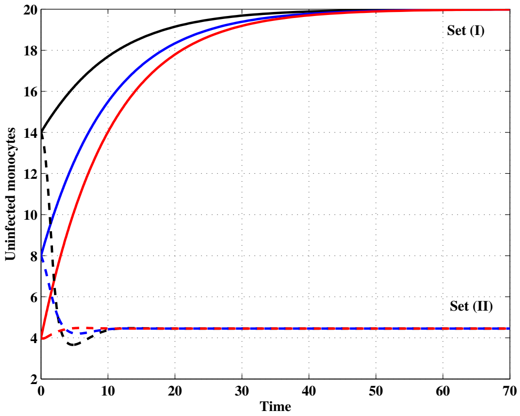
IV2: $s(0) = 8.0, y(0) = 2.0, p(0) = 3.0$, and $x(0) = 4.0$,

IV3: $s(0) = 4.0, y(0) = 3.5, p(0) = 6.0$, and $x(0) = 7.0$.

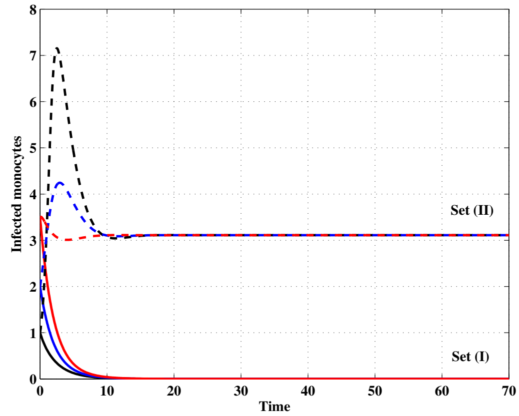
Then we consider two sets of the values of η_1 and η_2 as follows:

Set (I): We choose $\eta_1 = \eta_2 = 0.001$. The value of $\mathcal{R}_0$ is computed as $\mathcal{R}_0 = 0.2400 < 1$. Figure 1 shows that, the concentrations of the uninfected monocytes and B cells return to their values $s_0 = \frac{\beta}{\delta} = 20$ and $x_0 = \frac{\lambda}{m} = 1.4$, respectively. On the other hand, the concentrations of infected monocytes and CHIKV particles are declining and reaching zero for the initial values IV1-IV3. This shows that, E_0 is GAS which agrees with the result of Theorem 1.

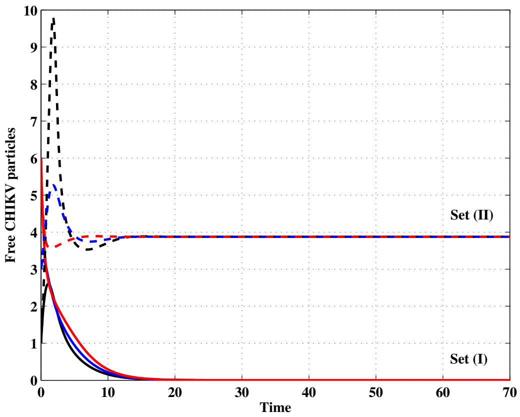
Set (II): We take $\eta_1 = \eta_2 = 0.05$. Then, we calculate $\mathcal{R}_0 = 12.0 > 1$. We comput the equilbria as $E_0(20.0, 0, 0, 1.4)$ and $E_1 = (4.45, 3.10, 3.87, 6.22)$. Figure 1 shows that when $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$, the states of the system tend to E_1 for all the three initial values IV1-IV3. This confirms that the validity of Theorem 2.



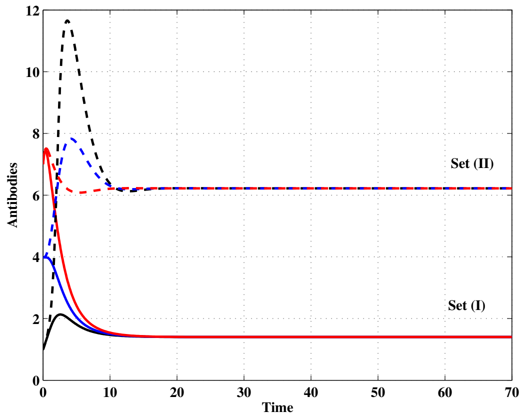
(a) Uninfected monocytes.



(b) Infected monocytes.



(c) Free CHIKV particles.



(d) Antibodies.

Figure 1: The simulation of trajectories of system (5)-(8).

References

[1] M. A. Nowak and C. R. M. Bangham, *Population dynamics of immune responses to persistent viruses*, Science, **272** (1996) 74-79.

[2] X. Li and S. Fu, *Global stability of a virus dynamics model with intracellular delay and CTL immune response*, Mathematical Methods in the Applied Sciences, **38** (2015), 420-430.

[3] A. M. Elaiw, N. H. AlShamrani and K. Hattaf, *Dynamical behaviors of a general humoral immunity viral infection model with distributed invasion and production*, International Journal of Biomathematics, 10(3), (2017) Article ID 1750035.

[4] A. M. Elaiw,, A. A. Raezah, and K. Hattaf, *Stability of HIV-1 infection with saturated virus-target and infected-target incidences and CTL immune response*, International Journal of Biomathematics, Vol. 10, No. 5 (2017), 1750070.

[5] A. M. Elaiw and S.A. Azoz, *Global properties of a class of HIV infection models with Beddington-DeAngelis functional response,* Mathematical Methods in the Applied Sciences, **36** (2013), 383-394.

[6] A. M. Elaiw, *Global properties of a class of HIV models*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **11** (2010), 2253-2263.

[7] A. M. Elaiw, and N. A. Almuallem, *Global dynamics of delay-distributed HIV infection models with differential drug efficacy in cocirculating target cells*, Mathematical Methods in the Applied Sciences, **39** (2016), 4-31.

[8] G. Huang, Y. Takeuchi and W. Ma, *Lyapunov functionals for delay differential equations model of viral infections*, SIAM J. Appl. Math., **70**(7) (2010), 2693-2708.

[9] K. Wang, A. Fan, and A. Torres, *Global properties of an improved hepatitis B virus model*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **11** (2010), 3131-3138.

[10] A. U. Neumann, N. P. Lam, H. Dahari, D. R. Gretch, T. E. Wiley, T. J, Layden, and A. S. Perelson, *Hepatitis C viral dynamics in vivo and the antiviral efficacy of interferon-alpha therapy*, Science, **282** (1998), 103-107.

[11] L. Wang, M. Y. Li, and D. Kirschner, *Mathematical analysis of the global dynamics of a model for HTLV-I infection and ATL progression*, Mathematical Biosciences, **179** (2002) 207-217.

[12] H. Shu, L. Wang and J. Watmough, *Global stability of a nonlinear viral infection model with infinitely distributed intracellular delays and CTL imune responses*, SIAM Journal of Applied Mathematics, **73**(3) (2013), 1280-1302.

[13] A. M. Elaiw and N. H. AlShamrani, *Global stability of humoral immunity virus dynamics models with nonlinear infection rate and removal*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **26**, (2015), 161-190.

[14] A. M. Elaiw and N. H. AlShamrani, *Stability of a general delay-distributed virus dynamics model with multi-staged infected progression and immune response*, Mathematical Methods in the Applied Sciences, **40(3)** (2017), 699-719.

[15] M. Li, and H. Shu, *Global dynamics of a mathematical model for HTLV-I infection of CD4+ T-cells*, Applied Mathematical Modelling, **35**(7) (2011) 3587-3595

[16] Y. Wang, X. Liu, *Stability and Hopf bifurcation of a within-host chikungunya virus infection model with two delays,* Mathematics and Computers in Simulation, **138** (2017), 31-48.

[17] A. M. Elaiw, T. O. Alade and S. M. Alsulami, *Stability of a within-host Chikungunya virus dynamics model with latency*, Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications, **26**(5) 2019, 777-790.

[18] A. M. Elaiw, T. O. Alade and S. M. Alsulami, *Analysis of latent CHIKV dynamics model with time delays*, Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications, **27**(1) 2019, 19-36.

[19] Kristin M. Long and Mark T. Heise, *Protective and Pathogenic Responses to Chikungunya Virus Infection*, Curr Trop Med Rep. **2**(1) (2015), 13-21.

[20] J. Wang, J. Lang, X. Zou, *Analysis of an age structured HIV infection model with virus-to-cell infection and cell-to-cell transmission*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **34** (2017), 75-96.

[21] F. Li and J. Wang, *Analysis of an HIV infection model with logistic target cell growth and cell-to-cell transmission*, Chaos, Solitons and Fractals, **81** (2015), 136-145.

[22] X. Lai and X. Zou , *Modeling cell-to-cell spread of HIV-1 with logistic target cell growth*, Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications, **426** (2015), 563–584.

[23] X. Lai, X. Zou, *Modelling HIV-1 virus dynamics with both virus-to-cell infection and cell-to-cell transmission*, SIAM Journal of Applied Mathematics, **74** (2014), 898–917.

[24] Y. Yang, L. Zou and S. Ruanc, *Global dynamics of a delayed within-host viral infection model with both virus-to-cell and cell-to-cell transmissions*, Mathematical Biosciences, **270** (2015), 183-191.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Weighted norm inequalities of θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators and commutators on λ-central Morrey space

Yanqi Yang and Shuangping Tao*

(*College of Mathematics and Statistics, Northwest Normal University, Lanzhou 730070, Gansu, China*, Email:taosp@nwnu.edu.cn)

Abstract: In this paper, the weighted boundedness for θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators T_θ is established on the λ-central Morrey space. Futhermore, the weighted norm inequalities for commutators of $[b, T_\theta]$ generated by T_θ and BMO functions on the weighted λ-central Morrey space is also given.

Keywords: θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operator; weighted λ-central Morrey space; commutator

2010 MR Subject Classification: 42B20, 42B25, 42B35.

1 Introduction and notation

The theory of Calderón-Zygmund operators has played very important roles in modern harmonic analysis with lots of extensive applications in the others fields of mathematics, which has been extensively studied (see [7-10, 16-17], for instance). In 1985, Yabuta introduced certain θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators to facilitate his study of certain classes of pseudodifferential operators (see [36]). Following the terminology of Yabuta, we recall the so-called θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators. Let θ be a non-negative and non-decreasing function on $\mathbb{R}^+ = (0, \infty)$ satisfying

$$\int_0^1 \frac{\theta(t)}{t} \mathrm{d}t < \infty. \tag{1.1}$$

A measurable function $K(\cdot, \cdot)$ on $\mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n$ is said to be a θ-type Calderón-Zygmund kernel if it satisfies

$$|K(x, y)| \le C|x - y|^{-n} \tag{1.2}$$

and

$$|K(x, y) - K(x', y)| + |K(y, x) - K(y, x')| \le C\theta\left(\frac{|x - x'|}{|x - y|}\right)|x - y|^{-n}, \quad \text{as} \quad |x - y| \ge 2|x - x'|. \tag{1.3}$$

Definition 1.1[36] Let T_θ be a linear operator from $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ into its dual $\mathcal{S}'(\mathbb{R}^n)$, where $\mathcal{S}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ denotes the Schwartz class. One can say that T_θ is a θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operator if it satisfies the following conditions:

(1) T_θ can be extended to be a bounded linear operator on $L^2(\mathbb{R}^n)$;

(2) there is a θ-type Calderón-Zygmund kernel $K(x, y)$ such that

$$T_\theta f(x) := \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} K(x, y) f(y) \mathrm{d}y, \quad \text{as} \quad f \in C_c^\infty(\mathbb{R}^n) \quad \text{and} \quad x \notin \operatorname{supp} f. \tag{1.4}$$

*Corresponding author and Email:taosp@nwnu.edu.cn(by S. Tao); 18709498755@126.com (by Y. Yang)

It is easy to see that the classical Calderón-Zygmund operator with standard kernel is a special case of θ-type operator T_θ as $\theta(t) = t^\delta$ with $0 < \delta \leq 1$. Given a locally integrable function b, the commutator generated by T_θ and b is defined by

$$[b, T_\theta]f(x) = b(x)T_\theta f(x) - T_\theta(b \cdot f)(x) = \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} [b(x) - b(y)]K(x, y)f(y)\mathrm{d}y. \tag{1.5}$$

Such type of operators is extensively applied in PDE with non-smooth area. Many authors concentrates on the boundedness of this operators on various function spaces, we refer the reader to see [19-20, 27, 29-30, 33-35] for its developments and applications. In [27], Quek-Yang established the boundedness of T_θ on spaces such as weighted Lebesgue spaces and weak Lebesgue spaces, weighted Hardy spaces and weak Hardy spaces. Ri-Zhang obtained the bounedness of T_θ on Hardy spaces with non-doubling measures and non-homogeneous metric measure spaces in [29-30]. Wang proved the boundedness of T_θ and $[b, T_\theta]$ on the generalized weighted Morrey spaces in [33]. Inspired by the results mentioned previously, a natural and interesting problem is to consider whether the θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators T_θ and their commutators $[b, T_\theta]$ are bounded on λ-central Morrey space or not. The purpose of this paper is to give an surely answer.

On the other hand, the well-known Morrey spaces which introduced originally by Morrey [23] in relation to the study of partial differential equations, were widely investigated during last decades, including the study of classical operators of harmonic analysis in various generalizations of these spaces. Morrey-type spaces appeared to be quite useful in the study of the local behavior of the solutions of partial differential equations, a priori estimates and other topics. They are also widely used in applications to regularity properties of solutions to PDE including the study of Navier-Stokes equations (see [32] and references therein). The ideas of Morrey (see [23]) were further developed by Campanato in 1964 (see [11]). In 1975, Adam proved the boundedness of Riesz potential on the classical Morrey space in [1]. Later, in 1987, the boundedness of singular integrals and Hardy-Littlewood maximal functions on Morrey spaces was obtained By Chiarenza and Frasca in [13]. A more systematic study of these (and even more general) spaces, we refer the readers to see [2-3, 6, 26, 28, 31].

In [5], Beurling introduced a pair of dual Banach spaces, A^q and $B^{q'}$ with $1/q + 1/q' = 1$. After that, Feichtinger found the folling way to describe B^q as

$$\|f\|_{B^q} = \sup_{k \geq 0}(2^{-kn/q}\|f\chi_k\|_{L^q}) < \infty, \tag{1.6}$$

where χ_0 is the characteristic function of the unit ball defined by $\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : |x| \leq 1\}$ and χ_k is the characteristic function of the annulus, that is $\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : 2^{k-1} < |x| \leq 2^k\}$ with $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$. By duality, the beurling algebra A^q can be written as

$$\|f\|_{A^q} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} 2^{kn/q'}\|f\chi_k\|_{L^q} < \infty. \tag{1.7}$$

Later, a new Hardy space HA^q related to the Beurling algebra A^q was introduced by Chen and Lau (see [12]). Denotes $B(0, R)$ be a cube centered at the origin with the side-length $R > 0$. Let

$f_{B(0,R)} = \frac{1}{|B(0,R)|}\int_{B(0,R)} f(x)\mathrm{d}x$ be the integral average of f on B. Then using duality, the dual space of HA^q can be described by $\mathrm{CBMO^q}$ with the following norm,

$$\|f\|_{\mathrm{CBMO}^q} = \sum_{R\geq 1}\left(\frac{1}{|B(0,R)|}\int_{B(0,R)}|f(x)-f_{B(0,R)}|^q\mathrm{d}x\right)^{1/q} < \infty. \tag{1.8}$$

Later, Lu and Yang (see [21-22]) introduced the homogeneous new Hardy type space $\mathrm{H\dot{A}}_q$ and they proved that the dual space of $\mathrm{H\dot{A}}_q$ can be written by

$$\|f\|_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^q} = \sum_{R\geq 0}\left(\frac{1}{|B(0,R)|}\int_{B(0,R)}|f(x)-f_{B(0,R)}|^q\mathrm{d}x\right)^{1/q} < \infty. \tag{1.9}$$

Obviously, the space of $\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^q$ is the homogeneous central bounded mean oscillation space depending on q and it can be regarded as an extention of the classical BMO since the famous John-Nirenberg inequality no longer hold in such space.

Alverez, Lakey and Guzmán-Partida introduced the λ-central bounded mean oscillation space and the λ-central Morrey space in 2000 (see [4]), respectively.

Definition 1.2[4] Let $\lambda < 1/n$ and $1 < q < \infty$. Then we say that a function $f \in L^q_{\mathrm{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ belongs to the λ-central bounded mean oscillation space $\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{q,\lambda}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ if

$$\|f\|_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{q,\lambda}} = \sum_{R>0}\left(\frac{1}{|B(0,R)|^{1+\lambda q}}\int_{B(0,R)}|f(x)-f_{B(0,R)}|^q\mathrm{d}x\right)^{1/q} < \infty. \tag{1.10}$$

Definition 1.3[4] Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $1 < q < \infty$. Then the λ-central Morrey space $\dot{B}^{q,\lambda}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is defined of all functions $f \in L^q_{\mathrm{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ by the following norm

$$\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{q,\lambda}} = \sum_{R>0}\left(\frac{1}{|B(0,R)|^{1+\lambda q}}\int_{B(0,R)}|f(x)|^q\mathrm{d}x\right)^{1/q} < \infty. \tag{1.11}$$

It is very important to study the weighted norm inequalities for some integral operators on classical L^p spaces, one may see [14, 24-25] et al. for more details. In 2009, Komori-Furuya and Shirai (see [18]) defined the weighted Morrey space and showed the boundedness of some classical integral operators and their commutators on the weighted Morrey spaces. In this paper, we will prove the weighted boundedness of θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operator T_θ on the weighted λ-central Morrey space. Before giving the main results, we introduce the following definitions.

Definition 1.4[37] Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $1 < q < \infty$. Then the weighted λ-central Morrey space $\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega_1,\omega_2}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ is defined by

$$\left\{f \in \dot{\mathrm{B}}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega_1,\omega_2}(\mathbb{R}^n) : \|f\|_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega_1,\omega_2}} = \sum_{R>0}\left(\frac{1}{\omega_1(B(0,R))^{1+\lambda q}}\int_{B(0,R)}|f(x)|^q\omega_2(x)\mathrm{d}x\right)^{1/q} < \infty\right\}, \tag{1.12}$$

where ω_1 and ω_2 are non-negative and local integrable functions. Moreover, if $\omega_1 = \omega_2 = \omega$, we denote $\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega_1,\omega_2}(\mathbb{R}^n) = \dot{\mathrm{B}}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega}(\mathbb{R}^n)$.

Definition 1.5[37] Let $\lambda < 1/n$ and $1 < q < \infty$. Then we say that a function $f \in L^q_{\mathrm{loc}}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ belongs to the weighted λ-central bounded mean oscillation space $\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega}(\mathbb{R}^n)$ if

$$\|f\|_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{q,\lambda}_{\omega}} = \sum_{R>0} \left(\frac{1}{\omega(B(0,R))^{1+\lambda q}} \int_{B(0,R)} |f(x) - f_{B,\omega}|^q \omega(x)\mathrm{d}x \right)^{1/q} < \infty, \tag{1.13}$$

where the definition of $f_{B,\omega}$ is $f_{B,\omega} = \frac{1}{\omega(B)} \int_B f(x)\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x$.

Definition 1.6[25] We say a non-negative function $\omega(x)$ belongs to the Muckenhoupt class A_p with $1 < p < \infty$ if there exist a constant $C > 1$ such that

$$\left(\frac{1}{|Q|} \int_Q \omega(x)\mathrm{d}x \right) \left(\frac{1}{|Q|} \int_Q \omega(x)^{1-p'}\mathrm{d}x \right)^{p-1} < \infty,$$

where $1/p + 1/p' = 1$ and $[\omega]_{A_p}$ denotes the infimum of C. Moreover, we define $A_\infty = \bigcup_{1<p<\infty} A_p$.

Obviously, by the classical Hölder inequality, there is $A_p \subset A_q \subset A_\infty$ for $1 < p < q < \infty$.

Our results can be stated as follows.

Theorem 1.1 Let T_θ be defined by (1.4) with θ satisfies (1,1). Suppose that $1 < p < \infty$, $\lambda < 0$ and $\omega(x) \in A_p$, then there exists a constant $C > 0$ independent of f, such that, for any $f \in \dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p,\lambda}_{\omega}$,

$$\|T_\theta(f)\|_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p,\lambda}_{\omega}} \le C\|f\|_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p,\lambda}_{\omega}}.$$

Theorem 1.2 Let $[b, T_\theta]$ be defined by (1.5) with θ satisfies $\int_0^1 \frac{\theta(t)}{t}|\log t|dt < \infty$. Suppose that $1 < p < \infty$, $1/p = 1/p_1 + 1/p_2$, $b \in \mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_{\omega}$, $\omega(x) \in A_p$ and $\lambda = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2$ with $\lambda_i < 0 (i = 1, 2)$, then there exists a constant $C > 0$ independent of f, such that, for any $f \in \dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p_2,\lambda_2}_{\omega}$,

$$\|[b, T_\theta]f\|_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p,\lambda}_{\omega}} \le C\|b\|_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_{\omega}} \|f\|_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p_2,\lambda_2}_{\omega}}.$$

Let us give some necessary notations. Throughout the paper C will denote a positive constant whose value may change at each appearance. In the following, unless otherwise stated, for any real number $p > 1$, we denote p' by $1/p + 1/p' = 1$. Moreover, we say that a weight ω satisfies the doubling condition if there exists a constant D, such that for any cube $Q \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we have $\omega(2Q) \le D\omega(Q)$. For simplicity, we denote $\omega \in \Delta_2$ if ω satisfies the doubling condition.

2 Preliminary Lemmas

Lemmas 2.1[15] If $\omega \in A_p$ for some $1 \le p < \infty$, then $\omega \in \Delta_2$. More precisely, for all $\alpha > 1$, we have

$$\omega(\alpha Q) \le \alpha^{np}[\omega]_{A_p}\omega(Q).$$

Lemmas 2.2[27] Let $1 < p < \infty$ and $\omega \in A_p$. Then, the θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operator T_θ is bounded on L^p_ω.

Lemmas 2.3[18] If $\omega \in \Delta_2$, then there exists a constant $D > 1$ such that for any cube B,

$$\omega(2B) \ge D\omega(B).$$

Lemmas 2.4[37] If $\omega \in A_p$ for some $1 \leq p < \infty$, then for any $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$, $s < 0$ and any cube $B \in \mathbb{R}^n$,

$$\omega(2^k B)^s \leq D_1^{ks}\omega(B)^s,$$

where D_1 is a positive constant which belongs to the interval $(1, 2)$.

3 Proof of Theorems

Proof of Theorem 1.1. For a fixed cube $B = B(0, R)$, we may decompose $f = f_1 + f_2$ with $f_1 = f\chi_{2B}$. Then we obain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B |T(f)(x)|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x &\leq \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B |T(f_1)(x)|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\ &\quad \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B |T(f_2)(x)|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x =: C(I_1 + I_2).\end{aligned}$$

From Lemma 2.1 and Lemma 2.2, we have

$$\begin{aligned}I_1 &= \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B |T(f_1)(x)|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\ &\leq \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_{2B} |f(x)|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\ &\leq C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{p,\omega}_\omega}\frac{\omega(2B)^{1+\lambda p}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}.\end{aligned}$$

As $1 + \lambda p \geq 0$, by using Lemma 2.1, then there exists a constant $C > 0$ independent of f such that

$$I_1 \leq C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{p,\omega}_\omega}. \tag{3.1}$$

On the other hand, by using Lemma 2.4, we can also get (3.1) with an similar argument in the case of $1 + \lambda p < 0$.

Next let's estimate I_2. Noting that $x \in B$ and $y \in (2B)^c$, then there exists a constant $C > 0$ such that $|y| < C|x - y|$. Thus, we have

$$|T_\theta(f_2)| \leq \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} |K(x, y)||f(y)|\mathrm{d}y \leq C\int_{|y|>2r} 1/|y|^n|f(y)|\mathrm{d}y$$

Furthermore, by using Definition 1.6 and the Hölder's inequality, we can get

$$\begin{aligned}&\int_{|y|>2r} 1/|y|^n|f(y)|\mathrm{d}y = \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\int_{2^jr<|y|<2^{j+1}r} 1/|y|^n|f(y)|\mathrm{d}y\\ &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{|2^jB|}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|f(y)|^p\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}\omega(y)^{\frac{-p'}{p}}\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p'}}\\ &\leq \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{2^jB}\left(\frac{1}{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_{2^{j+1}B}|f(y)|^p\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\frac{1+\lambda p}{p}}\left[\left(\int_{|2^{j+1}B|}\omega(y)^{1-p'}\mathrm{d}y\right)^{p-1}\right]^{\frac{1}{p}}\\ &\leq C\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{\lambda,q}_\omega}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}(\omega(2^{j+1}B))^{\lambda}.\end{aligned}$$

Then, by the fact $\lambda < 0$ and Lemma 2.4, we get

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B \int |T_\theta(f_2)(x)|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \leq C \frac{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda p}}{\omega(B)^{\lambda p}} \|f\|^p_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{\lambda,q}_\omega} \leq C\|f\|^p_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{\lambda,q}_\omega} \qquad (3.2).$$

Combing with the estimates of I_1 and I_2, we finish the proof of **Theorem 1.1**. □

Proof of Theorem 1.2. For a fixed cube $B = B(0, R)$, we decompose $f = f_1 + f_2$ as in the proof of Theorem 1.1. Then we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B |[b, T_\theta]f(x)|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \leq & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B |[b, T_\theta]f_1(x)|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \\ & + \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B |[b, T_\theta]f_2(x)|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x =: I + II.\end{aligned}$$

To estimate I, we may split as

$$\begin{aligned}I \leq & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B |b(x) - b_{B,\omega}|^p |T_\theta(f_1)(x)|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \\ & + \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B |T_\theta(f_1(b - b_{B,\omega}))(x)|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \\ =: & I_1 + I_2.\end{aligned}$$

First, we give the estimate of I_1. Noting that $p < p_2$, by the Hölder's inequality and Lemma 2.2, one has

$$\begin{aligned}I_1 = & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_B |b(x) - b_{B,\omega}|^p \omega(x)^{\frac{p}{p_1}} |T_\theta(f_1)(x)|^p \omega(x)^{1-\frac{p}{p_1}} \mathrm{d}x \\ \leq & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \left(\int_B |b(x) - b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1} \omega(x) \right)^{\frac{p}{p_1}} \left(\int_B |T_\theta(f_1)(x)|^{p_2} \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \right)^{1-\frac{p}{p_1}} \\ \leq & C \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \left(\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda_1 p_1}} \int_B |b(x) - b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1} \omega(x) \right)^{\frac{p}{p_1}} \omega(B)^{\frac{p}{p_1}+\lambda_1 p} \left(\int_{2B} |f_1(x)|^{p_2} \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \right)^{\frac{p}{p_2}} \\ \leq & C\|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}} \|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{p_2,\lambda_2}_\omega} \left(\frac{\omega(2B)^{\frac{1}{p_2}+\lambda_2}}{\omega(B)^{\frac{1}{p_2}+\lambda_2}} \right)^p.\end{aligned}$$

If $\frac{1}{p_2} + \lambda_2 \geq 0$, we can use Lemma 2.1 to get $\frac{\omega(2B)^{\frac{1}{p_2}+\lambda_2}}{\omega(B)^{\frac{1}{p_2}+\lambda_2}} \leq C$. Moreover, we can also use Lemma 2.4 to get the same estimate for the case of $\frac{1}{p_2} + \lambda_2 < 0$. Thus, we have

$$I_1 \leq C\|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_\omega} \|f\|^p_{\dot{\mathrm{B}}^{p_2,\lambda_2}_\omega} \qquad (3.3).$$

For I_2, by the Hölder's inequality, we can obtain

$$\begin{aligned}I_2 \leq & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \int_{2B} |f(x)(b(x) - b_{B,\omega})|^p \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \\ \leq & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \left(\int_{2B} (|b(x) - b_{B,\omega}|^p \omega(x)^{\frac{p}{p_1}})^{\frac{p_1}{p}} \mathrm{d}x \right)^{\frac{p}{p_1}} \left((\int_{2B} |f(x)|^p \omega(x)^{1-\frac{p}{p_1}})^{\frac{p_1}{p_1-p}} \mathrm{d}x \right)^{1-\frac{p}{p_1}} \\ \leq & \frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}} \left(\frac{1}{\omega(2B)^{1+\lambda_1 p_1}} \int_{2B} |b(x) - b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1} \omega(x) \mathrm{d}x \right)^{\frac{p}{p_1}} \omega(2B)^{\frac{p}{p_1}+\lambda_1 p} \\ & \times \left(\frac{1}{\omega(2B)^{1+\lambda_2 p_2}} \int_{2B} |f(x)|^{p_2} \omega(x) \right)^{\frac{p}{p_2}} \omega(2B)^{\frac{p}{p_2}+\lambda_2 p} \\ \leq & C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{p_2,\lambda_2}_\omega} \|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_\omega} \frac{\omega(2B)^{1+\lambda p}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}.\end{aligned}$$

If $1+\lambda p>0$, we can use Lemma 2.1 to get $\frac{\omega(2B)^{1+\lambda p}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\le C$. Moreover, in the case of $1+\lambda p<0$, we can also get the above estimate by using Lemma 2.4 with a similar argument.

Combining the estimates of I_1 and I_2, we have

$$I\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{p_2,\lambda_2}_\omega}\|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_\omega}. \qquad (3.4).$$

Now we are going to give the estimate of II. First, we may give the following estimates.

$$\begin{aligned}|[b,T_\theta]f_2(x)|^p&\le C\left(\int_{\mathbb{R}^n}\frac{|b(x)-b(y)|}{|x-y|^n}|f_2(y)|\right)^p\\&\le C\left(\int_{|y|>2r}\frac{|f(x)|}{|x_0-y|^n}(|b(x)-b_{B,\omega}|+|b_{B,\omega}-b(y)|)\mathrm{d}y\right)^p\\&\le C\left(\int_{|y|>2r}\frac{|f(x)|}{|x_0-y|^n}\mathrm{d}y\right)^p|b(x)-b_{B,\omega}|^p\\&\quad+C\left(\int_{|y|>2r}\frac{|f(x)|}{|x_0-y|^n}\mathrm{d}y|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\mathrm{d}y\right)^p.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we can decompose II as

$$\begin{aligned}II&=\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B|[b,T_\theta]f_2(x)|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\&\le\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B\left(\int_{|y|>2r}\frac{|f(x)|}{|x_0-y|^n}\mathrm{d}y\right)^p|b(x)-b_{B,\omega}|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\&+\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B\left(\int_{|y|>2r}\frac{|f(x)|}{|x_0-y|^n}\mathrm{d}y|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\mathrm{d}y\right)^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\&=II_1+II_2.\end{aligned}$$

For II_1, by the same estimate as in the proof of Theorem 1.1, we can obtain that

$$\int_{|y|>2r}1/|y|^n|f(y)|\mathrm{d}y\le C\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega_2}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2},$$

which implies

$$\begin{aligned}II_1&\le\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega_2}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2 p}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B|b(x)-b_{B,\omega}|^p\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\\&\le\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega_2}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2 p}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\left(\int_B|b(x)-b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1}\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x\right)^{p/p_1}\times\left(\int_B\omega(x)^{\frac{p_1-p}{p}}\frac{p_1}{p_1-p}\mathrm{d}x\right)^{1-p/p_1}\\&\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega_2}}\|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_\omega}\omega(B)^{p/p_1+\lambda_1p+1-p/p_1}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2 p}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\\&=C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega_2}}\|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_\omega}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2 p}}{\omega(B)^{\lambda_2 p}}\\&\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega_2}}\|b\|^p_{\mathrm{C\dot{B}MO}^{p_1,\lambda_1}_\omega},\end{aligned}$$

where in the last inequality we use the fact $\lambda_2<0$ and Lemma 2.4.

Next, we turn to estimate II_2. Noticing that $1/p = 1/p_1 + 1/p_2$, by using the Hölder's inequality, then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{|y|>2r} \frac{|f(y)|}{|y|^n}|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\mathrm{d}y &= \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\int_{2^j r<|y|<2^{j+1}r} \frac{|f(y)|}{|y|^n}|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\mathrm{d}y \\
&\le \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{|2^jB|}\int_{2^{j+1}B\setminus 2^jB}|f(y)||b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\mathrm{d}y \\
&\le \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{|2^jB|}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|f(y)||b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\omega(y)^{\frac{1}{p}}\omega(y)^{\frac{1}{-p}}\right)\mathrm{d}y \\
&\le \sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{|2^jB|}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|f(y)|^{p_2}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p_2}}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p_1}} \\
&\quad\times\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}\omega(y)^{-\frac{p'}{p}}\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p'}}.
\end{aligned}$$

By the fact that $\omega(x)\in A_p$, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}\omega(y)^{-\frac{p'}{p}}\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p'}} &= \left[\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}\omega(y)^{1-p'}\mathrm{d}y\right)^{p-1}\right]^{\frac{1}{p}} \\
&\le C\left(\frac{|2^{j+1}B|}{\omega(2^{j+1}B)}\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}|2^{j+1}B|^{\frac{p-1}{p}} \\
&= C\frac{|2^{j+1}B|}{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{1/p_1+1/p_2}}.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{|y|>2r}\frac{|f(y)|}{|y|^n}|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|\mathrm{d}y &\le C\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{|2^jB|}\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega}}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{1/p_2+\lambda_2} \\
&\quad\times\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p_1}}\times\frac{|2^{j+1}B|}{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{1/p_1+1/p_2}} \\
&\le C\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2-1/p_1}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|b(y)-b_{B,\omega}|^{p_1}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p_1}} \\
&\le C\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2-1/p_1}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|b(y)-b_{2^{j+1}B,\omega}|^{p_1}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p_1}} \\
&\quad+C\|f\|_{\dot{B}^{\lambda_2,q_2}_{\omega}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2-1/p_1}\left(\int_{2^{j+1}B}|b_{B,\omega}-b_{2^{j+1}B,\omega}|^{p_1}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{\frac{1}{p_1}} \\
&=: C(II_{21}+II_{22}).
\end{aligned}$$

8

For II_{21}, by the definition of $C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p,\lambda}(\mathbb{R}^n)$, the fact $\lambda<0$ and Lemma 2.4, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+p\lambda}}\int_B II_{21}^p\cdot\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x &\le \frac{\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}}{\omega(B)^{1+\lambda p}}\int_B\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda p}\mathrm{d}x\\ &\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\frac{\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda p}}{\omega(B)^{\lambda p}}\\ &\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\end{aligned}$$

Next, we will give the estimate of II_2. First, we have the following inequality

$$|b_{B,\omega}-b_{2^{j+1}B,\omega}|\le\sum_{k=0}^{j}|b_{2^{k+1}B,\omega}-b_{2^kB,\omega}|.$$

Then for any $0<k\le j$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}|b_{2^{k+1}B,\omega}-b_{2^kB,\omega}| &\le \frac{1}{\omega(2^kB)}\int_{2^kB}|b_{2^{k+1}B,\omega}-b(y)|\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\\ &\le \frac{1}{\omega(2^kB)}\left(\int_{2^kB}|b_{2^{k+1}B,\omega}-b(y)|^{p_1}\omega(y)\mathrm{d}y\right)^{1/p_1}\left(\int_{2^kB}(\omega(y)^{1-\frac{1}{p_1}})^{\frac{p_1}{p_1-1}}\mathrm{d}y\right)^{1-1/p_1}\\ &\le C\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\omega(2^kB)^{\lambda_1}.\end{aligned}$$

Using the Lemma 2.4 and the fact $\lambda_1<0$, we get

$$\sum_{k=0}^{j}|b_{2^{k+1}B,\omega}-b_{2^kB,\omega}|\le C\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\omega(B)^{\lambda_1}D_1^{(j+1)\lambda_1},$$

where D_1 is a positive constant and belongs to the interval $(1,2)$.

Thus, using Lemma 2.4 again, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\omega(B)^{1+p\lambda}}\int II_{22}^p\cdot\omega(x)\mathrm{d}x &\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\frac{\left(\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}\omega(2^{j+1}B)^{\lambda_2-\frac{1}{p_1}+\frac{1}{p_1}}D_1^{(j+1)\lambda}\omega(B)^{\lambda_1}\right)^p}{\omega(B)^{p\lambda}}\\ &\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}D_1^{(j+1)\lambda_2p}D_1^{(j+1)\lambda_1p}\\ &\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}\sum_{j=1}^{\infty}D_1^{(j+1)\lambda p}\\ &\le C\|f\|^p_{\dot{B}_{\omega}^{\lambda_2,q_2}}\|b\|^p_{C\dot{B}MO_{\omega}^{p_1,\lambda_1}}.\end{aligned}$$

Combining the estimates of I, II, II_1, II_2, II_{21} and II_{22}, we finishe the proof of **Theorem 1.2**. □

Conflict of interest

The authors declare that there is no conflict of interests regarding the publication of this paper.

Authors' contributions

All authors contributed equally to the writing of this paper. All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Acknowledgments

This work is supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China (Grant No. 11561062).

References

[1] D. R. Adams, A note on Riesz potentials, Duke Math. J., 42(1975), 765-788.

[2] D. R. Adams, Morrey spaces, Lecture Notes Appl. Numer. Harmon. Anal., Birkaäuser, 2015.

[3] D. R. Adams, J.Xiao, Morrey spaces in harmonic analysis, Ark. Mat., 50(2012),201-230.

[4] J. Alvarez, J. Lakey, M. Guzmán-Partida, spaces of bounded λ-central mean oscilation, Morrey spaces, and λ-central Carleson measures, Collect Math, 51(2000), 1-47.

[5] A. Beurling, Construction and analysis of some convolution algebras, Ann. Inst. Fourier (Grenoble), 14(1964), 1-32.

[6] Y. Brudnyi, Spaces defined by local approximations, Tr. Mosk. Mat. Obs., 24(1971), 69-132 (inRus-sian); Engl. transl. Trans. Moscow Math. Soc., (24) 1971, 73-139.

[7] A. Calderón, A. Zygmund, On the existence of certain singular integrals, Acta Math., 88(1952), 85-139.

[8] A. Calderón, A. Zygmund, A note on the interpolation of sublinear operators., Amer. J. Math., 78(1956), 282-288.

[9] A. Calderón, A. Zygmund, On singular integrals., Amer. J. Math., 78(1956), 289-309.

[10] A. Calderón, A. Zygmund, A note on singular integrals, Studia Math., 65(1979), 77-87.

[11] S. Campanato, Proprietàdi una famiglia di spazi funzioni, Ann. Sc. Norm. Super. Pisa., 18(1964), 137-160.

[12] Y. Chen, K. Lau, Some new classes of of Hardy spaces, J. Funct. Anal., 84(1989), 255-278.

[13] F. Chiarenza, M. Frasca, Morrey spaces and Hardy-Littlewood maximal function, Rend Mat Appl., 7(1987), 273-279.

[14] R. Coifman, C. Fefferman, Weighted norm inequalities for maximal and singular integrals, Studia Math, 51(1974), 241-250.

[15] L. Grafakos, Classical and modern Frouier analysis, GAT 249, Springer Science+Business Media, LLC, 2008.

[16] S. He, J. Zhou, Vector-valued maximal multilinear Calderon-Zygmund operator with nonsmooth kernel on weighted Morrey space, Journal of Pseudo-differential Operators and Applications, 8(2017), 213-239.

[17] G. Hu, Weighted vector-valued estimates for a non-standard Calderon-Zygmund operator, Nonlinear Analysis-theory Methods and Applications, 165(2017), 143-162.

[18] Y. Komori-Furuya, S. Shirai, Weighted Morrey spaces and a singular integral operator, Math Nachr, 282(2009), 219-231.

[19] J. Lan, Weak type endpoint estimates for multilinear θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators, Acta Mathematicae Applicatae Sinica, English Series, 21(2005), 615-622.

[20] G. Lu, S. Tao, Bilinear θ-Type Calderón-Zygmund Operators on Non-homogeneous Generalized Morrey Spaces, to appear in J. of Computational Analysis and Applications, 26(4)(2019), 650-670.

[21] S. Lu, D. Yang, The Littlewood-Paley function and φ-transform characterization of a new Hardy space HK_2 associated with Herz space, Studia Math, 101(1992), 285-298.

[22] S. Lu, D. Yang, The central BMO space and Littlewood operators, Approx. Theory Appl., 11(1995), 72-94.

[23] C. B. Morrey, On the solutions of quasi-linear elliptic partial differential equations, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc., 43(1938), 126-166.

[24] B. Muckenhoupt, Weighted norm inequalities for the Hardy maximal function, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 156(1972), 207-226.

[25] B. Muckenhoupt, R. Wheeden, Weighted norm inequalities for fractional integral, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc., 192(1974), 261-274.

[26] J. Peetre, On the theory of $L_{p,\lambda}$ spaces, J. Funct. Anal., 4(1969), 71-87.

[27] T. Quek, D. Yang, On weighted weak hardy spaces over $\mathbb{R}^n$, Acta Mathe. Sinica (English Series), 16(2000), 141-160.

[28] H. Rafeiro, N. Samko, Morrey-Campanato spaces: anoverview, in: Karlovich Y, Rodino L, Silbermann B, Spitkovsky I M(Eds.), Operator Theory, Pseudo-Differential Equations and Methematical Physics, Advances and Applications, 228(2013), 293-323.

[29] C. Ri, Z. Zhang, Boundedness of θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators on Hardy spaces with non-doubling measures, Journal of inequalities and Applications, 323(2015), 1-10.

[30] C. Ri, Z. Zhang, Boundedness of θ-type Calderón-Zygmund operators on non-homogeneous metric measure spaces, Front. Math. China, 11(2016), 141-153.

[31] Y. Sawano, H. Gunawan, V. Guliyev, H.Tanaka, Morrey spaces and related function spaces, Journal of Function spaces, Volume 2014, Article ID 867192.

[32] H. Triebel, Local function spaces, Heat and Navier – Stokes Equations, EMS Tracts Math. 20, 2013.

[33] H. Wang, Boundedness of θ-type Calderón-zygmund operators and commutators in the genralized weighted Morrey spaces, Journal of Function spaces, Volume 2016, Article ID 1309348, 18 pages.

[34] R. Xie, L. Shu, On multilinear commutators of θ-type Calderón-zygmund operators, Analysis in Theory and Applications, 24(2008), 260-270.

[35] R. Xie, L. Shu, L^p boundedness of for the maximal multilinear singular integral operator of θ-type Calderón-zygmund kernel, J. Sys. Sci. and Math. Scis., 29(2009), 519-526.

[36] K. Yabuta, Generalizations of Calderón-Zygmund operators, Studia Mathematica, 82(1985), 17-31.

[37] X. Yu, H. Zhang, G. Zhao, Weighted boundedness of some integrals operators on weighted λ-central Morrey space, Appl. Math. J. Chinese Univ., 31(2016), 331-342.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Stability of latent CHIKV infection model with CHIKV-to-monocyte and infected-to-monocyte transmissions

A. M. Elaiw[a], S. E. Almalki[a,b] and A. Hobiny[a]

[a]Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, King Abdulaziz University, P.O. Box 80203, Jeddah 21589, Saudi Arabia.

[b]Jeddah College of Technology, Technical and Vocational Training Corporation

Emails: a_m_elaiw@yahoo.com (A. Elaiw),
samialmalki0@gmail.com (S. E. Almalki)

Abstract

We investigate the global stability of within-host Chikungunya virus (CHIKV) infection model with CHIKV-to-monocyte and infected-to-monocyte transmissions. We take into account the antibody immune response. The model incorporates both latently infected monocytes which do not generate the CHIKV, and actively infected monocytes. The global stability analysis of the equilibria are established using Lyapunov method. The theoretical results are confirmed by numerical simulations. The effect of latently infection has been discussed.

1 Introduction

Chikungunya virus (CHIKV) is an alphavirus causes chikungunya fever. CHIKV is a mosquito-transmitted and is transmitted by the Aedes albopictus and Aedes agypti mosquito. Mathematical models have been constructed to describe the CHIKV transmission in mosquito and human populations [1]-[7]). Modeling and analysis of within-host CHIKV dynamics have first studied in [8]. The model presented in [8] has negelected the latently infected monocytes. Therefore, Elaiw et al. [9] have modified the model by considering five compartments, uninfected monocytes (s), latently infected monocytes (w), actively infected monocytes (y), CHIKV pathogen (p) and antibodies (x). The model is given as:

$$\dot{s} = \beta - \delta s - \frac{\eta sp}{1+\theta p}, \tag{1}$$

$$\dot{w} = (1-n)\frac{\eta sp}{1+\theta p} - (b+d)w, \tag{2}$$

$$\dot{y} = n\frac{\eta sp}{1+\theta p} + dw - \epsilon y, \tag{3}$$

$$\dot{p} = \pi y - cp - rxp, \tag{4}$$

$$\dot{x} = \lambda + \rho xp - mx, \tag{5}$$

where, β and δ represent the generation and death rate constants of the uninfected monocytes, respectively. The uninfected monocytes become infected at rate ηsp, where η is the infection rate constant. θ is the saturation constant. Constants b, ϵ, c and m represent, respectively, the death rate of the latently infected monocytes, actively infected monocytes, CHIKV and antibodies. We assume that a fraction $(1-n)$ of the CHIKV-contacted monocytes becomes latently infected monocytes and the remaining n becomes actively infected monocytes, where $0 < n < 1$. The latently infected monocytes are transmitted to actively infected monocytes at rate bw. Constant π is the generation rate of the CHIKV from actively infected monocytes. Antibodies attack the CHIKV at rate rxp. Once antigen is encountered, the antibodies expand at a constant rate λ and proliferate at rate ρxp. Latently infected cells have been considered in viral infection models in several papers (see e.g. [11]-[15]).

Model (1)-(5) assumes that the uninfected monocyte becomes infected by contacting with CHIKV(CHIKV-to-monocyte transmission). Kristin and Mork [16] reported that the CHIKV can also spread by infected-to-monocyte transmission. Cellular and viral infections have been considered in several viral infection models [17]-[20]. However, the dynamics of CHIKV with CHIKV-to-monocyte and infected-to-monocyte transmissions did not studied before.

The aim of the present paper is to construct and analyze a CHIKV dynamics model with both CHIKV-to-monocyte and infected-to-monocyte transmissions. The model incorporates two types of infected monocytes, latently infected monocytes which do not generate the CHIKV, and actively infected monocytes. We use Lyapunov method to prove the global stability of the proposed model .

2 Presentation of the model and mathematical problem

We propose a CHIKV model as:

$$\dot{s} = \beta - \delta s - \eta_1 sp - \eta_2 sy, \tag{6}$$

$$\dot{w} = (1-n)(\eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy) - (b+d)w, \tag{7}$$

$$\dot{y} = n(\eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy) + dw - \epsilon y, \tag{8}$$

$$\dot{p} = \pi y - cp - rxp, \tag{9}$$

$$\dot{x} = \lambda + \rho xp - mx, \tag{10}$$

Here, the uninfected monocytes become infected at rate $(\eta_1 y + \eta_2 p)s$, where η_1 and η_2 are constants.

2.1 Basic properties

Lemma 1 *There exist $M_1, M_2, M_3 > 0$, such that the following compact set is positively invariant for system (6)-(10)*

$$\Gamma_2 = \{(s,w,y,p,x) \in \mathbb{R}^5_{\geq 0} : 0 \leq s,w,y \leq M_1^L, 0 \leq p \leq M_2^L, 0 \leq x \leq M_3^L\}$$

Proof. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\dot{s}\mid_{s=0} = \beta > 0,\\
&\dot{w}\mid_{w=0} = (1-n)(\eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy) \geq 0, \quad \text{for all} \quad s,p \geq 0,\\
&\dot{y}\mid_{y=0} = n(\eta_1 sp) + dw \geq 0, \quad \text{for all} \quad s,p,w \geq 0,\\
&\dot{p}\mid_{p=0} = \pi y \geq 0, \quad \text{for all} \quad y \geq 0,\\
&\dot{x}\mid_{x=0} = \lambda > 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Then, $\mathbb{R}^5_{\geq 0}$ is positively invariant for system (6)-(10). We let

$$\begin{aligned}
H_1(t) &= s(t) + w(t) + y(t),\\
H_2(t) &= p(t) + \frac{r}{\rho} x(t),
\end{aligned}$$

then

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{H}_1(t) &= \beta - \delta s(t) - bw(t) - \epsilon y(t)\\
&\leq \beta - \sigma_1^L (s(t) + w(t) + y(t))\\
&= \beta - \sigma_1^L H_1(t),
\end{aligned}$$

where, $\sigma_1^L = min\{\delta, b, \epsilon\}$. Hence $H_1(t) \leq M_1^L$, if $H_1(0) \leq M_1^L$, where $M_1^L = \frac{\beta}{\sigma_1^L}$. Hence , $0 \leq s(t), w(t), y(t) \leq M_1^L$ if $0 \leq s(0) + w(0) + y(0) \leq M_1^L$. Moreover, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\dot{H}_2(t) &= \pi y(t) - cp(t) + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \frac{mr}{\rho}x(t) \\
&\leq \pi M_1^L + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \sigma_2\left(p(t) + \frac{r}{\rho}x(t)\right) \\
&= \pi M_1^L + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda - \sigma_2 H_2(t),
\end{aligned}$$

where, σ_2 is defined before. Hence $H_2(t) \leq M_2^L$, if $H_2(0) \leq M_2^L$, where $M_2^L = \frac{\pi M_1^L + \frac{r}{\rho}\lambda}{\sigma_2}$. Thus, $0 \leq p(t) \leq M_2^L$ and $x(t) \leq M_3^L$ if $0 \leq p(0) + \frac{r}{\rho}x(0) \leq M_2^L$, where $M_3^L = \frac{\rho M_2^L}{r}$. ■

2.2 Equilibria

We define the basic reproduction number as:

$$\mathcal{R}_0^L = \frac{\beta(d + bn)(\eta_1\pi m + \eta_2 cm + \eta_2 r\lambda)}{\epsilon\delta(cm + r\lambda)(b + d)}.$$

Lemma 2 *(i) if $\mathcal{R}_0^L \leq 1$, then there exists only one equilibrium E_0, (ii) if $\mathcal{R}_0^L > 1$, then there exist two equilibria E_0 and E_1.*

Proof. The equilibria of system (6)-(10) satisfying

$$\beta - \delta s - \eta_1 sp - \eta_2 sy = 0 \tag{11}$$

$$(1 - n)(\eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy) - (b + d)w = 0, \tag{12}$$

$$n(\eta_1 sp + \eta_2 sy) + dw - \epsilon y = 0, \tag{13}$$

$$\pi y - cp - rxp = 0, \tag{14}$$

$$\lambda + \rho xp - mx = 0. \tag{15}$$

Solving Eqs. (11)-(15) there exists a CHIKV-free equilibrium $E_0 = (s_0, 0, 0, 0, x_0)$, where $s_0 = \frac{\beta}{\delta}$ and $x_0 = \frac{\lambda}{m}$. From Eqs. (11)-(15) we have

$$s = \frac{\pi\beta}{\pi(\delta + p\eta_1) + p(c + rx)\eta_2}, \tag{16}$$

$$w = \frac{(1 - n)p\beta(\pi\eta_1 + (c + rx)\eta_2)}{(b + d)(\pi(\delta + p\eta_1) + p(c + rx)\eta_2)}, \tag{17}$$

$$y = \frac{p(c + rx)}{\pi}, \tag{18}$$

$$x = \frac{\lambda}{m - \rho p}. \tag{19}$$

Substituting from Eqs. (16)-(19) into (13) we get

$$D_1 p^3 + D_2 p^2 + D_3 p + D_4 = 0,$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
D_1 &= -c(b+d)\epsilon(\pi\eta_1 + c\eta_2)\rho^2,\\
D_2 &= 2bcm\pi\epsilon\eta_1\rho + 2cdm\pi\epsilon\eta_1\rho + 2bc^2m\epsilon\eta_2\rho + 2c^2dm\epsilon\eta_2\rho + b\pi r\epsilon\eta_1\lambda\rho + d\pi r\epsilon\eta_1\lambda\rho + 2bcr\epsilon\eta_2\lambda\rho\\
&\quad + 2cdr\epsilon\eta_2\lambda\rho - bc\pi\delta\epsilon\rho^2 - cd\pi\delta\epsilon\rho^2 + d\pi^2\beta\eta_1\rho^2 + bn\pi^2\beta\eta_1\rho^2 + cd\pi\beta\eta_2\rho^2 + bcn\pi\beta\eta_2\rho^2,\\
D_3 &= -bcm^2\pi\epsilon\eta_1 - cdm^2\pi\epsilon\eta_1 - bc^2m^2\epsilon\eta_2 - c^2dm^2\epsilon\eta_2 - bm\pi r\epsilon\eta_1\lambda - dm\pi r\epsilon\eta_1\lambda - 2bcmr\epsilon\eta_2\lambda\\
&\quad - 2cdmr\epsilon\eta_2\lambda - br^2\epsilon\eta_2\lambda^2 - dr^2\epsilon\eta_2\lambda^2 + 2bcm\pi\delta\epsilon\rho + 2cdm\pi\delta\epsilon\rho - 2dm\pi^2\beta\eta_1\rho - 2bmn\pi^2\beta\eta_1\rho\\
&\quad - 2cdm\pi\beta\eta_2\rho - 2bcmn\pi\beta\eta_2\rho + b\pi r\delta\epsilon\lambda\rho + d\pi r\delta\epsilon\lambda\rho - d\pi r\beta\eta_2\lambda\rho - bn\pi r\beta\eta_2\lambda\rho,\\
D_4 &= -bcm^2\pi\delta\epsilon - cdm^2\pi\delta\epsilon + dm^2\pi^2\beta\eta_1 + bm^2n\pi^2\beta\eta_1 + cdm^2\pi\beta\eta_2 + bcm^2n\pi\beta\eta_2 - bm\pi r\delta\epsilon\lambda\\
&\quad - dm\pi r\delta\epsilon\lambda + dm\pi r\beta\eta_2\lambda + bmn\pi r\beta\eta_2\lambda.
\end{aligned}$$

Let

$$X_2(p) = D_1p^3 + D_2p^2 + D_3p + D_4 = 0.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
X_2(0) &= D_4,\\
X_2\left(\frac{m}{\rho}\right) &= -\frac{(b+d)mr^2\epsilon\eta_2\lambda^2}{\rho} < 0.
\end{aligned}$$

D_4 can be written as:

$$D_4 = m\pi(b\delta\epsilon + d\delta\epsilon)(cm + r\lambda)\left(\mathcal{R}_0^L - 1\right).$$

Then $D_4 > 0$ if $\mathcal{R}_0^L > 1$. Then there exists $p_1 \in (0, \frac{m}{\rho})$ such that $X_2(p_1) = 0$.If $\mathcal{R}_0^L > 1$, then system (6)-(10) has infected equilibrium $E_1 = (s_1, y_1, p_1, x_1)$, where

$$\begin{aligned}
s_1 &= \frac{\pi\beta}{\pi(\delta + p_1\eta_1) + p_1(c + rx_1)\eta_2} > 0, & w_1 &= \frac{(1-n)p_1\beta(\pi\eta_1 + (c + rx_1)\eta_2)}{(b+d)(\pi(\delta + p_1\eta_1) + p_1(c + rx_1)\eta_2)} > 0,\\
y_1 &= \frac{p_1(c(m - \rho p_1) + r\lambda)}{\pi(m - \rho p_1)} > 0, & x_1 &= \frac{\lambda}{m - \rho p_1} > 0.
\end{aligned}$$

■

3 Global properties

Define a function $G(z) = z - 1 - \ln z$.

Theorem 1 *If $\mathcal{R}_0^L \le 1$, then E_0 is globally asymptotically stable in Γ_2.*

Proof. Let

$$V_0 = s_0 G\left(\frac{s}{s_0}\right) + \frac{d}{bn + d}w + \frac{b+d}{bn+d}y + \frac{\eta_1 s_0}{c + rx_0}p + \frac{r\eta_1 s_0}{\rho(c + rx_0)}x_0 G\left(\frac{x}{x_0}\right).$$

Calculating $\frac{dV_0}{dt}$ along system (6)-(10) we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dV_0}{dt} &= \left(1-\frac{s_0}{s}\right)\left(\beta-\delta s-\eta_1 sp-\eta_2 sy\right)+\frac{d}{bn+d}\Big[(1-n)(\eta_1 sp+\eta_2 sy)-(b+d)w\Big]\\
&+\frac{b+d}{bn+d}\Big[n(\eta_1 sp+\eta_2 sy)+dw-\epsilon y\Big]+\frac{\eta_1 s_0}{c+rx_0}\left(\pi y-cp-rxp\right)\\
&+\frac{r\eta_1 s_0}{\rho(c+rx_0)}\left(1-\frac{x_0}{x}\right)\left(\lambda+\rho xp-mx\right)\\
&=\left(1-\frac{s_0}{s}\right)\left(\beta-\delta s\right)+\eta_2 s_0 y-\frac{b+d}{bn+d}\epsilon y+\frac{\eta_1 s_0}{c+rx_0}\pi y+\frac{r\eta_1 s_0}{\rho(c+rx_0)}\left(1-\frac{x_0}{x}\right)\left(\lambda-mx\right)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dV_0}{dt} &= -\delta\frac{(s-s_0)^2}{s}+\frac{\epsilon(b+d)}{bn+d}\left(\frac{\eta_2 s_0(bn+d)}{\epsilon(b+d)}+\frac{\eta_1 s_0\pi(bn+d)}{\epsilon(b+d)(c+rx_0)}-1\right)y-\frac{r\eta_1 s_0 m}{\rho(c+rx_0)}\frac{(x-x_0)^2}{x}\\
&=-\delta\frac{(s-s_0)^2}{s}-\frac{r\eta_1 s_0 m}{\rho(c+rx_0)}\frac{(x-x_0)^2}{x}+\frac{\epsilon(b+d)}{bn+d}(\mathcal{R}_0-1)y. \qquad (20)
\end{aligned}$$

Since $\mathcal{R}_0 \le 1$, then $\frac{dV_0}{dt} \le 0$ for all $s, w, y, p, x > 0$. Let $D_0 = \{(s, w, y, p, x) : \frac{dV_0}{dt} = 0\}$. One can show that $D_0 = \{E_0\}$. LaSalle's invariance principle implies that E_0 is globally asymptotically stable when $\mathcal{R}_0 \le 1$. ■

Theorem 2 *If $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$, then E_1 is globally asymptotically stable in $\overset{\circ}{\Gamma}_2$.*

Proof. Let

$$\begin{aligned}
V_1(s,w,y,p,x) &= s_1 G\left(\frac{s}{s_1}\right)+\frac{d}{bn+d}w_1 G\left(\frac{w}{w_1}\right)+\frac{b+d}{bn+\alpha}y_1 G\left(\frac{y}{y_1}\right)\\
&+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}p_1 G\left(\frac{p}{p_1}\right)+\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\rho\pi y_1}x_1 G\left(\frac{x}{x_1}\right).
\end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dV_1}{dt} &= \left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\beta-\delta s-\eta_1 sp-\eta_2 sy\right)+\frac{d}{bn+d}\left(1-\frac{w_1}{w}\right)\left((1-n)(\eta_1 sp+\eta_2 sy)-(b+d)w\right)\\
&+\frac{b+d}{bn+d}\left(1-\frac{y_1}{y}\right)\left(n(\eta_1 sp+\eta_2 sy)+dw-\epsilon y\right)+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}\left(1-\frac{p_1}{p}\right)\left(\pi y-cp-rxp\right)\\
&+\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\rho\pi y_1}\left(1-\frac{x_1}{x}\right)\left(\lambda+\rho xp-mx\right)\\
&=\left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\beta-\delta s\right)+\eta_1 s_1 p+\eta_2 s_1 y-\frac{\eta_1 d(1-n)}{bn+d}\frac{spw_1}{w}-\frac{\eta_2 d(1-n)}{bn+d}\frac{syw_1}{w}+\frac{d(b+d)}{bn+d}w_1\\
&-\frac{n\eta_1(b+d)}{bn+d}\frac{spy_1}{y}-\frac{n\eta_2(b+d)}{bn+d}\frac{syy_1}{y}-\frac{d(b+d)}{bn+d}\frac{wy_1}{y}-\frac{b+d}{bn+d}\epsilon y+\frac{b+d}{bn+d}\epsilon y_1+\eta_1 s_1 p_1\frac{y}{y_1}-\eta_1 s_1 p_1\frac{yp_1}{y_1 p}\\
&-\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}cp+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}cp_1+\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}rxp_1-\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1}x_1 p+\frac{r\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\rho\pi y_1}\left(1-\frac{x_1}{x}\right)\left(\lambda-mx\right).
\end{aligned}$$

Applying the conditions for E_1

$$\begin{aligned}
&\beta=\delta s_1+\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1, \quad (b+d)w_1=(1-n)(\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1),\\
&\frac{b+d}{bn+d}\epsilon y_1=\eta_1 s_1 p_1+\eta_2 s_1 y_1, \quad cp_1=\pi y_1-rx_1 p_1, \quad \lambda=mx_1-\rho x_1 p_1
\end{aligned}$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dV_1}{dt} &= -\delta\frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s} + \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\eta_1 s_1 p_1 + \eta_2 s_1 y_1\right) \\
&+ \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\left(1-\frac{s_1}{s}\right)\left(\eta_1 s_1 p_1 + \eta_2 s_1 y_1\right) + 3\frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 \\
&- \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 \frac{spw_1}{s_1 p_1 w} - \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 \frac{wy_1}{w_1 y} - \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 \frac{yp_1}{y_1 p} \\
&+ 2\frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_2 s_1 y_1 - \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_2 s_1 y_1 \frac{syw_1}{s_1 y_1 w} - \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_2 s_1 y_1 \frac{wy_1}{w_1 y} \\
&+ 2\frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 - \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 \frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y} - \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1 \frac{yp_1}{y_1 p} \\
&+ \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_2 s_1 y_1 - \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_2 s_1 y_1 \frac{s}{s_1} - 2\frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1} r x_1 p_1 \\
&+ \frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1} r x p_1 + \frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\pi y_1} r x_1 p_1 \frac{x_1}{x} - \frac{m r \eta_1 s_1 p_1}{\rho \pi y_1}\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x}.
\end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

Eq. (21) can be simplified as:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dV_1}{dt} &= -\delta\frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s} - \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_2 y_1 \frac{(s-s_1)^2}{s} - \frac{\eta_1 s_1 p_1 r\lambda}{\pi y_1 \rho x_1}\frac{(x-x_1)^2}{x} \\
&+ \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1\left[4 - \frac{s_1}{s} - \frac{spw_1}{s_1 p_1 w} - \frac{wy_1}{w_1 y} - \frac{yp_1}{y_1 p}\right] \\
&+ \frac{n(b+d)}{bn+d}\eta_1 s_1 p_1\left[3 - \frac{s_1}{s} - \frac{spy_1}{s_1 p_1 y} - \frac{yp_1}{y_1 p}\right] \\
&+ \frac{d(1-n)}{bn+d}\eta_2 s_1 y_1\left[3 - \frac{s_1}{s} - \frac{syw_1}{s_1 y_1 w} - \frac{y_1 w}{y w_1}\right].
\end{aligned} \tag{22}$$

Using the arithmetic mean-geometric mean inequality we find that the last three terms of Eq. (22) are less that or equal zero. Thus, $\frac{dV_1}{dt} \leq 0$ for all $s, w, y, p, x > 0$ and $\frac{dU_1}{dt} = 0$ at E_1. The global stability of E_1 is induced from LaSalle's invariance principle. ■

4 Numerical Simulations

We perform the numerical simulation of model (6)-(10) using Matlab.

4.1 Effect of the parameters η_1 and η_2

We simulate the system with three different initial values as:

IV1: $s(0) = 18.0, w(0) = 0.2, y(0) = 0.2, p(0) = 1.0$, and $x(0) = 1$,
IV2: $s(0) = 16.0, w(0) = 0.6, y(0) = 1.0, p(0) = 2.0$, and $x(0) = 2.5$,
IV3: $s(0) = 12.0, w(0) = 1.0, y(0) = 1.5, p(0) = 2.5$, and $x(0) = 3.0$.

We fix the value of $n = 0.7$ and the other parameters are given in Table 1. Then we consider two sets of the values of η_1 and η_2 as follows:

Table 1: The parameters's values.

Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value
β	2	δ	0.1
η_1, η_2	varied	ϵ	0.5
π	4	c	0.1
r	0.4	λ	1.4
m	1	ρ	0.2
n	varied	d	0.1
b	0.3		

Set (I): We choose $\eta_1 = \eta_2 = 0.001$. We compute $\mathcal{R}_0 = 0.2189 < 1$. From Figure 1 we can see that, the concentrations of the uninfected monocytes and B cells return to their values $s_0 = \frac{\beta}{\delta} = 20$ and $x_0 = \frac{\lambda}{m} = 1.4$, respectively. On the other hand, the concentrations of latently infected monocytes, actively infected monocytes and CHIKV particles are declining and reaching zero for all the three initial values IV1-IV3. This demonstrates that, there exists one equilibrium E_0 which is globally asymptotically stable. This result agrees the result of Theorem 1.

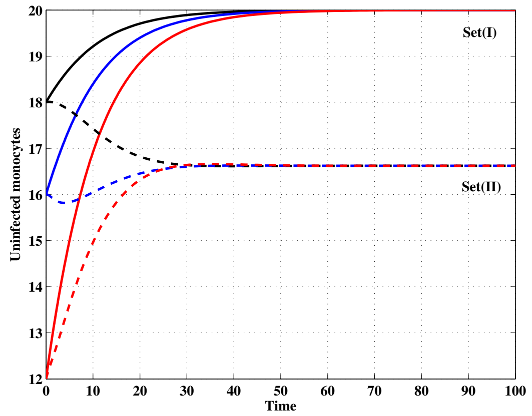
Set (II): We take $\eta_1 = \eta_2 = 0.008$. Then, we calculate $\mathcal{R}_0 = 1.7510 > 1$, $E_0(20.0, 0, 0, 0, 1.4)$ and $E_1 = (16.62, 0.253, 0.523, 2.016, 2.346)$. From Figure 1 we see that when $\mathcal{R}_0 > 1$, the solutions of the system starting at IV1-IV3 will tend to E_1. This agrees the results of Theorem 2.

4.2 Effect of the parameter n

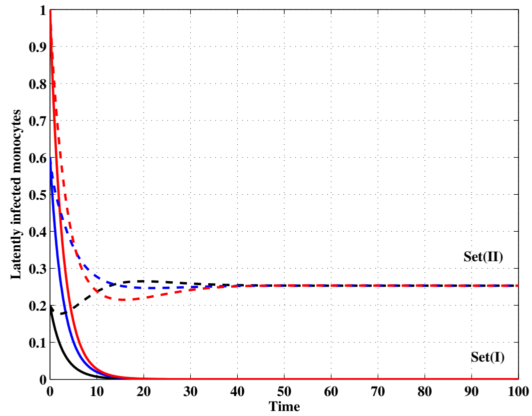
In this case, we use the values of the parameters given in Table 1 and we choose $\eta_1 = \eta_2 = 0.008$ and n is selected. We consider

IV4: $s(0) = 17, w(0) = 0.1, y(0) = 0.4, p(0) = 1.0$, and $x(0) = 2.0$.

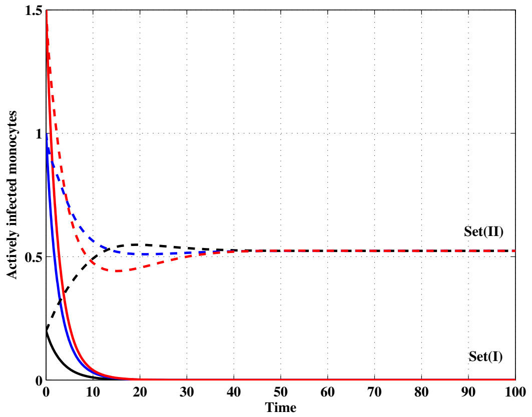
In Table 2, we calclaute the value $\mathcal{R}_0$ and the equilibria for different values of n. From the table we observe the value $\mathcal{R}_0$ is increased as n increased which means the solution of system will converge to E_0 if the values of n are small and they will converge to E_1 if values of n are large. Figure 2 supports the results of Theorem 2



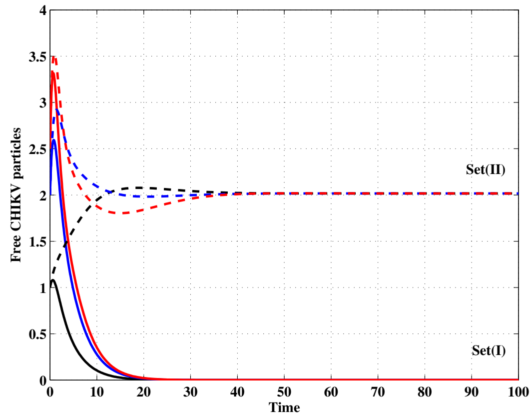
(a) Uninfected monocytes.



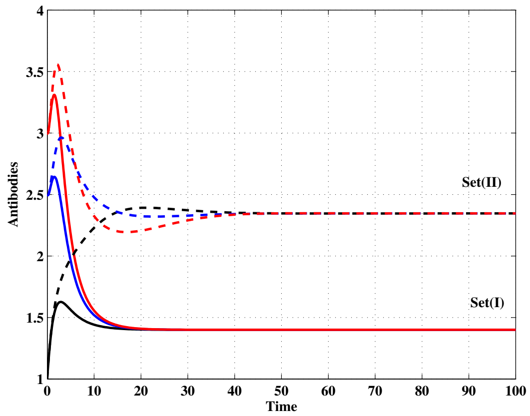
(b) Latently infected monocytes.



(c) Actively infected monocytes.

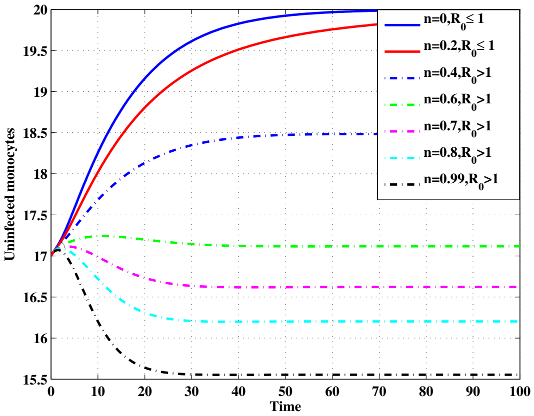


(d) Free CHIKV particles.

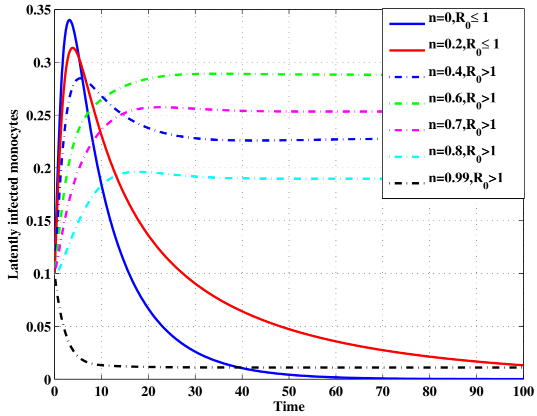


(e) Antibodies.

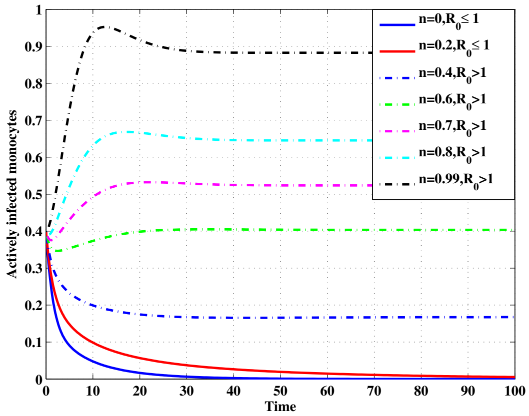
Figure 1: Numerical solutions of system (6)-(10) with selected values of η_1 and η_2.



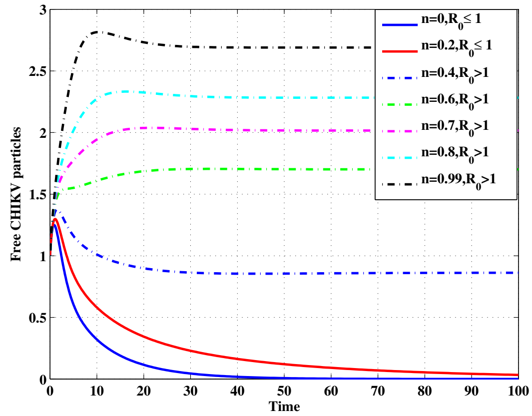
(a) Uninfected monocytes.



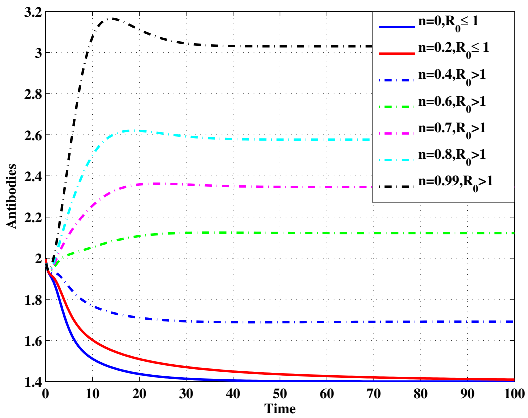
(b) Latently infected monocytes.



(c) Actively infected monocytes.



(d) Free CHIKV particles.



(e) Antibodies.

Figure 2: Numerical solutions of system (6)-(10) with selected values of n.

Table 2: The values of equilibria and $\mathcal{R}_0$ for system (6)-(10) with different values of n.

n	Steady states	$\mathcal{R}_0$
0.000001	$E_0 = (20, 0, 0, 0, 1.4)$	0.5648
0.2	$E_0 = (20, 0, 0, 0, 1.4)$	0.9038
0.256795	$E_0 = (20, 0, 0, 0, 1.4)$	1
0.4	$E_1 = (18.5, 0.2283, 0.1674, 0.8621, 1.6917)$	1.2427
0.6	$E_1 = (17.1178, 0.2882, 0.4035, 1.7011, 2.122)$	1.5816
0.7	$E_1 = (16.6222, 0.2533, 0.5236, 2.0166, 2.3463)$	1.7510
0.8	$E_1 = (16.2037, 0.1898, 0.6454, 2.2832, 2.5766)$	1.9205
0.99	$E_1 = (15.5546, 0.0111, 0.8824, 2.69, 3.0303)$	2.2424

References

[1] Y. Dumont, F. Chiroleu, *Vector control for the chikungunya disease*, Mathematical Biosciences and Engineering, **7** (2010), 313-345.

[2] Y. Dumont, J. M. Tchuenche, *Mathematical studies on the sterile insect technique for the chikungunya disease and aedes albopictus*, Journal of Mathematical Biology **65**(5) (2012), 809-854.

[3] Y. Dumont, F. Chiroleu, C. Domerg, *On a temporal model for the chikungunya disease: modeling, theory and numerics*, Mathematical Biosciences, **213**, (2008), 80-91.

[4] D. Moulay, M. Aziz-Alaoui, M.Cadivel, *The chikungunya disease: modeling, vector and transmission global dynamics,* Mathematical Biosciences, **229** (2011) 50-63.

[5] D. Moulay, M. Aziz-Alaoui, H. D. Kwon, *Optimal control of chikungunya disease: larvae reduction, treatment and prevention,* Mathematical Biosciences and Engineering, **9** (2012), 369-392.

[6] C. A. Manore, K. S. Hickmann, S. Xu, H. J. Wearing, J. M. Hyman, *Comparing dengue and chikungunya emergence and endemic transmission in A. aegypti and A. albopictus*, Journal of Theoretical Biology **356** (2014), 174-191.

[7] X. Liu, and P. Stechlinski, Application of control strategies to a seasonal model of chikungunya disease, Applied Mathematical Modelling, **39** (2015), 3194-3220.

[8] Y. Wang, X. Liu, *Stability and Hopf bifurcation of a within-host chikungunya virus infection model with two delays,* Mathematics and Computers in Simulation, **138** (2017), 31-48.

[9] A. M. Elaiw, T. O. Alade and S. M. Alsulami, *Stability of a within-host Chikungunya virus dynamics model with latency*, Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications, **26**(5) 2019, 777-790.

[10] A. M. Elaiw, T. O. Alade and S. M. Alsulami, *Analysis of latent CHIKV dynamics model with time delays*, Journal of Computational Analysis and Applications, **27**(1) 2019, 19-36.

[11] D.S. Callaway, and A.S. Perelson, *HIV-1 infection and low steady state viral loads*, Bull. Math. Biol., **64** (2002), 29-64.

[12] B. Buonomo, and C. Varglobally asymptotically stable-De-Le, *Global stability for an HIV-1 infection model including an eclipse stage of infected cells*, Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications, **385** (2012), 709-720.

[13] A. M. Elaiw and S.A. Azoz, *Global properties of a class of HIV infection models with Beddington-DeAngelis functional response,* Mathematical Methods in the Applied Sciences, **36** (2013), 383-394.

[14] A. M. Elaiw and N. H. AlShamrani, *Global stability of humoral immunity virus dynamics models with nonlinear infection rate and removal*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **26**, (2015), 161-190.

[15] A. M. Elaiw, *Global properties of a class of HIV models*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **11** (2010), 2253-2263.

[16] Kristin M. Long and Mark T. Heise, *Protective and Pathogenic Responses to Chikungunya Virus Infection*, Curr Trop Med Rep. **2**(1) (2015), 13-21.

[17] J. Wang, J. Lang, X. Zou, *Analysis of an age structured HIV infection model with virus-to-cell infection and cell-to-cell transmission*, Nonlinear Analysis: Real World Applications, **34** (2017), 75-96.

[18] X. Lai and X. Zou , *Modeling cell-to-cell spread of HIV-1 with logistic target cell growth*, Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications, **426** (2015), 563–584.

[19] X. Lai, X. Zou, *Modelling HIV-1 virus dynamics with both virus-to-cell infection and cell-to-cell transmission*, SIAM Journal of Applied Mathematics, **74** (2014), 898–917.

[20] Y. Yang, L. Zou and S. Ruanc, *Global dynamics of a delayed within-host viral infection model with both virus-to-cell and cell-to-cell transmissions*, Mathematical Biosciences, **270** (2015), 183-191.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

OPTIMAL BOUNDS FOR TOADER MEAN IN TERMS OF GEOMETRIC AND CONTRAHARMONIC MEANS*

WEI-MAO QIAN[1,2], WEN ZHANG[3], AND YU-MING CHU[4,**]

ABSTRACT. In this paper, we present the best possible parameters α_1, α_2, α_3 and β_1, β_2, β_3 such that the double inequalities

$$C^{\alpha_1}(a,b)G^{1-\alpha_1}(a,b) < T(a,b) < C^{\beta_1}(a,b)G^{1-\beta_1}(a,b),$$

$$\alpha_2 C(a,b) + (1-\alpha_2)G(a,b) < T(a,b) < \beta_2 C(a,b) + (1-\beta_2)G(a,b),$$

$$\frac{\alpha_3}{G(a,b)} + \frac{1-\alpha_3}{C(a,b)} < \frac{1}{T(a,b)} < \frac{\beta_3}{G(a,b)} + \frac{1-\beta_3}{C(a,b)}$$

hold for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$, where $G(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}$, $C(a,b) = \left(a^2 + b^2\right)/(a+b)$ and $T(a,b) = 2\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{a^2\cos^2(t) + b^2\sin^2(t)}dt/\pi$ are the geometric, contraharmonic and Toader means of a and b, respectively.

1. Introduction

The Toader mean $T(a,b)$ [1-5] of two positive real numbers a and b is defined by

$$T(a,b) = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sqrt{a^2\cos^2(t) + b^2\sin^2(t)}dt \tag{1.1}$$

$$= \begin{cases} \frac{2a}{\pi}\mathcal{E}\left(\sqrt{1-(b/a)^2}\right), & a > b, \\ \frac{2b}{\pi}\mathcal{E}\left(\sqrt{1-(a/b)^2}\right), & a < b, \\ a, \ a = b, \end{cases}$$

where $\mathcal{E}(r) = \int_0^{\pi/2}\left(1 - r^2\sin^2(t)\right)^{1/2}dt$ $(r \in [0,1])$ is the complete elliptic integral of the second kind [6-30]. The Toader mean $T(a,b)$ is well known in mathematical literature for many years, it satisfies

$$T(a,b) = R_E\left(a^2, b^2\right),$$

where

$$R_E(a,b) = \frac{1}{\pi}\int_0^{\infty} \frac{[a(t+b) + b(t+a)]t}{(t+a)^{3/2}(t+b)^{3/2}}dt$$

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary: 26E60; Secondary: 33E05.

Key words and phrases. Toader mean, geometric mean, contraharmonic mean, complete elliptic integral.

*The research was supported by the Natural Science Foundation of China (Grant Nos. 61673169, 11301127, 11701176, 11626101, 11601485), the Science and Technology Research Program of Zhejiang Educational Committee (Grant No. Y201635325) and the Natural Science Foundation of Huzhou City (Grant No. 2018YZ07).

**Corresponding author: Yu-Ming Chu, Email: chuyuming2005@126.com.

stands for the symmetric complete elliptic integral of the second kind (See [31-33]), therefore it cannot be expressed in terms of the elementary transcendental functions.

Recently, the Toader mean $T(a,b)$ has been the subject of intensive research. In particular, many remarkable inequalities for the Toader mean can be found in the literature [34-41].

Let $G(a,b)=\sqrt{ab}$ [42-48], $A(a,b)=(a+b)/2$ [49-57], $C(a,b)=(a^2+b^2)/(a+b)$ [58-61], and $M_p(a,b)=[(a^p+b^p)/2]^{1/p}$ [62-73] and $M_0(a,b)=\sqrt{ab}$ be respectively the geometric, arithmetic, contraharmonic and pth power means of a and b. Then it is well known that power mean $M_p(a,b)$ is strictly increasing with respect to $p\in\mathbb{R}$ for all fixed $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$, and the inequalities

$$G(a,b)=M_0(a,b)<A(a,b)=M_1(a,b)<C(a,b)=M_2(a,b) \tag{1.2}$$

hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$.

Vuorinen [74] conjectured that

$$T(a,b)>M_{3/2}(a,b) \tag{1.3}$$

for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$. This conjecture was proved by Qiu and Shen [75], and Barnard et al. [76].

Alzer and Qiu [77] proved that the inequality

$$T(a,b)<T_\lambda(a,b) \tag{1.4}$$

holds for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$ if and only if $\lambda\geq\log 2/(\log\pi-\log 2)=1.5349\cdots$.

From (1.2)-(1.4) we clearly see that

$$G(a,b)<T(a,b)<C(a,b) \tag{1.5}$$

for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$.

Motivated by (1.5), it is natural to ask what are the best possible parameters α_1, α_2, α_3 and β_1, β_2, β_3 such that the double inequalities

$$C^{\alpha_1}(a,b)G^{1-\alpha_1}(a,b)<T(a,b)<C^{\beta_1}(a,b)G^{1-\beta_1}(a,b),$$

$$\alpha_2C(a,b)+(1-\alpha_2)G(a,b)<T(a,b)<\beta_2C(a,b)+(1-\beta_2)G(a,b),$$

$$\frac{\alpha_3}{G(a,b)}+\frac{1-\alpha_3}{C(a,b)}<\frac{1}{T(a,b)}<\frac{\beta_3}{G(a,b)}+\frac{1-\beta_3}{C(a,b)}$$

hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$? The main purpose of this paper is to answer this question.

2. Lemmas

In order to prove our main results we need several lemmas, which we present in this section.

Let $r\in[0,1]$, $\mathcal{K}(r)=\int_0^{\pi/2}(1-r^2\sin^2(t))^{-1/2}dt$ and $\mathcal{E}(r)=\int_0^{\pi/2}\left(1-r^2\sin^2(t)\right)^{1/2}dt$ be respectively the complete elliptic integrals of the first and second kinds. Then it is well known that $\mathcal{K}(r)$ is strictly increasing and $\mathcal{E}(r)$ is strictly decreasing on $[0,1]$,

$$\mathcal{K}(0)=\mathcal{E}(0)=\pi/2,\ \mathcal{K}(1)=\infty,\ \mathcal{E}(1)=1, \tag{2.1}$$

and $\mathcal{K}(r)$ and $\mathcal{E}(r)$ satisfy the formulas (See[17, Appendix E, pp. 474-475])

$$\frac{d\mathcal{K}(r)}{dr}=\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}{r(1-r^2)},\ \frac{d\mathcal{E}(r)}{dr}=\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{K}(r)}{r}, \tag{2.2}$$

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\frac{2\sqrt{r}}{1+r}\right)=\frac{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}{1+r}. \tag{2.3}$$

Lemma 2.1. *(See [78]) Let $-\infty<a<b<\infty$, $f,g:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a,b]$ and differentiable on (a,b), and $g'(x)\neq 0$ on (a,b). If $f'(x)/g'(x)$ is increasing (decreasing) on (a,b), then so are the functions $[f(x)-f(a)]/[g(x)-g(a)]$ and $[f(x)-f(b)]/[g(x)-g(b)]$. If $f'(x)/g'(x)$ is strictly monotone, then the monotonicity in the conclusion is also strict.*

Lemma 2.2. *(See [79]) The function $r\to(1-r^2)^\lambda\mathcal{K}(r)$ is strictly decreasing from $[0,1]$ onto $[0,\pi/2]$ if $\lambda\geq 1$.*

Lemma 2.3. *Let $f_1(r)=[\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)]/r^2$. Then $f_1(r)$ is strictly increasing from $(0,1]$ onto $(\pi/4,1]$.*

Proof. Let $g_1(r)=\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)$ and $g_2(r)=2r$. Then from (2.1) and (2.2) together with Lemma 2.2 we clearly see that

$$f_1(r)=\frac{g_1(r)}{g_2(r)},\ g_1(0)=g_2(0)=0,\ f_1(1)=1, \tag{2.4}$$

$$\frac{g_1'(r)}{g_2'(r)}=\frac{1}{2}\mathcal{K}(r),\ \lim_{r\to 0}f_1(r)=\lim_{r\to 0}\frac{g_1'(r)}{g_2'(r)}=\frac{\pi}{4}. \tag{2.5}$$

Therefore, Lemma 2.3 follows from (2.4) and (2.5) together with Lemma 2.1 and the monotonicity of $\mathcal{K}(r)$ on $[0,1]$. □

Lemma 2.4. *Let $f_2(r)=[2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)]/(1+r^2)$. Then $f_2(r)$ is strictly decreasing from $[0,1]$ onto $[1,\pi/2]$.*

Proof. It follows from (2.1) and Lemma 2.2 that

$$f_2(0)=\frac{\pi}{2},\ f_2(1)=1. \tag{2.6}$$

Differentiating $f_2(r)$ gives

$$f_2'(r)=\frac{r}{(1+r^2)^2}\left[(1-r^2)f_1(r)-2\mathcal{E}(r)\right], \tag{2.7}$$

where $f_1(r)$ is given by Lemma 2.3.

From (2.7) and Lemma 2.3 together with the monotonicity of $\mathcal{E}(r)$ on $[0,1]$ we get

$$f_2'(r)<\frac{r}{(1+r^2)^2}\left[(1-r^2)-2\right]=-\frac{r}{1+r^2}<0 \tag{2.8}$$

for $r\in(0,1)$.

Therefore, Lemma 2.4 follows easily from (2.6) and (2.8). □

Lemma 2.5. *Let $p\in\mathbb{R}$, $f_1(r)$ and $f_2(r)$ be respectively defined by Lemmas 2.3 and 2.4, and*

$$f(r)=\frac{f_1(r)}{f_2(r)}+\frac{2(1-p)}{1-r^2}-(1+p). \tag{2.9}$$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Then the following statements are true:

(1) $f(r)>0$ for all $r\in(0,1)$ if $p=1/2$;

(2) $f(r)<0$ for all $r\in(0,1)$ if $p=1$;

Proof. Let $f_3(r)=f_1(r)/f_2(r)$, then Lemmas 2.3 and 2.4 lead to

$$f_3(0^+)=\frac{1}{2},\ f_3(1^-)=1, \tag{2.10}$$

and $f_3(r)$ is strictly increasing on $(0,1)$.

For part (1), if $p=1/2$, then (2.9) becomes

$$f(r)=f_3(r)+\frac{1}{1-r^2}-\frac{3}{2}. \tag{2.11}$$

From (2.10) and (2.11) together with the monotonicity of $f_3(r)$ we clearly see that

$$f(r)>f_3(0^+)+1-\frac{3}{2}=0$$

for all $r\in(0,1)$.

For part (2), if $p=1$, then (2.9) becomes

$$f(r)=f_3(r)-2. \tag{2.12}$$

Therefore, $f(r)<1-2=-1<0$ for all $r\in(0,1)$ follows from (2.10) and (2.12) together with the monotonicity of $f_3(r)$. □

Lemma 2.6. *Let $q\in\mathbb{R}$, $f_1(r)$ be defined by Lemma 2.3, and*

$$g(r)=\frac{2}{\pi}f_1(r)+\frac{1-q}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}-2q. \tag{2.13}$$

Then the following statements are true:

(1) $g(r)>0$ for all $r\in(0,1)$ if $q=1/2$;

(2) there exists $r_0\in(0,1)$ such that $g(r)<0$ for $r\in(0,r_0)$ and $g(r)>0$ for $r\in(r_0,1)$ if $q=2/\pi$.

Proof. For part (1), if $q=1/2$, then (2.13) becomes

$$g(r)=\frac{2}{\pi}f_1(r)+\frac{1}{2\sqrt{1-r^2}}-1. \tag{2.14}$$

It follows from Lemma 2.3 and (2.14) that

$$g(r)>\frac{2}{\pi}\times\frac{\pi}{4}+\frac{1}{2}-1=0$$

for all $r\in(0,1)$.

For part (2), if $q=2/\pi$, then Lemma 2.3 and (2.13) lead to

$$g(0^+)=-\frac{3(4-\pi)}{2\pi}<0,\ g(1^-)=\infty, \tag{2.15}$$

and $g(r)$ is strictly increasing on $(0,1)$.

Therefore, part (2) follows from (2.15) and the monotonicity of $g(r)$. □

Lemma 2.7. *Let*

$$h(r)=\frac{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}{\pi}-\frac{(2-r^2)(1+r^2)}{4+r^2}$$

Then $h(r)>0$ for all $r\in(0,1)$.

Proof. Simple computations lead to

$$h(0)=0, \tag{2.16}$$

$$\begin{aligned} h'(r)&=\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}{\pi r}+\frac{2r(r^4+8r^2-2)}{(4+r^2)^2} \\ &=\frac{r}{(4+r^2)^2}\left[\frac{(4+r^2)^2}{\pi}f_1(r)+2(r^4+8r^2-2)\right], \end{aligned} \tag{2.17}$$

where $f_1(r)$ is defined by Lemma 2.3.

It follows from Lemma 2.3 and (2.17) that

$$h'(r)>\frac{r}{(4+r^2)^2}\left[\frac{(4+r^2)^2}{\pi}\times\frac{\pi}{4}+2(r^4+8r^2-2)\right]=\frac{9r^3(8+r^2)}{4(4+r^2)^2}>0 \tag{2.18}$$

for $r\in(0,1)$.

Therefore, Lemma 2.7 follows easily from (2.16) and (2.18). □

3. Main Results

Theorem 3.1. *The double inequality*

$$C^{\alpha_1}(a,b)G^{1-\alpha_1}(a,b)<T(a,b)<C^{\beta_1}(a,b)G^{1-\beta_1}(a,b)$$

holds for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$ if and only if $\alpha_1\leq 1/2$ and $\beta_1\geq 1$.

Proof. Since $C(a,b)$, $T(a,b)$ and $G(a,b)$ are symmetric and homogeneous of degree 1. Without loss of generality, we assume that $a>b>0$. Let $r=(a-b)/(a+b)\in(0,1)$ and $p\in\mathbb{R}$. Then from (1.1) and (2.3) we get

$$T(a,b)=\frac{2}{\pi}A(a,b)\left[2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right], \tag{3.1}$$

$$G(a,b)=A(a,b)\sqrt{1-r^2},\ C(a,b)=A(a,b)(1+r^2). \tag{3.2}$$

It follows from (3.1) and (3.2) that

$$\frac{\log[T(a,b)]-\log[G(a,b)]}{\log[C(a,b)]-\log[G(a,b)]}=\frac{\log\left[\frac{2}{\pi}\left(2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right)\right]-\frac{1}{2}\log(1-r^2)}{\log(1+r^2)-\frac{1}{2}\log(1-r^2)}, \tag{3.3}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\log[T(a,b)]-\{p\log[C(a,b)+(1-p)\log[G(a,b)]\} \\ &=\log\left[\frac{2}{\pi}\left(2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right)\right]-\left\{p\log(1+r^2)+\frac{1}{2}(1-p)\log(1-r^2)\right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4}$$

Let

$$F(r)=\log\left[\frac{2}{\pi}\left(2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right)\right]-\left\{p\log(1+r^2)+\frac{1}{2}(1-p)\log(1-r^2)\right\}. \tag{3.5}$$

Then simple computations lead to

$$F(0)=0, \tag{3.6}$$

$$F'(r)=\frac{r}{1+r^2}f(r), \tag{3.7}$$

where $f(r)$ is defined by (2.9).

We divide the proof into two cases.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Case 1 $p = 1/2$. Then Lemma 2.5(1) and (3.7) lead to the conclusion that $F(r)$ is strictly increasing on $(0, 1)$. Therefore,

$$T(a,b) > C^{1/2}(a,b)G^{1/2}(a,b) \tag{3.8}$$

follows from (3.4)-(3.6) and the monotonicity of $F(r)$ on $(0, 1)$.

Case 2 $p = 1$. Then Lemma 2.5(2) and (3.7) lead to the conclusion that $F(r)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0, 1)$. Therefore,

$$T(a,b) < C(a,b) \tag{3.9}$$

follows from (3.4)-(3.6) and the monotonicity of $F(r)$ on $(0, 1)$.

Note taht

$$\lim_{r\to0^+} \frac{\log\left[\frac{2}{\pi}\left(2\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right)\right] - \frac{1}{2}\log(1-r^2)}{\log(1+r^2) - \frac{1}{2}\log(1-r^2)} = \frac{1}{2}, \tag{3.10}$$

$$\lim_{r\to1^-} \frac{\log\left[\frac{2}{\pi}\left(2\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right)\right] - \frac{1}{2}\log(1-r^2)}{\log(1+r^2) - \frac{1}{2}\log(1-r^2)} = 1. \tag{3.11}$$

Therefore, Theorem 3.2 follows from (3.8) and (3.9) together with the following statements.

• If $p > 1/2$, then (3.3) and (3.10) imply that there exists $\delta_1 \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$T(a,b) < C^p(a,b)G^{1-p}(a,b)$$

for all $(a - b)/(a + b) \in (0, \delta_1)$.

•• If $p < 1$, then (3.3) and (3.11) imply that there exists $\delta_2 \in (0, 1)$ such that

$$T(a,b) > C^p(a,b)G^{1-p}(a,b)$$

for all $(a - b)/(a + b) \in (1 - \delta_2, 1)$. □

Theorem 3.2. *The double inequality*

$$\alpha_2 C(a,b) + (1-\alpha_2)G(a,b) < T(a,b) < \beta_2 C(a,b) + (1-\beta_2)G(a,b)$$

holds for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$ if and only if $\alpha_2 \leq 1/2$ and $\beta_2 \geq 2/\pi$.

Proof. Without loss of generality, we assume that $a > b > 0$. Let $r = (a - b)/(a + b) \in (0, 1)$ and $q \in \mathbb{R}$. Then from (3.1) and (3.2) we have

$$\frac{T(a,b) - G(a,b)}{C(a,b) - G(a,b)} = \frac{\frac{2}{\pi}\left[2\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right] - \sqrt{1-r^2}}{(1+r^2) - \sqrt{1-r^2}}, \tag{3.12}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &T(a,b) - [qC(a,b) + (1-q)G(a,b)] \\ &= A(a,b)\left\{\frac{2}{\pi}\left[2\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right] - [q(1+r^2) + (1-q)\sqrt{1-r^2}]\right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{3.13}$$

Let

$$G(r) = \frac{2}{\pi}\left[2\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right] - [q(1+r^2) + (1-q)\sqrt{1-r^2}]. \tag{3.14}$$

Then simple computations lead to

$$G(0^+) = 0, \tag{3.15}$$

$$G(1^-) = \frac{4}{\pi} - 2q, \tag{3.16}$$

$$G'(r) = rg(r), \tag{3.17}$$

where $g(r)$ is defined by (2.13).

We divide the proof into two cases.

Case 1 $q=1/2$. Then Lemma 2.6(1) and (3.17) lead to the conclusion that $G(r)$ is strictly increasing on $(0,1)$. Therefore,

$$T(a,b)>\frac{1}{2}C(a,b)+\frac{1}{2}G(a,b) \tag{3.18}$$

follows from (3.13)-(3.15) and the monotonicity of $G(r)$.

Case 2 $q=2/\pi$. Then (3.16) becomes

$$G(1^-)=0. \tag{3.19}$$

It follows from Lemma 2.6(2) and (3.17) that there exists $r_0\in(0,1)$ such that $G(r)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0,r_0)$ and strictly increasing on $(r_0,1)$. Therefore,

$$T(a,b)<\frac{2}{\pi}C(a,b)+\left(1-\frac{2}{\pi}\right)G(a,b) \tag{3.20}$$

follows from (3.13)-(3.15) and (3.19) together with the piecewise monotonicity of $G(r)$.

Note that

$$\lim_{r\to 0^+}\frac{\frac{2}{\pi}\left[2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right]-\sqrt{1-r^2}}{(1+r^2)-\sqrt{1-r^2}}=\frac{1}{2}, \tag{3.21}$$

$$\lim_{r\to 1^-}\frac{\frac{2}{\pi}\left[2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)\right]-\sqrt{1-r^2}}{(1+r^2)-\sqrt{1-r^2}}=\frac{2}{\pi}. \tag{3.22}$$

Therefore, Theorem 3.2 follows easily from (3.12), (3.18) and (3.20)-(3.22). □

Theorem 3.3. *The double inequality*

$$\frac{\alpha_3}{G(a,b)}+\frac{1-\alpha_3}{C(a,b)}<\frac{1}{T(a,b)}<\frac{\beta_3}{G(a,b)}+\frac{1-\beta_3}{C(a,b)}$$

holds for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$ if and only if $\alpha_3\leq 0$ and $\beta_3\geq 1/2$.

Proof. Without loss of generality, we assume that $a>b>0$. Let $r=(a-b)/(a+b)\in(0,1)$, then from (3.1) and (3.2) we have

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{T(a,b)}-\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{G(a,b)}+\frac{1}{C(a,b)}\right] \\ &=\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\pi}{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}-\frac{1}{1+r^2}\right].\end{aligned} \tag{3.23}$$

Let

$$H(r)=\frac{\pi}{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}-\frac{1}{1+r^2}. \tag{3.24}$$

Then Lemma 2.7 and $\sqrt{1-r^2}<1-r^2/2$ lead to

$$\begin{aligned}H(r)&<\frac{\pi}{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}-\frac{1}{1-\frac{r^2}{2}}-\frac{1}{1+r^2}. \\ &=\frac{\pi}{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}-\frac{4+r^2}{(2-r^2)(1+r^2)}<0.\end{aligned} \tag{3.25}$$

Therefore,

$$\frac{1}{C(a,b)} < \frac{1}{T(a,b)} < \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{G(a,b)} + \frac{1}{C(a,b)}\right] \tag{3.26}$$

follows from Theorem 3.1 and (3.23)-(3.25).

Let $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ and $r \in (0,1)$. Then making use of (1.1) and Taylor expansion we get

$$\frac{1}{T(1+r,1-r)} = \frac{\pi}{2}\frac{1}{2\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)} = 1 - \frac{1}{4}r^2 + o(r^2),$$

$$\frac{\lambda}{G(1+r,1-r)} + \frac{1-\lambda}{C(1+r,1-r)} = \frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{1-r^2}} + \frac{1-\lambda}{1+r^2} = 1 + \frac{3p-2}{2}r^2 + o(r^2),$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{T(1+r,1-r)} - \left[\frac{\lambda}{G(1+r,1-r)} + \frac{1-\lambda}{C(1+r,1-r)}\right] \\ = -\frac{3}{2}\left(\lambda - \frac{1}{2}\right)r^2 + o(r^2).\end{aligned} \tag{3.27}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{r\to 1^-}\left\{\frac{1}{T(1+r,1-r)} - \left[\frac{\lambda}{G(1+r,1-r)} + \frac{1-\lambda}{C(1+r,1-r)}\right]\right\} \\ = \frac{\pi}{4} - \lim_{r\to 1^-}\left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{1-r^2}} + \frac{1-\lambda}{1+r^2}\right] = -\infty\end{aligned} \tag{3.28}$$

if $\lambda > 0$.

Therefore, Theorem 3.3 follows from (3.26) and the following statements.

• If $\lambda < 1/2$, then (3.27) implies that there exists $\delta_3 \in (0,1)$ such that

$$\frac{1}{T(1+r,1-r)} > \frac{\lambda}{G(1+r,1-r)} + \frac{1-\lambda}{C(1+r,1-r)}$$

for $r \in (0,\delta_3)$.

•• If $\lambda > 0$, then there exists $\delta_4 \in (0,1)$ such that

$$\frac{1}{T(1+r,1-r)} < \frac{\lambda}{G(1+r,1-r)} + \frac{1-\lambda}{C(1+r,1-r)}$$

for $r \in (1-\delta_4, 1)$. □

Let $r \in (0,1)$, $a=1$, $b=\sqrt{1-r^2}$. Then Theorems 3.1-3.3 lead to Corollary 3.4.

Corollary 3.4. *The double inequalities*

$$\frac{\pi}{2}\frac{\sqrt{2-r^2}\sqrt[8]{1-r^2}}{\sqrt{1+\sqrt{1-r^2}}} < \mathcal{E}(r) < \frac{\pi}{2}\frac{2-r^2}{\sqrt{1+\sqrt{1-r^2}}},$$

$$\frac{\pi}{4}\frac{2-r^2+\sqrt[4]{1-r^2}(1+\sqrt{1-r^2})}{1+\sqrt{1-r^2}} < \mathcal{E}(r) < \frac{2(2-r^2)+(\pi-2)\sqrt[4]{1-r^2}(1+\sqrt{1-r^2})}{2(1+\sqrt{1-r^2})},$$

$$\frac{\pi(2-r^2)\sqrt[4]{1-r^2}}{(2-r^2)(1+\sqrt{1-r^2})\sqrt[4]{1-r^2}} < \mathcal{E}(r) < \frac{\pi}{2}\frac{2-r^2}{\sqrt{1+\sqrt{1-r^2}}}$$

holds for all $r \in (0,1)$.

References

[1] Gh. Toader, Some mean values related to the arithmetic-geometric mean, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 1998, **218**(2), 358–368.

[2] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-F. Qiu, Sharp generalized Seiffert mean bounds for Toader mean, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 605259, 8 pages.

[3] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Inequalities between arithmetic-geometric, Gini, and Toader means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 830585, 11 pages.

[4] W.-M. Qian, Z.-H. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for Toader-Qi mean in terms of harmonic and geometric means, J. Math. Inequal., 2017, **11**(1), 121–127.

[5] W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for a special quasi-arithmetic mean in terms of arithmetic and geometric means with two parameters, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 274, 10 pages.

[6] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and M.-K. Wang, Hölder mean inequalities for the complete elliptic integrals, Integral Transforms Spec. Funct., 2012, **23**(7), 521–527.

[7] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, Y.-P. Jiang and S.-L. Qiu, Concavity of the complete elliptic integrals of the second kind with respect to Hölder means, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **395**(2), 637–642.

[8] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Y.-F. Qiu, On Alzer and Qiu's conjecture for complete elliptic integral and inverse hyperbolic tangent function, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 697547, 7 pages.

[9] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-P. Jiang, Bounds for complete elliptic integrals of the second kind with applications, Comput. Math. Appl., 2012, **63**(7), 1177–1184.

[10] Y.-M. Chu and T.-H. Zhao, Convexity and concavity of the complete elliptic integrals with respect to Lehmer mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2015, **2015**, Article 396, 6 pages.

[11] T.-R. Huang, S.-Y. Tan, X.-Y. Ma and Y.-M. Chu, Monotonicity properties and bounds for the complete p-elliptic integrals, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 239, 11 pages.

[12] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Asymptotical bounds for complete elliptic integrals of the second kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2013, **402**(1), 119–126.

[13] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Refinements of transformation inequalities for zero-balanced hypergeometric function, Acta Math. Sci., 2017, **37B**(3), 607–622.

[14] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Landen inequalities for a class of hypergeometric functions with applications, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(2), 521–537.

[15] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-P. Jiang, Ramanujan's cubic transformation inequalities for zero-balanced hypergeometric functions, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2016, **46**(2), 679–691.

[16] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and S.-L. Qiu, Some monotonicity properties of generalized elliptic integrals with applications, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2013, **16**(3), 671–677.

[17] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-P. Jiang, Convexity of the complete elliptic integrals of the first kind with respect to Hölder means, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **388**(2), 1141–1146.

[18] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-Q. Song, Asymptotical formulas for Gaussian and generalized hypergeometric functions, Appl. Math. Comput., 2016, **276**, 44–60.

[19] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Li and Y.-M. Chu, Inequalities and infinite product formula for Ramanujan generalized modular equation function, Ramanujan J., 2018, **46**(1), 189–200.

[20] M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-M. Chu, Infinite series formula for Hübner upper bound function with applications to Hersch-Pfluger distortion function, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(3), 629–648.

[21] M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-P. Jiang, Generalized Hersch-Pfluger distortion function and complete elliptic integrals, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **385**(1), 221–229.

[22] Zh.-H. Yang and Y.-M. Chu, A monotonicity property involving the generalized elliptic integral of the first kind, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **20**(3), 729–735.

[23] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Monotonicity criterion for the quotient of power series with applications, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2015, **428**(1), 587–604.

[24] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, Monotonicity of the ratio for the complete elliptic integral and Stolarsky mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2016, **2016**, Article 176, 10 pages.

[25] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, Accurate approximations for the complete elliptic integral of the second kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2016, **438**(2), 875–888.

[26] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Monotonicity properties and bounds involving the complete elliptic integrals of the first kind, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(4), 1185–1199.
[27] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, On approximating the arithmetic-geometric mean and complete elliptic integral of the first kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2018, **462**(2), 1714–1726.
[28] H. Wang, W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Optimal bounds for Gaussian arithmetic-geometric mean with applications to complete elliptic integral, J. Funct. Spaces, 2016, **2016**, Article ID 3698463, 6 pages.
[29] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and X.-H. Zhang, Sharp Stolarsky mean bounds for the complete elliptic integral of the second kind, J. Nonlinear Sci. Appl., 2017, **10**(3), 929–936.
[30] T.-H. Zhao, M.-K. Wang, W. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Quadratic transformation inequalities for Gaussian hypergeometric function, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 251, 15 pages.
[31] E. Neuman, Bounds for symmetric elliptic integrals, J. Approx. Theory, 2003, **122**(2), 249–259.
[32] H. Kazi and E. Neuman, Inequalities and bounds for elliptic integrals, J. Approx. Theory, 2007, **146**(2), 212–226.
[33] H. Kazi and E. Neuman, Inequalities and bounds for elliptic integrals II, In: Special Functions and Orthogonal Polynomials, 127–138, Contemp. Math. 471, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2008.
[34] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and S.-L. Qiu, Optimal combinations bounds of root-square and arithmetic means for Toader mean, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. Math. Sci., 2012, **122**(1), 41–51.
[35] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal Lehmer mean bouns for the Toader mean, Results Math., 2012, **61**(3-4), 223–229.
[36] J.-F. Li, W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for Toader mean in terms of arithmetic, quadratic, and Neuman means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2015, Article 277, 9 pages.
[37] Y.-Q. Song, W.-D. Jiang, Y.-M. Chu and D.-D. Yan, Optimal bounds for Toader mean in terms of arithmetic and contraharmonic means, J. Math. Inequal., 2013, **7**(4), 751–757.
[38] W.-H. Li and M.-M. Zheng, Some inequalities for bounding Toader mean, J. Funct. Spaces Appl., 2013, Article ID 394194, 5 pages.
[39] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and X.-Y. Ma, Sharp bounds for Toader mean in terms of contraharmonic mean with applications, J. Math. Inequal., 2013, **7**(2), 161–166.
[40] Y. Hua and F. Qi, The best bounds for Toader mean in terms of the centroidal and arithmetic means, Filomat, 2014, **28**(4), 775–780.
[41] Y. Hua and F. Qi, A double inequality for bounding Toader mean by the centroidal mean, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. Math. Sci., 2014, **124**(4), 527–531.
[42] W.-M. Gong, Y.-Q. Song, Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, A sharp double inequality between Seiffert, arithmetic, and geoemtric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 684834, 7 pages.
[43] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, Best possible inequalities among harmonic, geometric, logarithmic and Seiffert means, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2012, **15**(2), 415–422.
[44] M.-K. Wang, Z.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, An optimal double inequality between geometric and identric means, Appl. Math. Lett., 2012, **25**(3), 471–475.
[45] Y.-M. Chu, C. Zong and G.-D. Wang, Optimal convex combination bounds of Seiffert and geometric means for arithmetic mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2011, **5**(2), 429–434.
[46] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, An optimal double inequality between Seiffert and geometric means, J. Appl. Math., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 261237, 6 pages.
[47] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal inequalities between harmonic, geometric, logarithmic, and arithmetic-geometric means, J. Appl. Math., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 618929, 9 pages
[48] B.-Y. Long and Y.-M. Chu, Optimal inequalities for generalized logarithmic, arithmetic, and geometric means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 806825, 10 pages.
[49] A. Iqbal, M. Adil Khan, S. Ullah, Y.-M. Chu and A. Kashuri, Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities pertaining conformable fractional integrals and their applications, AIP Advances, 2018, **8**, Article ID 075101, 18 pages, DOI: 10.1063/1.5031954.
[50] Y.-M. Chu, M. Adil Khan, T. Ali and S. S. Dragomir, Inequalities for α-fractional differentiable functions, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 93, 12 pages.
[51] M. Adil Khan, S. Begum, Y. Khurshid and Y.-M. Chu, Ostrowski type inequalities involving conformable fractional integrals, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 70, 14 pages.

[52] M. Adil Khan, Y. Khurshid, T.-S. Du and Y.-M. Chu, Generalized of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities via conformable fractional integrals, J. Funct. Spaces, 2018, **2018**, Article ID 5357463, 12 pages.

[53] M. Adil Khan, Y.-M. Chu, T. U. Khan and J. Khan, Some new inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for s-convex functions with applications, Open Math., 2017, **15**, 1414–1430.

[54] M. Adil Khan, Z. M. Al-sahwi and Y.-M. Chu, New estimations for Shannon and Zipf-Mandelbrot entropies, Entropy, 2018, **20**, Article 608, 10 pages, DOI: 10.3390/e2008608.

[55] M. Adil Khan, Y.-M. Chu, A. Kashuri and R. Liko, Hermite-Hadamard type fractional integral inequalities for $\mathrm{MT}_{(r;g,m,\varphi)}$-preinvex functions, J. Comput. Anal. Appl., 2019, **26**(8), 1487–1503.

[56] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu, M.-K. Wang and G.-D. Wang, The optimal convex combination bounds of arithmetic and harmonic means for the Seiffert mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 436457, 7 pages.

[57] X.-M. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Convexity of the integral arithmetic mean of a convex function, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2010, **40**(3), 1061–1068.

[58] H.-Z. Xu, Y.-M. Chu and W.-M. Qian, Sharp bounds for Sándor-Yang means in terms of arithmeitc and contra-Harmonic means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 127, 13 pages.

[59] Z.-Y. He, Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal bounds for Neuman means in terms of harmonic and contraharmonic means, J. Appl. Math., 2013, **2013**, Article ID 807623, 4 pages.

[60] Y.-M. Chu and S.-W. Hou, Sharp bounds for Seiffert mean in terms of contraharmonic mean, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 425175, 6 pages.

[61] Z.-Y. He, W.-M. Qian, Y.-L. Jiang, Y.-Q. Song and Y.-M. Chu, Bounds for the combinations of Neuman-Sándor, arithmetic, and Second Seiffert means in terms of contraharmonic mean, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2013, **2013**, Article ID 903982, 5 pages.

[62] W.-F. Xia, W. Janous and Y.-M. Chu, The optimal convex combination bounds of arithmetic and harmonic means in terms of power mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2012, **6**(2), 241–248.

[63] Y.-M. Chu and B.-Y. Long, Bounds of the Neuman-Sándor mean using power and identric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2013, **2013**, Article ID 832591, 6 pages.

[64] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and M.-K. Wang, Sharp power mean bounds for the combination of Seiffert and geometric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 108920, 12 pages.

[65] Y.-M. Chu, S.-L. Qiu, and M.-K. Wang, Sharp inequalities involving the power mean and complete ellipitc integral of the first kind, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2013, **43**(5), 1489–1496.

[66] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Y.-F. Qiu, An optimal double inequality between power-type Heron and Seiffert means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 146945, 11 pages.

[67] Y.-M. Chu, S.-S. Wang and C. Zong, Optimal lower power mean bound for the convex combiantion of harmonic and logarithmic means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 520648, 9 pages.

[68] Y.-M. Chu and W.-F. Xia, Two optimal double inequalities between power mean and logarithmic mean, Comput. Math. Appl., 2010, **60**(1), 83–89.

[69] Y.-M. Chu and T.-H. Zhao, Concavity of the error function with respect to Hölder means, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2016, **19**(2), 589–595.

[70] Y.-M. Li, B.-Y. Long and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds by the power mean for the generalized Heronian mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2012, **2012**, Article 129, 12 pages.

[71] B.-Y. Long and Y.-M. Chu, Optimal power mean bounds for the weighted geoemtric mean of classical means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 905679, 6 pages.

[72] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and S.-L. Qiu, An optimal power mean inequality for the complete elliptic integrals, Appl. Math. Lett., 2011, **24**(6), 887–890.

[73] G.-D. Wang, X.-H. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, A power mean inequality involving the complete elliptic integrals, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2014, **44**(5), 1661–1667.

[74] M. Vuorinen, Hypergeometric functions in geometric function theory, In: Special functions and differential equations (Madras, 1977), 119-126, Allied Publ., New Delhi, 1998.

[75] S.-L. Qiu and J.-M. Shen, On two problems concerning means, J. Hangzhou Inst. Electron. Eng., 1997, **17**(3), 1–7 (in Chinese).

[76] R. W. Barnard, K. Pearce and K. C. Richards, An inequality invoving the generalized hypergeometric function and the arc length of an ellipse, SIAM J. Math. Anal., 2000, **31**(3), 693–699.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

[77] H. Alzer and S.-L. Qiu, Monotonicity theorems and inequalities for the complete elliptic integrals, J. Comput. Appl. Math., 2004, **172**(2), 289–312.
[78] G. D. Anderson, S.-L. Qiu, M. K. Vamanamurthy and M. Vuorinen, Generalized elliptic integrals and modular equations, Pacific J. Math., 2000, **192**(1), 1–37.
[79] G. D. Anderson, M. K. Vamanamurthy and M. Vuorinen, Conformal Invariants, Inequalities, and Quasiconformal Maps, John Wiley & Songs, New York, 1997.

Wei-Mao Qian, [1]College of Science, Hunan City University, Yiyang 413000, Hunan, China; [2]School of Continuing Education, Huzhou Vocational and Technological College, Huzhou 313000, Zhejiang, China
E-mail address: qwm661977@126.com

Wen Zhang, [3]Friedman Brain Institute, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, NY 10029, USA
E-mail address: zhang.wen81@gmail.com

Yu-Ming Chu (Corresponding author), [4]Department of Mathematics, Huzhou University, Huzhou 313000, Zhejiang, China
E-mail address: chuyuming2005@126.com

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

OPTIMAL BOUNDS FOR TOADER-QI MEAN WITH APPLICATIONS*

WEN-MAO QIAN[1,2], WEN ZHANG[3], AND YU-MING CHU[4,**]

ABSTRACT. In the article, we find the best possible parameters α_1, α_2, α_3, β_1, β_2 and β_3 such that the double inequalities

$$A^{\alpha_1}(a,b)H^{1-\alpha_1}(a,b) < TQ(a,b) < \beta_1 A(a,b) + (1-\beta_1)H(a,b),$$

$$\frac{[\alpha_2 A(a,b) + (1-\alpha_2)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}{L(a,b)} < TQ(a,b)$$

$$< \frac{[\beta_2 A(a,b) + (1-\beta_2)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}{L(a,b)},$$

$$\sqrt{[\alpha_3 L(a,b) + (1-\alpha_3)H(a,b)]A(a,b)} < TQ(a,b)$$

$$< \sqrt{[\beta_3 L(a,b) + (1-\beta_3)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}$$

hold for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$, where $A(a,b) = (a+b)/2$, $H(a,b) = 2ab/(a+b)$, $L(a,b) = (b-a)/(\log b - \log a)$ and $TQ(a,b) = 2\int_0^{\pi/2} a^{\cos^2\theta} b^{\sin^2\theta} d\theta/\pi$ are the arithmetic, harmonic, logarithmic and Toader-Qi means of a and b, respectively. As applications, we present new bounds for the modified Bessel function of the first kind $I_0(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} t^{2n}/[2^{2n}(n!)^2]$.

1. INTRODUCTION

Let $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$. Then the arithmetic mean $A(a,b)$ [1-7], harmonic mean $H(a,b)$ [8-16], logarithmic mean $L(a,b)$ [17-22] and Toader-Qi mean $TQ(a,b)$ [23, 24] are defined by

$$A(a,b) = \frac{a+b}{2}, \quad H(a,b) = \frac{2ab}{a+b}, \tag{1.1}$$

$$L(a,b) = \frac{b-a}{\log b - \log a}, \quad TQ(a,b) = \frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi/2} a^{\cos^2\theta} b^{\sin^2\theta} d\theta, \tag{1.2}$$

respectively. Recently, the arithmetic mean $A(a,b)$, harmonic mean $H(a,b)$, logarithmic mean $L(a,b)$ have attracted the attention of many researchers, and many remarkable inequalities for these means and related special functions can be found in the literature [25-59].

Very recently, Qi et al. [24] proved that the identity

$$TQ(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}\, I_0\left(\log\sqrt{b/a}\right) \tag{1.3}$$

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary: 26E60; Secondary: 33C10.

Key words and phrases. Toader-Qi mean, modified Bessel function, arithmetic mean, harmonic mean, logarithmic mean.

*The research was supported by the Natural Science Foundation of China (Grant Nos. 61673169, 11301127, 11701176, 11626101, 11601485), the Science and Technology Research Program of Zhejiang Educational Committee (Grant No. Y201635325) and the Natural Science Foundation of Huzhou City (Grant No. 2018YZ07).

**Corresponding author: Yu-Ming Chu, Email: chuyuming2005@126.com.

and the inequalities

$$L(a,b) < TQ(a,b) < \frac{A(a,b)+G(a,b)}{2} < \frac{2A(a,b)+G(a,b)}{3} < I(a,b)$$

hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$, where

$$I_\nu(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!\Gamma(n+\nu+1)} \left(\frac{t}{2}\right)^{2n+\nu} \tag{1.4}$$

is the modified Bessel function of the first kind [60], $\Gamma(x) = \int_0^\infty e^{-t}t^{x-1}dt$ is the classical gamma function [61-69], and $G(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}$ [70-72] and $I(a,b) = (b^b/a^a)^{1/(b-a)}/e$ [73-75] are respectively the geometric and inentric means of a and b.

Yang and Chu [76, 77], and Yang, Chu and Song [78] proved that the inequalities

$$\lambda_1\sqrt{L(a,b)A(a,b)} < TQ(a,b) < \mu_1\sqrt{L(a,b)A(a,b)},$$

$$L^{\lambda_2}(a,b)A^{1-\lambda_2}(a,b) < TQ(a,b) < \mu_2 L(a,b) + (1-\mu_2)A(a,b),$$

$$TQ(a,b) > L_p(a,b)$$

$$\lambda_3\sqrt{L(a,b)I(a,b)} < TQ(a,b) < \mu_3\sqrt{L(a,b)I(a,b)},$$

hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$ if and only if $\lambda_1 \leq \sqrt{2/\pi}$, $\mu_1 \geq 1$, $\lambda_2 \geq 3/4$, $\mu_2 \leq 3/4$, $p\leq 3/2$, $\lambda_3 \leq \sqrt{e/\pi}$ and $\mu_3 \geq 1$, where $L_p(a,b) = [(b^p-a^p)/(p(\log b - \log a))]^{1/p}$ is the p-order logarithmic mean of a and b.

In [79], the authors proved that $p_1 = 0$, $q_1 = 1/4$, $p_2 = 0$ and $q_2 = 1/2 - \sqrt{2}/4$ are the best possible parameters on the interval $[0,1/2]$ such that the double inequalities

$$H[p_1a+(1-p_1)b, p_1b+(1-p_1)a] < TQ(a,b) < H[q_1a+(1-q_1)b, q_1b+(1-q_1)a],$$

$$G[p_2a+(1-p_2)b, p_2b+(1-p_2)a] < TQ(a,b) < G[q_2a+(1-q_2)b, q_2b+(1-q_2)a]$$

hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$.

The main purpose of the article is to present the best possible parameters α_1, α_2, α_3, β_1, β_2 and β_3 such that the double inequalities

$$A^{\alpha_1}(a,b)H^{1-\alpha_1}(a,b) < TQ(a,b) < \beta_1 A(a,b) + (1-\beta_1)H(a,b),$$

$$\frac{[\alpha_2 A(a,b) + (1-\alpha_2)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}{L(a,b)} < TQ(a,b) < \frac{[\beta_2 A(a,b) + (1-\beta_2)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}{L(a,b)},$$

$$\sqrt{[\alpha_3 L(a,b) + (1-\alpha_3)H(a,b)]A(a,b)} < TQ(a,b) < \sqrt{[\beta_3 L(a,b) + (1-\beta_3)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}$$

hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$, and find the new bounds for the modified Bessel function $I_0(t)$.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

2. Lemmas

In order to prove our main results we need several lemmas, which we present in this section.

Lemma 2.1. *(See [80, Theorem 2.18]) The identity*

$$\Gamma\left(n+\frac{1}{2}\right)=\frac{(2n)!}{2^{2n}n!}\sqrt{\pi}$$

holds for all $n\in\mathbb{N}$.

Lemma 2.2. *(See [81]) Let $\{a_n\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ and $\{b_n\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$ be two real sequences with $b_n>0$ and $\lim_{n\to\infty}a_n/b_n=s$. Then the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_nt^n$ is convergent for all $t\in\mathbb{R}$ and*

$$\lim_{t\to\infty}\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_nt^n}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}b_nt^n}=s$$

if the power series $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}b_nt^n$ is convergent for all $t\in\mathbb{R}$.

Lemma 2.3. *(See [82, Lemma 2.2]) The double inequality*

$$\frac{1}{(x+a)^{1-a}}<\frac{\Gamma(x+a)}{\Gamma(x+1)}<\frac{1}{x^{1-a}}$$

holds for all $x>0$ and $a\in(0,1)$.

Lemma 2.4. *(See [80, Theorem 1.25]) Let $a,b\in\mathbb{R}$ with $a<b$, $f,g:[a,b]\mapsto\mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a,b]$ and differentiable on (a,b), and $g'(x)\neq 0$ on (a,b). If $f'(x)/g'(x)$ is increasing (decreasing) on (a,b), then so are the functions*

$$\frac{f(x)-f(a)}{g(x)-g(a)},\qquad \frac{f(x)-f(b)}{g(x)-g(b)}.$$

If $f'(x)/g'(x)$ is strictly monotonic, then the monotonicity in the conclusion is also strict.

Lemma 2.5. *(See [83], [84, Lemma 2.1]) Let $A(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}a_kt^k$ and $B(t)=\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}b_kt^k$ be two real power series converging on $(-r,r)$ $(r>0)$ with $b_k>0$ for all k. If the non-constant sequence $\{a_k/b_k\}_{k=0}^{\infty}$ is increasing (decreasing) for all k, then the function $t\mapsto A(t)/B(t)$ is strictly increasing (decreasing) on $(0,r)$.*

Lemma 2.6. *(See [85, (3.5)]) The identity*

$$I_\lambda(t)I_\mu(t)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\Gamma(2n+\lambda+\mu+1)}{n!\Gamma(n+\lambda+\mu+1)\Gamma(n+\lambda+1)\Gamma(n+\mu+1)}\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)^{2n+\lambda+\mu}$$

holds for all $\lambda,\mu>-1$ and $t\in\mathbb{R}$.

Lemma 2.7. *The identities*

$$\cosh(t)I_0(t)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n)!}{2^{2n}[(2n)!]^3}t^{2n},$$

$$\sinh(t)I_0(t)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n+2)!}{2^{2n+1}[(2n+1)!]^3}t^{2n+1},$$

$$\cosh(t)I_1(t)=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n+1)!}{2^{2n+1}(n+1)(2n+1)[(2n)!]^3}t^{2n+1}$$

hold for all $t\in\mathbb{R}$, *where* $\sinh(t)=(e^t-e^{-t})/2$ *and* $\cosh(t)=(e^t+e^{-t})/2$ *are the hyperbolic sine and cosine functions, respectively.*

Proof. It follows from (1.4), and Lemmas 2.1 and 2.6 that

$$I_{-1/2}(t)=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{t^{2n}}{(2n)!}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}}\cosh(t),$$

$$I_{1/2}(t)=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{t^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}=\sqrt{\frac{2}{\pi t}}\sinh(t),$$

$$\cosh(t)I_0(t)=\sqrt{\frac{\pi t}{2}}I_{-1/2}(t)I_0(t)$$

$$=\sqrt{\frac{\pi t}{2}}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{1}{2}\right)}{\left[n!\Gamma\left(n+\frac{1}{2}\right)\right]^2}\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)^{2n-1/2}=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n)!}{2^{2n}[(2n)!]^3}t^{2n},$$

$$\sinh(t)I_0(t)=\sqrt{\frac{\pi t}{2}}I_{1/2}(t)I_0(t)$$

$$=\sqrt{\frac{\pi t}{2}}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{3}{2}\right)}{\left[n!\Gamma\left(n+\frac{3}{2}\right)\right]^2}\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)^{2n+1/2}=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n+2)!}{2^{2n+1}[(2n+1)!]^3}t^{2n+1},$$

$$\cosh(t)I_1(t)=\sqrt{\frac{\pi t}{2}}I_{-1/2}(t)I_1(t)$$

$$=\sqrt{\frac{\pi t}{2}}\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{3}{2}\right)}{(n+1)\left(n+\frac{3}{2}\right)\left[n!\Gamma\left(n+\frac{1}{2}\right)\right]^2}\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)^{2n+1/2}$$

$$=\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n+1)!}{2^{2n+1}(n+1)(2n+1)[(2n)!]^3}t^{2n+1}.$$

□

Lemma 2.8. *The function* $f(t)=\log[I_0(t)]/[\log\cosh(t)]$ *is strictly increasing from* $(0,\infty)$ *onto* $(1/2,1)$.

Proof. Let $f_1(t)=\log[I_0(t)]$, $f_2(t)=\log\cosh(t)$, and a_n and b_n be defined by

$$a_n=\frac{(4n+1)!}{2^{2n+1}(n+1)(2n+1)[(2n)!]^3},\quad b_n=\frac{(4n+2)!}{2^{2n+1}[(2n+1)!]^3}.\tag{2.1}$$

Then from (1.4), Lemma 2.7 and (2.1) we clearly see that

$$f(t)=\frac{f_1(t)}{f_2(t)}=\frac{f_1(t)-f_1(0^+)}{f_2(t)-f_2(0^+)},\tag{2.2}$$

$$\frac{a_n}{b_n}=1-\frac{1}{2(n+1)},\tag{2.3}$$

$$\frac{a_0}{b_0}=\frac{1}{2},\quad \lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{a_n}{b_n}=1-\lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{1}{2(n+1)}=1,\tag{2.4}$$

$$\frac{f_1'(t)}{f_2'(t)}=\frac{\cosh(t)I_1(t)}{\sinh(t)I_0(t)}=\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}a_nt^{2n}}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}b_nt^{2n}}.\tag{2.5}$$

From Lemma 2.5, (2.3) and (2.5) we know that the function $f_1'(t)/f_2'(t)$ is strictly increasing on $(0, \infty)$. Then Lemma 2.4 and (2.2) lead to the conclusion that $f(t)$ is strictly increasing on $(0, \infty)$.

Therefore, Lemma 2.8 follows from Lemma 2.2 and (2.4) together with the monotonicity of $f(t)$. □

Lemma 2.9. *The function* $g(t) = [\cosh(t)I_0(t) - 1]/[\cosh(2t) - 1]$ *is strictly decreasing from* $(0, \infty)$ *onto* $(0, 3/8)$.

Proof. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and c_n and d_n be defined by

$$c_n = \frac{(4n+4)!}{2^{2n+2}[(2n+2)!]^3}, \qquad d_n = \frac{2^{2n+2}}{(2n+2)!}. \tag{2.6}$$

Then Lemmas 2.1 and 2.7 together with (2.6) lead to

$$\frac{c_0}{d_0} = \frac{3}{8}, \tag{2.7}$$

$$\frac{c_n}{d_n} = \frac{(4n+4)!}{2^{4n+4}\Gamma(2n+3)(2n+2)!} = \frac{\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{5}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma(2n+3)}, \tag{2.8}$$

$$g(t) = \frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(4n)!}{2^{2n}[(2n)!]^3} t^{2n} - 1}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{2^{2n}}{(2n)!} t^{2n} - 1} = \frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n t^{2n}}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} d_n t^{2n}}, \tag{2.9}$$

$$\frac{c_{n+1}}{d_{n+1}} - \frac{c_n}{d_n} = -\frac{(n+2)(2n+3)(8n+13)(4n+4)!}{2^{4n+5}[(2n+4)!]^2} < 0 \tag{2.10}$$

for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

It follows from Lemma 2.3 that

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}\left(2n+\frac{5}{2}\right)^{1/2}} < \frac{\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{5}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\pi}\Gamma(2n+3)} < \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi}(2n+2)^{1/2}}. \tag{2.11}$$

From Lemma 2.2, Lemma 2.5 and (2.8)-(2.11) we know that $g(t)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0, \infty)$ and

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} g(t) = \lim_{n \to \infty} \frac{c_n}{d_n} = 0. \tag{2.12}$$

Therefore, Lemma 2.9 follows from (2.7), (2.9), (2.12) and the monotonicity of the function $g(t)$ on the interval $(0, \infty)$. □

Lemma 2.10. *The function* $h(t) = [\sinh(t)I_0(t) - t]/[t\cosh(2t) - t]$ *is strictly decreasing from* $(0, \infty)$ *onto* $(0, 5/24)$.

Proof. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, u_n and v_n be defined by

$$u_n = \frac{(4n+6)!}{2^{2n+3}[(2n+3)!]^3}, \qquad v_n = \frac{2^{2n+2}}{(2n+2)!}. \tag{2.13}$$

Then from Lemma 2.1, Lemma 2.7 and (2.13) one has

$$\frac{u_0}{v_0} = \frac{5}{24}, \tag{2.14}$$

$$\frac{u_n}{v_n} = \frac{(4n+5)!}{2^{4n+4}[(2n+3)!]^2} = \frac{(4n+5)\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{5}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\pi}(2n+3)^2\Gamma(2n+3)}, \tag{2.15}$$

$$h(t)=\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(4n+2)!}{2^{2n+1}[(2n+1)!]^3}t^{2n+1}-t}{t\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{2^{2n}}{(2n)!}t^{2n}-t}=\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}u_nt^{2n}}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}v_nt^{2n}}, \tag{2.16}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{u_{n+1}}{v_{n+1}}-\frac{u_n}{v_n}&=\frac{(4n+9)!}{2^{4n+8}[(2n+5)!]^2}-\frac{(4n+5)!}{2^{4n+4}[(2n+3)!]^2} \\ &=-\frac{(n+2)(48n^2+202n+211)(4n+5)!}{2^{4n+5}[(2n+5)!]^2}<0\end{aligned} \tag{2.17}$$

for all $n\in\mathbb{N}$.

It follows from Lemma 2.3 that

$$\frac{(4n+5)}{\sqrt{\pi}(2n+3)^2\left(2n+\frac{5}{2}\right)^{1/2}}<\frac{(4n+5)\Gamma\left(2n+\frac{5}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\pi}(2n+3)^2\Gamma(2n+3)}<\frac{(4n+5)}{\sqrt{\pi}(2n+3)^2(2n+2)^{1/2}}. \tag{2.18}$$

From Lemma 2.2, Lemma 2.5 and (2.15)-(2.18) we clearly see that $h(t)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0,\infty)$ and

$$\lim_{t\to\infty}h(t)=\lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{u_n}{v_n}=0. \tag{2.19}$$

Therefore, Lemma 2.10 follows easily from (2.14), (2.16), (2.19) and the monotonicity of $h(t)$ on the interval $(0,\infty)$. □

Lemma 2.11. *The function $\lambda(t)=[tI_0^2(t)-t]/[\sinh(2t)-2t]$ is strictly decreasing from $(0,\infty)$ onto $(1/\pi,3/8)$.*

Proof. Let $n\in\mathbb{N}$, σ_n and τ_n be defined by

$$\sigma_n=\frac{(2n+2)!}{2^{2n+2}[(n+1)!]^4},\qquad \tau_n=\frac{2^{2n+3}}{(2n+3)!}. \tag{2.20}$$

Then from Lemma 2.1, Lemma 2.3, Lemma 2.6, (2.20) one has

$$\frac{\sigma_0}{\tau_0}=\frac{3}{8}, \tag{2.21}$$

$$I_0^2(t)=\frac{(2n)!}{2^{2n}(n!)^4}t^{2n},$$

$$\lambda(t)=\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{(2n)!}{2^{2n}(n!)^4}t^{2n+1}-t}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\frac{2^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}t^{2n+1}-2t}=\frac{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\sigma_nt^{2n}}{\sum_{n=0}^{\infty}\tau_nt^{2n}}, \tag{2.22}$$

$$\frac{\sigma_n}{\tau_n}=\frac{(2n+3)[(2n+2)!]^2}{2^{4n+5}[(n+1)!]^4}$$

$$=\frac{\left(n+\frac{3}{2}\right)}{\Gamma^2(n+2)}\left[\frac{(2n+2)!}{2^{2n+2}(n+1)!}\right]^2=\frac{n+\frac{3}{2}}{\pi}\left[\frac{\Gamma\left(n+\frac{3}{2}\right)}{\Gamma(n+2)}\right]^2,$$

$$\frac{1}{\pi}<\frac{\sigma_n}{\tau_n}<\frac{n+\frac{3}{2}}{\pi(n+1)},$$

$$\lim_{n\to\infty}\frac{\sigma_n}{\tau_n}=\frac{1}{\pi}, \tag{2.23}$$

$$\frac{\sigma_{n+1}}{\tau_{n+1}}-\frac{\sigma_n}{\tau_n}=-\frac{(2n+3)(n+2)^2[(2n+2)!]^2}{2^{4n+7}[(n+2)!]^4}<0 \tag{2.24}$$

for all $n\in\mathbb{N}$.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

It follows from Lemma 2.2, Lemma 2.5 and (2.22)-(2.24) that $\lambda(t)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0, \infty)$ and

$$\lim_{t \to \infty} \lambda(t) = \frac{1}{\pi}. \tag{2.25}$$

Therefore, Lemma 2.11 follows easily from (2.21), (2.22), (2.25) and the monotonicity of the function $\lambda(t)$ on the interval $(0, \infty)$. □

3. Main Results

Theorem 3.1. *The double inequalities*

$$A^{\alpha_1}(a,b)H^{1-\alpha_1}(a,b) < TQ(a,b) < \beta_1 A(a,b) + (1-\beta_1)H(a,b),$$

$$\frac{[\alpha_2 A(a,b) + (1-\alpha_2)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}{L(a,b)} < TQ(a,b) < \frac{[\beta_2 A(a,b) + (1-\beta_2)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}{L(a,b)},$$

$$\sqrt{[\alpha_3 L(a,b) + (1-\alpha_3)H(a,b)]A(a,b)} < TQ(a,b) < \sqrt{[\beta_3 L(a,b) + (1-\beta_3)H(a,b)]A(a,b)}$$

hold for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$ if and only if $\alpha_1 \leq 3/4$, $\beta_1 \geq 3/4$, $\alpha_2 \leq 0$, $\beta_2 \geq 5/12$, $\alpha_3 \leq 2/\pi$ and $\beta_3 \geq 3/4$.

Proof. Since $H(a,b)$, $L(a,b)$, $A(a,b)$ and $TQ(a,b)$ are symmetric and homogeneous of degree 1, without loss of generality, we assume that $b > a > 0$. Let $t = \log\sqrt{b/a} > 0$, then from (1.1)-(1.3) one has

$$H(a,b) = \frac{\sqrt{ab}}{\cosh(t)}, \quad L(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}\frac{\sinh(t)}{t}, \tag{3.1}$$

$$TQ(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}I_0(t), \quad A(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}\cosh(t), \tag{3.2}$$

$$\frac{\log TQ(a,b) - \log H(a,b)}{\log A(a,b) - \log H(a,b)} = \frac{\log I_0(t) + \log\cosh(t)}{2\log\cosh(t)} = \frac{1}{2}f(t) + \frac{1}{2}, \tag{3.3}$$

$$\frac{TQ(a,b) - H(a,b)}{A(a,b) - H(a,b)} = \frac{I_0(t)\cosh(t) - 1}{\cosh^2(t) - 1} = 2g(t), \tag{3.4}$$

$$\frac{TQ(a,b)L(a,b) - H(a,b)A(a,b)}{A^2(a,b) - H(a,b)A(a,b)} = \frac{\sinh(t)I_0(t) - t}{t[\cosh^2(t) - 1]} = 2h(t), \tag{3.5}$$

$$\frac{TQ^2(a,b) - H(a,b)A(a,b)}{L(a,b)A(a,b) - H(a,b)A(a,b)} = \frac{t[I_0^2(t) - 1]}{\sinh(t)\cosh(t) - t} = 2\lambda(t), \tag{3.6}$$

where, $f(t)$, $g(t)$, $h(t)$ and $\lambda(t)$ are given by Lemma 2.8, Lemma 2.9, Lemma 2.10 and Lemma 2.11, respectively.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Therefore, Theorem 3.1 follows easily from (3.3)-(3.6), and Lemma 2.8, Lemma 2.9, Lemma 2.10 and Lemma 2.11. □

From Theorem 3.1, (3.1) and (3.2), we get Corollary 3.2 immediately.

Corollary 3.2. *The double inequalities*

$$\cosh^{1/2}(t) < I_0(t) < \frac{3\cosh^2(t)+1}{4\cosh(t)},$$

$$\frac{t}{\sinh(t)} < I_0(t) < \frac{[5\cosh^2(t)+7]t}{12\sinh(t)},$$

$$\sqrt{\frac{\sinh(2t)}{\pi t}+1-\frac{2}{\pi}} < I_0(t) < \sqrt{\frac{3\sinh(2t)}{8t}+\frac{1}{4}}$$

for all $t > 0$.

References

[1] H.-Z. Xu, Y.-M. Chu and W.-M. Qian, Sharp bounds for the Sándor-Yang means in terms of arithmetic and contra-harmonic means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 127, 13 pages.

[2] W.-F. Xia, W. Janous and Y.-M. Chu, The optimal convex combination bounds of arithmetic and harmonic means in terms of power mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2012, **6**(2), 241–248.

[3] W.-M. Gong, Y.-Q. Song, M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, A sharp double inequality between Seiffert, arithmetic, and geometric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 684834, 7 pages.

[4] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Inequalities between arithmetic-geometric, Gini, and Toader means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 830585, 11 pages.

[5] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu, M.-K. Wang and G.-D. Wang, The optimal convex combination bounds of arithmetic and harmonic means for the Seiffert's mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 436457, 7 pages.

[6] X.-M. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Convexity of the integral arithmetic mean of a convex function, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2010, **40**(3), 1061–1068.

[7] W.-F. Xia, Y.-M. Chu and G.-D. Wang, The optimal upper and lower power mean bounds for a convex combiantion of the arithmetic and logarithmic means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 604804, 9 pages.

[8] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-M. Li, W.-F. Xia and X.-H. Zhang, Best possible inequalities for the harmonic mean of error function, J. Inequal. Appl., 2014, **2014**, Article 525, 9 pages.

[9] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, Best possible inequalities among harmonic, geometric, logarithmic and Seiffert means, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2012, **15**(2), 415–422.

[10] Y.-M. Chu, W.-F. Xia and X.-H. Zhang, The Schur concavity, Schur multiplicative and harmonic convexities of the second dual form of the Hamy symmetric function with applications, J. Multivariate Anal., 2012, **105**, 412–421.

[11] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, A best-possible double inequality between Seiffert and harmonic means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2011, **2011**, Article 94, 7 pages.

[12] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal inequalities betwen harmonic, geometric, logarithmic, and arithmetic-geometric means, J. Appl. Math., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 618929, 9 pages.

[13] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, A sharp double inequality between harmonic and identric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 657935, 7 pages.

[14] Y.-M. Chu, S.-S. Wang and C. Zong, Optimal lower power mean bound for the convex combination of harmonic and logarithmic means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 520648, 9 pages.

[15] Y.-M. Chu, G.-D. Wang and X.-H. Zhang, The Schur multiplicative and harmonic convexities of the complete symmetric function, Math. Nachr., 2011, **284**(5-6), 653–663.

[16] Y.-M. Chu and T.-C. Sun, The Schur harmonic convexity for a class of symmetric functions, Acta Math. Sci., 2010, **30B**(5), 1501–1506.

[17] W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Best possible bounds for Yang mean using generalized logarithmic mean, Math. Probl. Eng., 2016, **2016**, Article ID 8901258, 7 pages.
[18] Y.-M. Li, B.-Y. Long and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for the Neuman-Sándor mean in terms of generalized logarithmic mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2012, **6**(4), 567–577.
[19] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and G.-D. Wang, The optimal generalized logarithmic mean bounds for Seiffert's mean, Acta Math. Sci., 2012, **32B**(4), 1619–1626.
[20] Y.-F. Qiu, M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and G.-D. Wang, Two sharp inequalities for Lehmer mean, identric mean and logarithmic mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2011, **5**(3), 301–306.
[21] Y.-M. Chu and W.-F. Xia, Two double inequalities between power mean and logarithmic mean, Comput. Math. Appl., 2010, **60**(1), 83–89.
[22] Y.-M. Chu and B.-Y. Long, Best possible inequalities between generalized logarithmic mean and classical means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 303286, 13 pages.
[23] Gh. Toader, Some mean values related to the arithmetic-geometric mean, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 1998, **218**(2), 358–368.
[24] F. Qi, X.-T. Shi, F.-F. Liu and Zh.-H. Yang, A double inequality for an integral mean in terms of the exponential and logarithmic mean, Perod. Math. Hungar., 2017, **75**(2), 180–189.
[25] A. O. Pittenger, Inequalities between arithmetic and logarithmic means, Univ. Beograd. Publ. Elektrotehn. Fak. Ser. Mat. Fiz., 1980, **678-715**, 15–18.
[26] W. Fechner, On some functional inequalities related to the logarithmic mean, Acta Math. Hungar., 2010, **128**(1-2), 36–45.
[27] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and S.-L. Qiu, Optimal combinations bounds of root-square and arithmetic means for Toader mean, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. Math. Sci., 2012, **122**(1), 41–51.
[28] Zh.-H. Yang, New bounds for identric mean in terms of logarithmic mean and arithmetic mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2012, **6**(4), 533–543.
[29] E. Neuman, Sharp inequalities involving Neuman-Sándor and logarithmic mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2013, **7**(3), 413–419.
[30] L. Matejíčka, Optimal convex combinations bounds of centroidal and harmonic means for weighted geometric mean of logarithmic and identric means, J. Math. Inequal., 2014, **8**(4), 939–945.
[31] J. Sándor and B. A. Bhayo, On some inequalities for the identric, logarithmci and related means, J. Math. Inequal., 2015, **9**(3), 889–896.
[32] B.-N. Gu and F. Qi, On inequalities for the exponential and logarithmic functions and means, Malays. J. Math. Sci., 2016, **10**(1), 23–34.
[33] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, On approximating the arithmetic-geometric mean and complete elliptic integral of the first kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2018, **462**(2), 1714–1726.
[34] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Monotonicity properties and bounds involving the complete elliptic integrals of the first kind, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(4), 1185–1199.
[35] T.-H. Zhao, M.-K. Wang, W. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Quadratic transformation inequalities for Gaussian hypergeometric function, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 251, 15 pages.
[36] T.-R. Huang, S.-Y. Tan, X.-Y. Ma and Y.-M. Chu, Monotonicity properties and bounds for the complete p-elliptic integrals, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 239, 11 pages.
[37] M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-M. Chu, Infinite series formula for Hübner upper bound function with applications to Hersch-Pfluger distortion function, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(3), 629–648.
[38] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Landen inequalities for a class of hypergeometric functions with applications, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(2), 521–537.
[39] W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for a special quasi-arithmetic mean in terms of arithmetic and geometric means with two parameters, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 274, 10 pages.
[40] Zh.-H. Yang and Y.-M. Chu, A monotonicity properties involving the generalized elliptic integral of the first kind, 2017, **20**(3), 729–735.
[41] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, Monotonicity rule for the quotient of two function and its applications, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 106, 13 pages.
[42] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal Lehmer mean bounds for the Toader mean, Results Math., 2012, **61**(3-4), 223–229.
[43] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-Q. Song, Asymptotical formulas for Gaussian and generalized hypergeometric functions, Appl. Math. Comput., 2016, **276**, 44–60.

[44] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-P. Jiang, Ramanujan's cubic transformaation inequalities for zero-balanced hypergeometric functions, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2016, **46**(2), 679–691.
[45] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and S.-L. Qiu, An optimal power mean inequality for the complete elliptic integrals, Appl. Math. Lett., 2011, **24**(6), 887–890.
[46] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Y.-F. Qiu, On Alzer and Qiu's conjecture for complete elliptic integral and inverse hyperbolic tangent function, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 697547, 7 pages.
[47] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Asymptotical bounds for complete elliptic integrals of the second kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2013, **402**(1), 119–126.
[48] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and M.-K. Wang, Hölder mean inequalities for the complete elliptic integrals, Integral Transforms Spec. Funct., 2012, **23**(7), 521–527.
[49] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-P. Jiang, Bounds for complete elliptic integrals of the second kind with applications, Comput. Math. Appl., 2012, **63**(7), 1177–1184.
[51] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-P. Jiang, Convexity of the complete elliptic integrals of the first kind with respect to Hölder means, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **388**(2), 1141–1146.
[52] M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-P. Jiang, Generalized Hersch-Pfluger distortion function and complete elliptic integrals, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **385**(1), 221–229.
[53] A. Iqbal, M. Adil Khan, S. Ullah, Y.-M. Chu and A. Kashuri, Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities pertaining conformable fractional integrals and their applications, AIP Advances, 2018, **8**, Article ID 075101, 18 pages, DOI: 10.1063/1.5031954.
[54] Y.-M. Chu, M. Adil Khan, T. Ali and S. S. Dragomir, Inequalities for α-fractional differentiable functions, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 93, 12 pages.
[55] M. Adil Khan, S. Begum, Y. Khurshid and Y.-M. Chu, Ostrowski type inequalities involving conformable fractional integrals, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 70, 14 pages.
[56] M. Adil Khan, Y. Khurshid, T.-S. Du and Y.-M. Chu, Generalized of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities via conformable fractional integrals, J. Funct. Spaces, 2018, **2018**, Article ID 5357463, 12 pages.
[57] M. Adil Khan, Y.-M. Chu, T. U. Khan and J. Khan, Some new inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for s-convex functions with applications, Open Math., 2017, **15**, 1414–1430.
[58] M. Adil Khan, Z. M. Al-sahwi and Y.-M. Chu, New estimations for Shannon and Zipf-Mandelbrot entropies, Entropy, 2018, **20**, Article 608, 10 pages, DOI: 10.3390/e2008608.
[59] M. Adil Khan, Y.-M. Chu, A. Kashuri and R. Liko, Hermite-Hadamard type fractional integral inequalities for $\mathrm{MT}_{(r;g,m,\varphi)}$-preinvex functions, J. Comput. Anal. Appl., 2019, **26**(8), 1487–1503.
[60] M. Abramowitz and I. A. Stegun, Handbook of Mathematical Functions with Formulas, Graphs, and Mathematical Tables, U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, 1964.
[61] E. T. Whittaker and G. N. Watson, A Course of Modern Analysis, Cambrigeg University Press, New York, 1962.
[62] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Li and Y.-M. Chu, Inequalities and infinite product formula for Ramanujan generalized modular equation function, Ramanujan J., 2018, **46**(1), 189–200.
[63] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, On rational bounds for the gamma function, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 210, 17 pages.
[64] T.-H. Zhao and Y.-M. Chu, A class of logarithmically completely monotonic functions associated with gamma function, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 392431, 11 pages.
[65] T.-H. Zhao, Y.-M. Chu and H. Wang, Logarithmically complete monotonicity properties relating to the gamma function, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 896483, 13 pages.
[66] T.-R. Huang, B.-W. Han, X.-Y. Ma and Y.-M. Chu, Optimal bounds for the generalized Euler-Mascheronic constant, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 118, 9 pages.
[67] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, On approximating the error function, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(2), 469–479.
[68] C. C. Maican, Integral Evaluations Using the Gamma and Beta Functions and Elliptic Integrals in Engineering, International Press, Cambridge, 2005.
[69] Zh.-H. Yang, W. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp Gautschi inequality for parameter $0 < p < 1$ with applications, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **20**(4), 1107–1120.
[70] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, An optimal double inequality between Seiffert and geoemtric means, J. Appl. Math., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 261237, 6 pages.

[71] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and M.-K. Wang, Sharp power mean bounds for the combination of Seiffert and geoemtric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 108920, 12 pages.
[72] B.-Y. Long and Y.-M. Chu, Optimal power mean bounds for the weighted geometric mean of classical means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 905697, 6 pages.
[73] Y.-M. Chu, B.-Y. Long and B.-Y. Liu, Bounds of the Neuman-Sándor mean using power and identric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2013, **2013**, Article ID 832591, 6 pages.
[74] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-F. Qiu, Some comparison inequalities for generalized Muirhead and identric means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 295620, 10 pages.
[75] M.-K. Wang, Z.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, An double inequality between geometric and identric means, Appl. Math. Lett., 2012, **25**(3), 471–475.
[76] Zh.-H. Yang and Y.-M. Chu, On approximating the modified Bessel function of the first kind and Toader-Qi mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2016, **2016**, Article 40, 21 pages.
[77] Zh.-H. Yang and Y.-M. Chu, A sharp lower bound for Toader-Qi mean with applications, J. Funct. Spaces, 2016, **2016**, Article ID 4165601, 5 pages.
[78] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-Q. Song, Sharp bounds for Toader-Qi mean in terms of logarithmic and identric means, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2016, **19**(2), 721–730.
[79] W.-M. Qian, X.-H. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for the Toader-Qi mean in terms of harmonic and geometric means, J. Math. Inequal., 2017, **11**(1), 121–127.
[80] G. D. Anderson, M. K. Vamanamurthy and M. Vuorinen, Conformal Invariants, Inequalities, and Quasiconformal Maps, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1997.
[81] G. Pólya and G. Szegő, Problems and Theorems in Analysis I, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1998.
[82] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, Accurate approximations for the complete elliptic of the second kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2016, **438**(2), 875–888.
[83] M. Biernacki and J. Krzyż, On the monotonicity of certain functionals in the theory of analytic functions, Ann. Univ. Mariae Curie-Skłodowska. Sect. A, 1955, **9**, 135–147.
[84] S. Ponnusamy and M. Vuorinen, Asymptotic expansions and inequalities for hypergeometric functions, Mathematika, 1997, **44**(2), 278–301.
[85] V. R. Thiruvenkatachar and T. S. Nanjundiah, Inequalities concerning Bessel functions and orghogonal polynomials, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci., Sect. A, 1951, **33**, 373–384.

Wen-Mao Qian, [1]College of Science, Hunan City University, Yiyang 413000, Hunan, China; [2]School of Continuing Education, Huzhou Vocational and Technological College, Huzhou 313000, Zhejiang, China
E-mail address: qwm661977@126.com

Wen Zhang, [3]Friedman Brain Institute, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, NY 10029, USA
E-mail address: zhang.wen81@gmail.com

Yu-Ming Chu (Corresponding author),[4]Department of Mathematics, Huzhou University, Huzhou 413000, Zhejiang, China
E-mail address: chuyuming2005@126.com

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Symmetric identities for Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function and higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler polynomials

C. S. Ryoo

Department of Mathematics, Hannam University, Daejeon 306-791, Korea

Abstract : In this paper we investigate some interesting symmetric identities for multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function and higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler polynomials in complex field.

Key words : Symmetric properties, power sums, Euler numbers and polynomials, multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function, higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler numbers and polynomials.

2000 Mathematics Subject Classification : 11B68, 11S40, 11S80.

1. Introduction

Euler numbers and polynomials possess many interesting properties and arising in many areas of mathematics, mathematical physics and statistical physics. Many mathematicians have studied in the area of the q- extension of Euler numbers and polynomials(see [1-10]). Y. He studied several identities of symmetry for Carlitz's q-Bernoulli numbers and polynomials in complex field(see [2]). D. Kim *et al.*[3] derived some identities of symmetry for (h,q)-extension of higher-order Euler numbers and polynomials. D. V. Dolgy *et al.*[1] derived some identities of symmetry for higher-order generalized q-Euler polynomials. In this paper, we present a systemic study of the generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler numbers and polynomials of higher-order by using the multiple twisted(h,q)-l-function. Throughout this paper, the notations $\mathbb{N},\mathbb{Z},\mathbb{R}$, and $\mathbb{C}$ denote the sets of positive integers, integers, real numbers, and complex numbers, respectively, and $\mathbb{Z}_+ := \mathbb{N}\cup\{0\}$. We assume that $q\in\mathbb{C}$ with $|q|<1$. Throughout this paper we use the notation:

$$[x]_q = \frac{1-q^x}{1-q} \text{ (cf. [1, 2, 3, 5]) }.$$

Note that $\lim_{q\to 1}[x] = x$. Let χ be a Dirichlet character with conductor $d\in\mathbb{N}$ with $d\equiv 1 \pmod 2$ and ε be the p^N-th root of unity(see [8, 9, 10]). T. Kim introduced the multiple q-Euler zeta function which interpolates higher-order q-Euler polynomials at negative integers as follows(see [4, 5]):

$$\zeta_{q,r}(s,x) = [2]_q^r \sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_r=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^r m_j} q^{\sum_{j=1}^r m_j}}{[m_1+\cdots+m_r+x]_q^s}, \tag{1}$$

where $s\in\mathbb{C}$ and $x\in\mathbb{R}$, with $x\neq 0,-1,-2,\ldots$.

Recently, D. V. Dolgy *et al.*[1] considered some symmetric identities for higher-order generalized q-Euler polynomials. The generalized Euler polynomials of order $r\in\mathbb{N}$ attached to χ are also defined by the generating function:

$$\left(2\sum_{l=0}^{d-1} \frac{\chi(l)(-1)^l e^{(x+l)t}}{e^{dt}+1}\right)^r = \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} E_{m,\chi}^{(r)}(x)\frac{t^m}{m!}. \tag{2}$$

When $x=0$, $E_{n,\chi}^{(r)} = E_{n,\chi}^{(r)}(0)$ are called the generalized Euler numbers $E_{n,\chi}^{(r)}$ attached to χ.

For $h \in \mathbb{Z}, \alpha, k \in \mathbb{N}$, and $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$, we introduced the higher order twisted q-Euler polynomials with weight α as follows(see [7]):

$$\widetilde{E}_{n,q,\varepsilon}^{(\alpha)}(h,k|x) = \frac{[2]_q^k}{(1-q^\alpha)^n} \sum_{l=0}^{n} \binom{n}{l} (-1)^l \frac{q^{\alpha l x}}{(1+\varepsilon q^{\alpha l+h}) \cdots (1+\varepsilon q^{\alpha l+h-k+1})}.$$

In the special case, $x = 0$, $\widetilde{E}_{n,q,\varepsilon}^{(\alpha)}(h,k|0) = \widetilde{E}_{n,q,\varepsilon}^{(\alpha)}(h,k)$ are called the higher-order twisted q-Euler numbers with weight α.

We consider the higher order generalized q-Euler polynomials of order r attached to χ twisted by ramified roots of unity as follows(see [8]):

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_{n,\chi,\zeta,q}^{(r)}(x) \frac{t^n}{n!} = 2^r \sum_{m_1,\ldots,m_r=0}^{\infty} (-\zeta)^{\sum_{j=0}^{r} m_j} \left(\prod_{i=1}^{r} \chi(m_i) \right) e^{[x+\sum_{j=1}^{r} m_j]_q t}.$$

In the special case $x = 0$, the sequence $E_{n,\chi,\zeta,q}^{(r)}(0) = E_{n,\chi,\zeta,q}^{(r)}$ are called the n-th generalized q-Euler numbers of order r attached to χ twisted by ramified roots of unity.

As is well known, the higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler polynomials $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(x)$ attached to χ are defined by the following generating function to be

$$\begin{aligned}\widetilde{F}_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(t,x) = [2]_q^k & \sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^{m_1+\cdots+m_k} q^{\sum_{j=1}^{k}(h-j+1)m_j} \varepsilon^{m_1+\cdots+m_k} \\ & \times \left(\prod_{j=1}^{k} \chi(m_j) \right) e^{[m_1+\cdots+m_k+x]_q t} \\ = & \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(x) \frac{t^n}{n!},\end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

where $h \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $k \in \mathbb{N}$. When $x = 0, E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)} = E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(0)$ are called the higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler numbers $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}$ attached to χ. Observe that if $q \to 1, \varepsilon \to 1$, then $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)} \to E_{n,\chi}^{(k)}$ and $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(x) \to E_{n,\chi}^{(k)}(x)$. By using (3) and Cauchy product, we have

$$E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(x) = \sum_{l=0}^{n} \binom{n}{l} q^{lx} E_{l,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)} [x]_q^{n-l} = (q^x E_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)} + [x]_q)^n, \tag{4}$$

with the usual convention about replacing $(E_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)})^n$ by $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}$.

By using complex integral and (3), we can also obtain the Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} l_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(s,x) &= \frac{1}{\Gamma(s)} \int_0^\infty \widetilde{F}_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(-t,x) t^{s-1} dt \\ &= [2]_q^k \sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^{k} m_j} \left(\prod_{j=1}^{k} \chi(m_j) \right) q^{\sum_{j=1}^{k}(h-j+1)m_j} \varepsilon^{\sum_{j=1}^{k} m_j}}{[m_1+\cdots+m_k+x]_q^s}, \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

where $s \in \mathbb{C}$ and $x \in \mathbb{R}$, with $x \neq 0, -1, -2, \ldots$.

By using Cauchy residue theorem, the value of Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function at negative integers is given explicitly by the following theorem:

Theorem 1. Let $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$. We obtain

$$l_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(-n,x) = E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(x).$$

The purpose of this paper is to obtain some interesting identities of the power sums and the higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler polynomials $E^{(h,k)}_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}(x)$ attached to χ using the symmetric properties for Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function. In this paper, if we take $\chi^0=1, \varepsilon=1$, then [3] is the special case of this paper. If we take $\varepsilon=1$ in all equations of this article, then [1] are the special case of our results.

2. Symmetry identities for Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function

In this section, by using the similar method of [1, 2, 3], expect for obvious modifications, we investigate some symmetric identities for higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler polynomials $E^{(h,k)}_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}(x)$ attached to χ using the symmetric properties for Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function. We assume that χ is a Dirichlet character with conductor $d\in\mathbb{N}$ with $d\equiv 1 \pmod 2$ and ε be the p^N-th root of unity. Let $w_1,w_2\in\mathbb{N}$ with $w_1\equiv 1 \pmod 2$, $w_2\equiv 1 \pmod 2$. For $h\in\mathbb{Z}, k\in\mathbb{N}$ and $n\in\mathbb{Z}_+$, we obtain certain symmetry identities for Dirichlet-type multiple twisted (h,q)-l-function.

Observe that $[xy]_q=[x]_{q^y}[y]_q$ for any $x,y\in\mathbb{C}$. In (5), we derive next result by substitute $w_2x+\dfrac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)$ for x in and replace q and ε by q^{w_1} and ε^{w_1}, respectively.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{1}{[2]^k_{q^{w_1}}} l^{(h,k)}_{\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}(s, w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k))\\
&=\sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}\left(\prod_{j=1}^k\chi(m_j)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k(h-j+1)m_j}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}}{\left[\dfrac{w_1(m_1+\cdots+m_k)+w_1w_2x+w_2(j_1+\cdots+j_k)}{w_1}\right]^s_{q^{w_1}}}\\
&=\sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}\left(\prod_{j=1}^k\chi(m_j)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k(h-j+1)m_j}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}}{\dfrac{[w_1(m_1+\cdots+m_k)+w_1w_2x+w_2(j_1+\cdots+j_k)]^s_q}{[w_1]^s_q}}\\
&=[w_1]^s_q\sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty}\sum_{i_1,\cdots,i_k=0}^{dw_2-1}\frac{(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}\left(\prod_{j=1}^k\chi(m_j)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k(h-j+1)m_j}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}}{[w_1(m_1+\cdots+m_k)+w_1w_2x+w_2(j_1+\cdots+j_k)]^s_q}\\
&=[w_1]^s_q\sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty}\sum_{i_1,\cdots,i_k=0}^{dw_2-1}(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}(-1)^{\sum_{j=1}^k i_j}\left(\prod_{j=1}^k\chi(i_j)\right)\\
&\quad\times q^{dw_1w_2\sum_{j=1}^k(h-j+1)m_j}q^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k(h-j+1)i_j}\varepsilon^{dw_1w_2\sum_{j=1}^k m_j}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{j=1}^k i_j}\\
&\quad\times\left([w_1w_2(x+dm_1+\cdots+dm_k)+w_1(i_1+\cdots+i_k)+w_2(j_1+\cdots+j_k)]^s_q\right)^{-1}
\end{aligned}\tag{6}$$

Thus, from (6), we can derive the following equation.

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{[w_2]^s_q}{[2]^k_{q^{w_1}}}\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times l^{(h,k)}_{\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}(s,w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k))\\
&=[w_1]^s_q[w_2]^s_q\sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty}\sum_{i_1,\cdots,i_k=0}^{dw_2-1}\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k(j_l+i_l+m_l)}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(i_l)\right)\\
&\quad\times q^{dw_1w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)m_l}q^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)i_l}q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\\
&\quad\times\varepsilon^{dw_1w_2\sum_{l=1}^k m_l}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k i_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\quad\times\left([w_1w_2(x+dm_1+\cdots+dm_k)+w_1(i_1+\cdots+i_k)+w_2(j_1+\cdots+j_k)]^s_q\right)^{-1}
\end{aligned}\tag{7}$$

By using the same method as (7), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{[w_1]_q^s}{[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k}\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_2-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times l_{\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}(s,w_1x+\frac{w_1}{w_2}(j_1+\cdots+j_k))\\
&=[w_1]_q^s[w_2]_q^s\sum_{m_1,\cdots,m_k=0}^{\infty}\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_2-1}\sum_{i_1,\cdots,i_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k(j_l+i_l+m_l)}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(i_l)\right)\\
&\quad\times q^{dw_1w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)m_l}q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)i_l}q^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\\
&\quad\times \varepsilon^{dw_1w_2\sum_{l=1}^k m_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k i_l}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\quad\times\left([w_1w_2(x+dm_1+\cdots+dm_k)+w_1(j_1+\cdots+j_k)+w_2(i_1+\cdots+i_k)]_q^s\right)^{-1}
\end{aligned}\tag{8}$$

Therefore, by (7) and (8), we have the following theorem.

Theorem 2. Let $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $w_1 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$, $w_2 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$. For $h \in \mathbb{Z}$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&[w_2]_q^s[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times l_{\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}\left(s,w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)\\
&[w_1]_q^s[2]_{q^{w_1}}^k\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_2-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times l_{\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}\left(s,w_1x+\frac{w_1}{w_2}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)
\end{aligned}\tag{9}$$

By (9) and Theorem 1, we obtain the following theorem.

Theorem 3. Let $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $w_1 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$, $w_2 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$. For $h \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&[w_2]_q^s[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times E_{n,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}\left(w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)\\
&=[w_1]_q^s[2]_{q^{w_1}}^k\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_2-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times E_{n,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}\left(w_1x+\frac{w_1}{w_2}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right).
\end{aligned}\tag{10}$$

From (4), we note that

$$E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(x+y)=(q^{x+y}E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}+[x+y]_q)^n=\sum_{i=0}^n\binom{n}{i}q^{xi}E_{i,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(y)[x]_q^{n-i}.\tag{11}$$

with the usual convention about replacing $(E_{\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)})^n$ by $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}$.

By (11), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}E_{n,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}\left(w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)\\
&=\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\times\sum_{i=0}^n\binom{n}{i}q^{w_2i(j_1+\cdots+j_k)}E_{i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(w_2x)\left[\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right]_{q^{w_1}}^{n-i}\\
&=\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\times\sum_{i=0}^n\binom{n}{i}q^{w_2(n-i)\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(w_2x)\left[\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right]_{q^{w_1}}^{i}
\end{aligned}
\tag{12}
$$

Hence we have the following theorem.

Theorem 4. Let $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $w_1 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$, $w_2 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$. For $h \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}E_{n,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}\left(w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)\\
&=\sum_{i=0}^n\binom{n}{i}[w_2]_q^i[w_1]_q^{-i}E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(w_2x)\\
&\times\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(n+h-l-i+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}[j_1\cdots+j_k]_{q^{w_2}}^i.
\end{aligned}
$$

For each integer $n \geq 0$, let

$$
\mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(w)=\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{w-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{\sum_{l=1}^k(n+h-l-i+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}[j_1\cdots+j_k]_q^i.
$$

The above sum $\mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}(w)$ is called the alternating generalized (h,q)-power sums.

By Theorem 4, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
&[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k[w_1]_q^n\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_1-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_2\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times E_{n,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}\left(w_2x+\frac{w_2}{w_1}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)\\
&=[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k\sum_{i=0}^n\binom{n}{i}[w_2]_q^i[w_1]_q^{n-i}E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(w_2x)\mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}(dw_1)
\end{aligned}
\tag{13}
$$

By using the same method as in (13), we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
&[2]_{q^{w_1}}^k[w_2]_q^n\sum_{j_1,\cdots,j_k=0}^{dw_2-1}(-1)^{\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\left(\prod_{l=1}^k\chi(j_l)\right)q^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k(h-l+1)j_l}\varepsilon^{w_1\sum_{l=1}^k j_l}\\
&\qquad\times E_{n,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}\left(w_1x+\frac{w_1}{w_2}(j_1+\cdots+j_k)\right)\\
&=[2]_{q^{w_1}}^k\sum_{i=0}^n\binom{n}{i}[w_1]_q^i[w_2]_q^{n-i}E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}(w_1x)\mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(dw_2)
\end{aligned}
\tag{14}
$$

Therefore, by (13), (14), and Theorem 3, we have the following theorem.

Theorem 5. Let $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $w_1 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$, $w_2 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$. For $h \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k \sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{i} [w_2]_q^i [w_1]_q^{n-i} E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(w_2 x) \mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}(dw_1) \\
&= [2]_{q^{w_1}}^k \sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{i} [w_1]_q^i [w_2]_q^{n-i} E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}(w_1 x) \mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(dw_2).
\end{aligned}$$

By Theorem 5, we obtain the interesting symmetric identity for the higher-order generalized twisted (h,q)-Euler numbers $E_{n,\chi,q,\varepsilon}^{(h,k)}$ in complex field.

Corollary 6. Let $w_1, w_2 \in \mathbb{N}$ with $w_1 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$, $w_2 \equiv 1 \pmod 2$. For $h \in \mathbb{Z}, k \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n \in \mathbb{Z}_+$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&[2]_{q^{w_2}}^k \sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{i} [w_2]_q^i [w_1]_q^{n-i} \mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}(dw_1) E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)} \\
&= [2]_{q^{w_1}}^k \sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{i} [w_1]_q^i [w_2]_q^{n-i} \mathcal{S}_{n,i,\chi,q^{w_1},\varepsilon^{w_1}}^{(h,k)}(dw_2) E_{n-i,\chi,q^{w_2},\varepsilon^{w_2}}^{(h,k)}.
\end{aligned}$$

REFERENCES

1. D. V. Dolgy, D.S. Kim, T.G. Kim, J.J. Seo, Identities of Symmetry for Higher-Order Generalized q-Euler Polynomials, Abstract and Applied Analysis, 2014(2014), Article ID 286239, 6 pages.
2. Yuan He, Symmetric identities for Carlitz's q-Bernoulli numbers and polynomials, Adv. Difference Equ., 246(2013), 10 pages.
3. D. Kim, T. Kim, J.-J. Seo, Identities of symmetric for (h,q)-extension of higher-order Euler polynomials, Applied Mathemtical Sciences 8 (2014), 3799-3808.
4. T. Kim, New approach to q-Euler polynomials of higher order, Russ. J. Math. Phys. 17(2010), 218-225.
5. T. Kim, Barnes type multiple q-zeta function and q-Euler polynomials, J. phys. A : Math. Theor. 43(2010) 255201(11pp).
6. H. Y. Lee, N. S. Jung, J. Y. Kang, C. S. Ryoo, Some identities on the higher-order-twisted q-Euler numbers and polynomials with weight α, Adv. Difference Equ., 2012:21(2012), 10pp.
7. E.-J. Moon, S.-H. Rim, J.-H. Jin, S.-J. Lee, On the symmetric properties of higher-order twisted q-Euler numbers and polynomials, Adv. Difference Equ., 2010, Art ID 765259, 8pp.
8. C. S. Ryoo, On the generalized Barnes type multiple q-Euler polynomials twisted by ramified roots of unity, Proc. Jangjeon Math. Soc. 13(2010), 255-263.
9. C. S. Ryoo, A note on the weighted q-Euler numbers and polynomials, Adv. Stud. Contemp. Math., 21(2011), 47-54.
10. Y. Simsek, q-analogue of twisted l-series and q-twisted Euler numbers, Journal of Number Theory, 110(2005), 267-278.

An efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt method for systems of nonlinear equations*

Liang Chen†

School of Mathematical Sciences,
Huaibei Normal University, Huaibei 235000, P.R. China

Yanfang Ma

School of Computer Science and Technology,
Huaibei Normal University, Huaibei, Anhui 235000, PR China

Abstract

In this paper, we propose an efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt method for systems of nonlinear equations. At every iteration, the efficient m-step LM method computes not only the classical LM step, but also $m-1$ approximate LM steps with frozen $(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I)^{-1} J_k^T$. Also, we employ $m-1$ line searches for $m-1$ approximate LM steps for better numerical performance. Under the local error bound condition which is weaker than nonsingularity, the efficient m-step LM method has been proved to have $(m+1)$th convergence order. The global convergence has also been given by trust region technique. Numerical results show that the efficient m-step LM method is efficient and could save many calculations of the Jacobian especially for large scale problems.

Keywords: Unconstrained optimization; Systems of nonlinear equations; Levenberg-Marquardt method; Trust region

MSC2010: 65K05; 90C30

1 Introduction

It's a well-known problem in science and engineering that is to find the solutions of systems of nonlinear equations

$$F(x) = 0, \tag{1}$$

where $F : D \subset \mathrm{R}^n \to \mathrm{R}^n$ is continuously differentiable function. Due to the nonlinearity of $F(x)$, (1) may have no solutions. Throughout the paper, we let that the solution set of (1) is nonempty and denote it by X^*, and in all cases $\|\cdot\|$ refers to the 2-norm.

There are many numerical methods to approximate the solutions of (1) because the exact solutions is difficult to find. A classical numerical method is Newton method which computes the trial step

$$d_k^N = -J_k^{-1} F_k$$

at every iteration, where $F_k = F(x_k)$ and $J_k = F'(x_k)$ is the Jacobian. And the Newton method has quadratic rate of convergence under the condition that $J(x)$ is Lipschitz continuous and nonsingular at the solution of (1). However, the Newton method will be failed when J_k is singular or near singular. To overcome these disadvantages, a large number of researchers have presented many modifications of Newton

*The work is supported by the Anhui Provincial Natural Science Foundation (1508085MA14, 1708085MF159), the Natural Science Foundation of the Anhui Higher Education Institutions (KJ2017A375) and the Major Teaching Reform Project of Anhui Higher Education Revitalization Plan (2014ZDJY058).

†Corresponding author. Email: clmyf2@163.com, chenliang1977@gmail.com. Tel: +86 157 5613 7533

method [1]. One of them is the Levenberg-Marquardt method (LM) [2, 3], which is a famous numerical method with computing the linear equation

$$\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d = -J_k^T F_k \tag{2}$$

to obtain the LM trail step

$$d_k = -\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_k \tag{3}$$

at every iteration, where $\lambda_k \geqslant 0$ is the LM parameter. It is well-known that the LM method has quadratic convergence as the Newton method if the Jacobian matrix is nonsingular and Lipschitz continuous at the solution. A large number of researchers have focused on this system and many efficient solution techniques are available [4–7].

As we all known, the cost of Jacobian computations is expensive when $F(x)$ is complicated or n is quite large. Recently, to save Jacobian calculations and achieve a fast convergence rate, Fan [8] presented a modified Levenberg-Marquardt method (MLM) with cubic convergence. At every iteration, the MLM method solves not only the linear equations (2) to obtain the LM step (3), but also the linear equations

$$\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d = -J_k^T F_{k,1}$$

to obtain the approximate LM step

$$d_{k,1} = -\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,1} \tag{4}$$

with $F_{k,1} = F\left(x_{k,1}\right)$, $x_{k,1} = x_k + d_k$, $\lambda_k = \mu_k \left\|F_k\right\|^\delta$, $\mu_k > 0$ and $\delta \in [1, 2]$, and the trial step is

$$s_k^{MLM} = d_k + d_{k,1}.$$

Fan use $\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T$ in stead of

$$\left(J\left(x_{k,1}\right)^T J\left(x_{k,1}\right) + \mu_{k+1} \left\|F\left(x_{k,1}\right)\right\|^\delta I\right)^{-1} J\left(x_{k,1}\right)^T \tag{5}$$

in (4), which does not involve the calculation of $J\left(x_{k,1}\right)$. Since J_k has been used in (3), the cost of Jacobian calculations will be saved.

Similarly, to save more Jacobian calculations, based on the MLM method, Yang [9] presented a high-order Levenberg-Marquardt method (HLM) with biquadratic convergence by solving another linear equations

$$\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d = -J_k^T F_{k,2} \tag{6}$$

to obtain another approximate LM step

$$d_{k,2} = -\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,2} \tag{7}$$

with $F_{k,2} = F\left(x_{k,2}\right)$, $x_{k,2} = x_{k,1}+d_{k,1}$, $\lambda_k = \mu_k \left\|F_k\right\|^\delta$, $\mu_k > 0$ and $\delta \in [1, 2]$. Yang still use $\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T$ in stead of (5) in (4), $\left(J\left(x_{k,2}\right)^T J\left(x_{k,2}\right) + \mu_{k+2} \left\|F\left(x_{k,2}\right)\right\|^\delta I\right)^{-1} J\left(x_{k,2}\right)^T$ in (7) respectively, which does not need to compute $J\left(x_{k,1}\right)$ and $J\left(x_{k,2}\right)$. The trial step of the HLM method is

$$s_k^{HLM} = d_k + d_{k,1} + d_{k,2}.$$

Furthermore, to save more Jacobian calculations and achieve a faster convergence rate, Fan [10] presented a Shamanskii-like Levenberg-Marquardt (SLM) method with $(m+1)$th convergence by solving $m-1$ linear equations

$$\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d = -J_k^T F_{k,i} \quad \text{with} \quad i = 1, \cdots, m-1 \tag{8}$$

to obtain $m-1$ approximate LM steps

$$d_{k,i} = -\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,i} \tag{9}$$

where $F_{k,i} = F(x_{k,i})$, $x_{k,i} = x_{k,i-1} + d_{k,i-1}$ with $x_{k,0} = x_k$, $d_{k,0} = d_k$, $\lambda_k = \mu_k \|F_k\|^\delta$, $\mu_k > 0$ and $\delta \in [1,2]$. Fan still use $\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T$ in stead of $\left(J(x_{k,i})^T J(x_{k,i}) + \mu_{k+i} \|F(x_{k,i})\|^\delta I\right)^{-1} J(x_{k,i})^T$ in (9), which does not need to compute $J(x_{k,i})$ $(i = 1, 2, \cdots, m-1)$. The trial step of the SLM method is

$$s_k^{SLM} = d_{k,0} + d_{k,1} + \cdots + d_{k,m-1} = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} d_{k,i}. \tag{10}$$

If we consider the MLM method as two-step Levenberg-Marquardt method and the HLM method as three-step Levenberg-Marquardt method respectively, then, the Shamanskii-like Levenberg-Marquardt method can be considered as m-step Levenberg-Marquardt method. Also, it is easy to see that $\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T$ is computed in all of the classical LM step (3) and the approximate LM step (4), (7), (9) respectively. So, we can consider $\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T$ is frozen in the two-step LM method, three-step LM method and m-step LM method.

To accelerate the MLM method and for better numerical performance, Fan [11] proposed an accelerated version of the MLM (AMLM) method by employing a line search for the approximate LM step $d_{k,1}$ and computed the trial step by

$$s_k^{AMLM} = d_{k,0} + \alpha_{k,1} d_{k,1}, \tag{11}$$

where $\alpha_{k,1} \in [1, \hat{\alpha}_1]$ is step size with $\hat{\alpha}_1 > 1$ is a positive constant. For the same purpose, based on the AMLM method, Chen [12] compute the linear equation (6) with $x_{k,2} = x_{k,1} + \alpha_{k,1} d_{k,1}$ to obtain an approximate LM step $\bar{d}_{k,2}$. By employing another line search for the approximate LM step $\bar{d}_{k,2}$, Chen presented a new modified Levenberg-Marquardt (NMLM) method. The trial step of the NMLM method is

$$s_k^{NMLM} = d_{k,0} + \alpha_{k,1} d_{k,1} + \alpha_{k,2} \bar{d}_{k,2}, \tag{12}$$

where $\alpha_{k,2} \in [1, \hat{\alpha}_2]$ is step size with $\hat{\alpha}_2 > 1$ is a positive constant.

Now, motivated by (10), (11) and (12), we will employ $m-1$ line searches for approximate LM step $d_{k,i}$ by solving linear equation (8) with $x_{k,i} = x_{k,i-1} + \alpha_{k,i-1} d_{k,i-1}$ and present an efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt method with trial step as

$$s_k = d_{k,0} + \alpha_{k,1} d_{k,1} + \cdots + \alpha_{k,m-1} d_{k,m-1}, \tag{13}$$

where $\alpha_{k,i} \in [1, \hat{\alpha}]$ are step size with $\hat{\alpha} > 1$ $(i = 1, \cdots, m-1)$ is a positive constants. It is quite clear that the above new LM method will reduce to the classical Levenberg-Marquardt method while $m = 1$, the AMLM method while $m = 2$ and the NMLM method while $m = 3$ respectively.

We will organize the rest of this paper as follow: In Section 2, we first give the new modified Levenberg-Marquardt method which is called efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm. In Section 3, we derive the global convergence of the new algorithm by using trust region technique. Then we derive the convergence order of the algorithm under the local error bound condition in Section 4. Finally, some numerical results of the new algorithm are given in Section 5.

2 The efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm

In this section, we first present the efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm by using trust region technique, then prove the global convergence.

2.1 The motivation

We take

$$\Phi(x) = \|F(x)\|^2 \tag{14}$$

as the merit function for (1). It is easy to see that $d_{k,i}$ $(i = 0, \cdots, m-1)$ is not only the minimizer of the convex minimization problem

$$\min_{d \in \mathrm{R}^n} \|F_{k,i} + J_k d\|^2 + \lambda_k \|d\|^2 \triangleq \varphi_{k,i}(d), \tag{15}$$

but also a solution of the trust region problem

$$\begin{aligned} &\min_{d\in \mathrm{R}^n} \|F_{k,i} + J_k d\|^2 , \\ &s.t. \quad \|d\| \leqslant \Delta_{k,i}, \end{aligned} \tag{16}$$

where $\Delta_{k,i} = \|d_{k,i}\| = \left\| -\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,i} \right\|$. From the result given by Powell in [13], we have

$$\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \geqslant \left\|J_k^T F_{k,i}\right\| \min \left\{ \|d_{k,i}\| , \frac{\left\|J_k^T F_{k,i}\right\|}{\left\|J_k^T J_k\right\|} \right\}. \tag{17}$$

Moreover, similar to Fan proposed in [11], if $d_{k,i}$ is a descent direction of the merit function $\Phi(x)$ at $x_{k,i}$, then more reduction of $\Phi(x)$ at $x_{k,i}$ could be expected. So we may perform many line searches at $x_{k,i}$ along $d_{k,i}$ by solving the problem

$$\min_{\alpha>0} \|F(x_{k,i} + \alpha d_{k,i})\|^2 .$$

By Taylor extension, replace $J(x_{k,i})$ with J_k for save Jacobian calculations, the above problem could be approximated by

$$\min_{\alpha>0} \|F(x_{k,i}) + \alpha J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 .$$

The above problem is equivalent to

$$\max_{\alpha>0} \|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \triangleq \phi(\alpha), \tag{18}$$

where

$$\phi(\alpha) = -d_{k,i}^T J_k^T J_k d_{k,i} \alpha^2 + 2 d_{k,i}^T \left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d_{k,i} \alpha$$

is a quadratic function of α, and attains its maximum at

$$\tilde{\alpha}_{k,i} = \frac{d_{k,i}^T \left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d_{k,i}}{d_{k,i}^T J_k^T J_k d_{k,i}} = 1 + \frac{\lambda_k d_{k,i}^T d_{k,i}}{d_{k,i}^T J_k^T J_k d_{k,i}},$$

provided that $J_k d_{k,i} \neq 0$. We bound $\tilde{\alpha}_{k,i} \in [1, \hat{\alpha}]$ with $\hat{\alpha} > 1$ is a positive constant because of $\tilde{\alpha}_{k,i}$ may be very large if $J_k d_{k,i}$ is close to 0. The problem (18) now is equivalent to

$$\max_{\alpha\in[1,\hat{\alpha}]} \|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \triangleq \phi(\alpha). \tag{19}$$

And we have

$$\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \geqslant \|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \tag{20}$$

2.2 The algorithm

Now, we define the actual reduction of $\Phi(x)$ at the kth iteration as

$$\mathrm{Ared}_k = \|F_k\|^2 - \|F(x_k + d_{k,0} + \alpha_{k,1} d_{k,1} + \cdots + \alpha_{k,m-1} d_{k,m-1})\|^2 . \tag{21}$$

where $d_{k,i}$ are computed by (9). Note that the predicted reduction cannot be defined as usual definition $\|F_k\|^2 - \|F_k + J_k (d_{k,0} + \alpha_{k,1} d_{k,1} + \cdots + \alpha_{k,m-1} d_{k,m-1})\|^2$, because it cannot be proven to be nonnegative, which is required for the global convergence in the trust region method. Hence, we define the new modified predicted reduction as

$$\mathrm{Pred}_k = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \left(\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \right), \tag{22}$$

with $\alpha_{k,0} = 1$.

Lemma 2.1. *Let the predicted reduction is defined by (22), then*

$$\mathrm{Pred}_k \geqslant \left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| \min\left\{\|d_{k,0}\|, \frac{\left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\|}{\left\|J_k^T J_k\right\|}\right\}, \tag{23}$$

where $m \geqslant 1$.

Proof. From (17) and (20), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{Pred} &= \sum_{i=0}^{m-1}\left(\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2\right) \\
&\geqslant \sum_{i=0}^{m-1}\left(\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|^2\right) \\
&\geqslant \sum_{i=0}^{m-1}\left(\left\|J_k^T F_{k,i}\right\| \min\left\{\|d_{k,i}\|, \frac{\left\|J_k^T F_{k,i}\right\|}{\left\|J_k^T J_k\right\|}\right\}\right) \\
&\geqslant \left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| \min\left\{\|d_{k,0}\|, \frac{\left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\|}{\left\|J_k^T J_k\right\|}\right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Then (23) holds. The proof is completed. □

Now, we present the efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm.

Algorithm 2.2 (The efficient m-step Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm).
Input: Given $x_0 \in \mathrm{R}^n$, $\mu_1 > \mu > 0$, $0 < p_0 \leqslant p_1 \leqslant p_2 < 1$, $1 \leqslant \delta \leqslant 2$, $\varepsilon > 0$, $\hat{\alpha} > 1$ **and** $m \geqslant 1$.

Step 1. Set $x_{k,0} = x_k$, $d_{k,0} = d_k$ **and** $k := 0$.

Step 2. Compute $F_k = F_{k,0} = F(x_{k,0})$, $J_k = J(x_{k,0})$. **If** $\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| < \varepsilon$, **then stop. Otherwise compute**

$$\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right) d = -J_k^T F_{k,i} \quad \textbf{with} \quad \lambda_k = \mu_k \|F_k\|^\delta, \tag{24}$$

where $x_{k,i} = x_{k,i-1} + \alpha_{k,i-1} d_{k,i-1}$ **to obtain** $d_{k,i}$, $i = 0, 1, \cdots, m-1$. **Set**

$$s_k = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \alpha_{k,i} d_{k,i}, \tag{25}$$

where $\alpha_{k,0} = 1$, $\alpha_{k,i}$ $(i = 1, \cdots, m-1)$ **is the step size obtained by solving (19).**

Step 3. Compute $r_k = \mathrm{Ared}_k / \mathrm{Pred}_k$. **Set**

$$x_{k+1} = \begin{cases} x_k + s_k, & \textbf{if } r_k \geqslant p_0, \\ x_k, & \textbf{otherwise}. \end{cases} \tag{26}$$

Step 4. Update μ_{k+1} **as**

$$\mu_{k+1} = \begin{cases} 4\mu_k, & \textbf{if } r_k < p_1, \\ \mu_k, & \textbf{if } r_k \in [p_1, p_2], \\ \max\left\{\frac{\mu_k}{4}, \mu\right\}, & \textbf{if } r_k > p_2. \end{cases} \tag{27}$$

Step 5. Set $k = k+1$, **and go to Step 2.**

Remark 2.3. *(a) Notice that,* μ_k *should be no less than a positive constant* μ *to prevent the steps from being too large when the sequence* $\{x_k\}$ *is near the solution.*

(b) Fan set $\delta \in (0, 2]$ *in [11], but here, we still set* $\delta \in [1, 2]$ *as usual in [8–10, 12] for stable and preferable.*

3 The global convergence

To study the global convergence of Algorithm 2.2, we need the following assumptions.

Assumption 3.1. *Let $F(x)$ is continuously differentiable, and both $F(x)$ and its Jacobian $J(x)$ are Lipschitz continuous, i.e., there exist positive constant L_1 and L_2 such that*

$$\|J(y) - J(x)\| \leqslant L_1 \|y - x\|, \quad \forall x, y \in \mathrm{R}^n \tag{28}$$

and

$$\|F(y) - F(x)\| \leqslant L_2 \|y - x\|, \quad \forall x, y \in \mathrm{R}^n. \tag{29}$$

By the Lipschitzness of the Jacobian proposed by (28), we have

$$\|F(y) - F(x) - J(x)(y - x)\| \leqslant L_1 \|y - x\|^2, \quad \forall x, y \in \mathrm{R}^n. \tag{30}$$

Theorem 3.2. *Under the conditions of Assumption 3.1, Algorithm 2.2 will terminates in finite iterations or satisfies*

$$\lim_{k \to \infty} \left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| = 0. \tag{31}$$

Proof. By contradiction, suppose there exist a positive τ and infinite many k such that

$$\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \tau. \tag{32}$$

Let T_1, T_2 be the sets of the indices as follow:

$$T_1 = \left\{k \mid \left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \tau\right\},$$
$$T_2 = \left\{k \mid \left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \frac{\tau}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad x_{k+1} \neq x_k\right\}.$$

It is easy to see that T_1 is infinite. In the following, we will derive the contradictions whether T_2 is finite or infinite.

Case 1: T_2 is finite. Then the set

$$T_3 = \left\{k \mid \left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \tau \quad \text{and} \quad x_{k+1} \neq x_k\right\}$$

is also finite. Let $\tilde{k}$ be the largest index of T_3. Then it is easy to see that $x_{k+1} = x_k$ holds for all $k \in \left\{k > \tilde{k} \mid k \in T_1\right\}$. Define the indices set

$$T_4 = \left\{k > \tilde{k} \mid \left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \tau \quad \text{and} \quad x_{k+1} = x_k\right\}.$$

If $k \in T_4$, we can deduce that $\left\|J_{k+1}^T F_{k+1}\right\| \geqslant \tau$ and $x_{k+2} = x_{k+1}$. Hence, we have $x_{k+1} \in T_4$. By induction, we know that $\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \tau$ and $x_{k+1} = x_k$ hold for all $k > \tilde{k}$, which means $r_k < p_0$. Now, we obtain

$$\lambda_k \to +\infty \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_k \to +\infty \tag{33}$$

and, due to (24), (25) and (27),

$$d_{k,0} = \left\|-\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| \to 0.$$

Moreover, it follows from (29) and (30) that

$$\begin{aligned}\|d_{k,i}\| &= \left\|-\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,i}\right\| \\ &\leqslant \left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| + \left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T J_k \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\| \\ &\quad + L_1 \left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T\right\| \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\|^2 \\ &\leqslant \|d_{k,0}\| + \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\| + \frac{L_1 L_2}{\lambda_k} \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\|^2 \\ &\leqslant \|d_{k,0}\| + \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} \|d_{k,j}\| + \frac{L_1 L_2}{\lambda_k} \left(\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} \|d_{k,j}\|\right)^2\end{aligned}$$

with $i = 1, \cdots, m-1$. Hence, by induction, we obtain

$$\|d_{k,i}\| \leqslant O\left(\|d_{k,0}\|\right). \tag{34}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned}&\|F_{k,i+1}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \\ &\quad = \left(\|F_{k,i+1}\| + \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|\right)\left(\|F_{k,i+1}\| - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|\right) \\ &\quad \leqslant \left(2\left\|F_{k,0} + J_k \sum_{j=0}^{i} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\| + L_1 \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\|^2 + L_1 \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\|^2\right) \\ &\qquad \times \left(L_1 \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\|^2 + L_1 \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} d_{k,j}\right\|^2\right)\end{aligned} \tag{35}$$

with $i = 0, 1, \cdots, m-1$. It's clear that while $i = 0$ and $\alpha_{k,0} = 1$,

$$\|F_{k,1}\|^2 - \|F_{k,0} + J_k d_{k,0}\|^2 \leqslant 2L_1 \|F_{k,0} + J_k d_{k,0}\| \|d_{k,0}\|^2 + L_1^2 \|d_{k,0}\|^4 = O\left(\|d_{k,0}\|^2\right).$$

It follows from (21), (22), (29), (35) and Lemma 2.1 that

$$\begin{aligned}|r_k - 1| &= \left|\frac{\mathrm{Ared}_k - \mathrm{Pred}_k}{\mathrm{Pred}_k}\right| \\ &\leqslant \left|\frac{\sum_{i=0}^{m-1}\left(\|F_{k,i+1}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2\right)}{\sum_{i=0}^{m-1}\left(\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2\right)}\right| \\ &\leqslant \frac{O\left(\|d_{k,0}\|^2\right)}{\left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| \min\left\{\|d_{k,0}\|, \frac{\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\|}{\|J_k^T J_k\|}\right\}} \to 0,\end{aligned}$$

which implies that $r_k \to 1$. In view of the updating rule of μ_k, we know that there exists a positive constant $\bar{\mu} > \mu$ such that $\mu_k < \bar{\mu}$ holds for all sufficiently large k, which is a contradiction to (33) .

Case 2: T_2 is infinite. It follows from (23) and (29) that

$$\begin{aligned}\|F_1\|^2 &\geqslant \sum_k \left(\|F_k\|^2 - \|F_{k+1}\|^2\right) \geqslant \sum_{k\in T_2} \left(\|F_k\|^2 - \|F_{k+1}\|^2\right) \\ &\geqslant \sum_{k\in T_2} p_0 \mathrm{Pred}_k \geqslant \sum_{k\in T_2} p_0 \left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| \min\left\{\|d_{k,0}\|, \frac{\left\|J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\|}{\left\|J_k^T J_k\right\|}\right\} \\ &\geqslant \sum_{k\in T_2} \frac{p_0\tau}{2} \min\left\{\|d_{k,0}\|, \frac{\tau}{2L_2^2}\right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{36}$$

which implies

$$\|d_{k,0}\| \to 0, \quad k \in T_2. \tag{37}$$

Then by the definition of $d_{k,0}$, we have

$$\mu_k \to +\infty, \quad k \in T_2. \tag{38}$$

Moreover, it follows from (28), (29), (34) and (36) that

$$\begin{aligned}&\sum_{k\in T_2} \left|\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| - \left\|J_{k+1}^T F_{k+1}\right\|\right| \\ &\quad\leqslant \sum_{k\in T_2} \left|\left(\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| - \left\|J_k^T F_{k+1}\right\|\right) - \left(\left\|J_{k+1}^T F_{k+1}\right\| - \left\|J_k^T F_{k+1}\right\|\right)\right| \\ &\quad\leqslant \sum_{k\in T_2} \left|L_2 \left\|J_k^T\right\| \|s_k\| - L_1 \|F_{k+1}\| \|s_k\|\right| \\ &\quad\leqslant L_1 L_2 \dot{c} \sum_{k\in T_2} \|d_{k,0}\| < +\infty,\end{aligned}$$

with some constants $\dot{c} > 0$, which together with (32) implies there exists a sufficiently large $\hat{k}$ such that

$$\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \tau \quad \text{and} \quad \sum_{k\in T_2} \left|\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| - \left\|J_{k+1}^T F_{k+1}\right\|\right| < \frac{\tau}{2}.$$

Hence we can derive that $\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| \geqslant \frac{\tau}{2}$ for all $k \geqslant \hat{k}$. Combining (37) with (38), we have

$$\|d_{k,0}\| \to 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_k \to +\infty. \tag{39}$$

In the same way as proved in Case 1, we can also obtain that

$$r_k \to 1.$$

Hence, there exists a positive constant $\bar{\mu}$ such that $\mu_k < \bar{\mu}$ holds for all sufficiently large k, which is contradicted to (39). The proof is completed. □

4 The local convergence

In this section, we assume that $x_k \to x^* \in X^*$ and the sequence $\{x_k\}$ lies on some neighbourhood of x^*, i.e., there exist a positive constant $b_1 < 1$ such that $x \in N(x^*, b_1)$. We give some assumptions which the local convergence theory required.

Assumption 4.1. *(a) $F(x)$ is continuously differentiable, and Jacobian $J(x)$ is Lipschitz continuous on $N(x^*, b_1)$, i.e., there exist a positive constant L_1 such that*

$$\|J(y) - J(x)\| \leqslant L_1 \|y - x\|, \quad \forall x, y \in N(x^*, b_1) = \{x \mid \|x - x^*\| \leqslant b_1\}. \tag{40}$$

(b) $\|F(x)\|$ *provides a local error bound on some neighborhood of* $x^* \in X^*$*, i.e., there exist a positive constant* $c > 0$ *such that*

$$\|F(x)\| \geqslant c \operatorname{dist}(x, X^*), \quad \forall x \in N(x^*, b_1). \tag{41}$$

Since the condition of nonsingularity of $J(x)$ is too strong, the Assumption 4.1 (b) provides a weak local error bound condition, which implies that the converse is not necessarily true [4].

By (40), we have

$$\|F(y) - F(x) - J(x)(y - x)\| \leqslant L_1 \|y - x\|^2, \quad \forall x, y \in N(x^*, b_1), \tag{42}$$

and

$$\|F(y) - F(x)\| \leqslant L_2 \|y - x\|, \quad \forall x, y \in N(x^*, b_1), \tag{43}$$

where L_2 is a positive constant.

There exists a positive constant $\omega > 0$ if $F(x)$ provides a local error bound which proposed by Behling and Iusem in [14], then

$$\operatorname{rank}(J(\tilde{x})) = \operatorname{rank}(J(x^*)), \quad \forall \tilde{x} \in N(x^*, \omega) \cap X^*.$$

Let $b \in (0, 1)$ and $b_1 = \min\{\omega, b\}$. Without loss of generality, we further assume that $x_{k,i}$, $i = 0, 1, \cdots, m-1$ lie in $N\left(x^*, \frac{b_1}{2}\right)$.

In the following, we denote $\bar{x}_k \in X^*$ such that

$$\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| = \operatorname{dist}(x_k, X^*) = \inf_{y \in X^*} \|y - x_k\|.$$

Hence, we have

$$\|\bar{x}_k - x^*\| \leqslant \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \leqslant \| + \|x_k - x^*\| \leqslant 2\|x_k - x^*\| \leqslant b_1,$$

which implies that $\bar{x}_k \in N(x^*, b_1)$.

Lemma 4.2. *Let Assumption 4.1 hold, then*

$$\left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T\right\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{-\frac{\delta}{2}}\right). \tag{44}$$

Proof. Suppose $\operatorname{rank}(J(\bar{x}_k)) = r$ for all $\bar{x}_k \in N(x^*, b_1) \cap X^*$ and the SVD of $J(\bar{x}_k)$ is

$$J(\bar{x}_k) = \bar{U}_k \bar{\Sigma}_k \bar{V}_k^T = \left(\bar{U}_{k,1}, \bar{U}_{k,2}\right) \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\Sigma}_{k,1} & \\ & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \bar{V}_{k,1}^T \\ \bar{V}_{k,2}^T \end{pmatrix} = \bar{U}_{k,1} \bar{\Sigma}_{k,1} \bar{V}_{k,1}^T,$$

where $\bar{\Sigma}_{k,1} = \operatorname{diag}(\bar{\sigma}_{k,1}, \bar{\sigma}_{k,2}, \cdots, \bar{\sigma}_{k,r})$ with $\bar{\sigma}_{k,1} \geqslant \bar{\sigma}_{k,2} \geqslant \cdots \geqslant \bar{\sigma}_{k,r} > 0$. The corresponding SVD of J_k is

$$\begin{aligned} J_k =& U_k \Sigma_k V_k^T = (U_{k,1}, U_{k,2}, U_{k,3}) \begin{pmatrix} \Sigma_{k,1} & & \\ & \Sigma_{k,2} & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} V_{k,1}^T \\ V_{k,2}^T \\ V_{k,3}^T \end{pmatrix} \\ =& U_{k,1} \Sigma_{k,1} V_{k,1}^T + U_{k,2} \Sigma_{k,2} V_{k,2}^T, \end{aligned}$$

where $\Sigma_{k,1} = \operatorname{diag}(\sigma_{k,1}, \sigma_{k,2}, \cdots, \sigma_{k,r})$ with $\sigma_{k,1} \geqslant \sigma_{k,2} \geqslant \cdots \geqslant \sigma_{k,r} > 0$, and $\Sigma_{k,2} = \operatorname{diag}(\sigma_{k,r+1}, \sigma_{k,r+2}, \cdots, \sigma_{k,r+q})$ with $\sigma_{k,r+1} \geqslant \sigma_{k,r+2} \geqslant \cdots \geqslant \sigma_{k,r+q} > 0$. We will neglect the subscript k if the context is clear in the following, and write J_k as

$$J_k = U_1 \Sigma_1 V_1^T + U_2 \Sigma_2 V_2^T. \tag{45}$$

By the theory of matrix perturbation [15] and the Lipschitzness of J_k, we have

$$\left\|\operatorname{diag}\left(\Sigma_1 - \bar{\Sigma}_1, \Sigma_2, 0\right)\right\| \leqslant \left\|J_k - \bar{J}_k\right\| \leqslant L_1 \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|, \tag{46}$$

which yields

$$\left\|\Sigma_1 - \bar{\Sigma}_1\right\| \leqslant L_1 \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \quad \text{and} \quad \|\Sigma_2\| \leqslant L_1 \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|. \tag{47}$$

Hence

$$\left\|\lambda_k^{-1} \Sigma_2\right\| = \frac{\|\Sigma_2\|}{\mu_k \|F_k\|^\delta} \leqslant \frac{L_1 \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|}{m c^\delta \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^\delta} = L_1 m^{-1} c^{-\delta} \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{1-\delta} \tag{48}$$

Since for any positive σ_i $(i = 1, 2, \cdots, r)$, we have

$$\frac{\sigma_i}{\sigma_i^2 + \lambda_k} \leqslant \frac{\sigma_i}{2\sigma_i\sqrt{\lambda_k}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\lambda_k}},$$

which implies

$$\left\|\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_1\right\| \leqslant \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\mu_k \left\|F_k\right\|^{\delta}}} \leqslant \frac{1}{2} m^{-\frac{1}{2}} c^{-\frac{\delta}{2}} \left\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\right\|^{-\frac{\delta}{2}}. \tag{49}$$

Combining (48) and (49) with $\delta \in [1, 2]$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T\right\| &= \left\|(V_1, V_2, V_3) \begin{pmatrix} \left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_1 & & \\ & \left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_2 & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} U_1^T \\ U_2^T \\ U_3^T \end{pmatrix}\right\| \\
&\leqslant \left\|\begin{pmatrix} \left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_1 & & \\ & \left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_2 & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix}\right\| \\
&\leqslant \left\|\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_1\right\| + \left\|\lambda_k^{-1} \Sigma_2\right\| \\
&\leqslant \frac{1}{2} m^{-\frac{1}{2}} c^{-\frac{\delta}{2}} \left\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\right\|^{-\frac{\delta}{2}} + L_1 m^{-1} c^{-\delta} \left\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\right\|^{1-\delta} \\
&\leqslant O\left(\left\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\right\|^{-\frac{\delta}{2}}\right).
\end{aligned}$$

The proof is completed. □

4.1 Properties of the trial step

Firstly, we investigate the properties of $d_{k,i}$, and hence s_k.

Lemma 4.3. *Under the condition of Assumption 4.1, for sufficiently large k, we have*

$$\left\|d_{k,i}\right\| \leqslant c_i \operatorname{dist}\left(x_k, X^*\right), \quad i = 0, 1, \cdots, m-1,$$

where c_i are some positive constants.

Proof. The proof of $d_{k,0}$ can be found in Lemma 1 of [11], thus

$$\left\|d_{k,0}\right\| \leqslant c_0 \operatorname{dist}\left(x_k, X^*\right). \tag{50}$$

Now we prove $i \geqslant 1$. From (24), (42), (44) and (50), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\|d_{k,i}\right\| &= \left\|-\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,i}\right\| \\
&\leqslant \left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T F_{k,0}\right\| + \left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T J_k \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,i} d_{k,i}\right\| \\
&\quad + L_1 \left\|\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T\right\| \left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,i} d_{k,i}\right\|^2 \\
&\leqslant \left\|d_{k,0}\right\| + \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,i} \left\|d_{k,i}\right\| + L_1 \left(\sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,i} \|d_{k,i}\|\right)^2 O\left(\left\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\right\|^{-\frac{\delta}{2}}\right) \\
&\leqslant c_i \operatorname{dist}\left(x_k, X^*\right),
\end{aligned}$$

with $i = 1, \cdots, m-1$, for some positive constant c_i. The proof is completed. □

Lemma 4.3 indicates that the trail step

$$\|s_k\| = \left\| \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \alpha_{k,i} d_{k,i} \right\| \leqslant \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \alpha_{k,i} \|d_{k,i}\| \leqslant \ddot{c} \operatorname{dist}(x_k, X^*),$$

for some positive constants $\ddot{c}$.

4.2 Boundedness of the LM parameter

Lemma 4.4. *Under the conditions of Assumption 4.1, there exists a positive $\bar{\mu} > \mu$ such that $\mu_k \leqslant \bar{\mu}$ holds for all sufficiently large k.*

Proof. Following the result given in [10, Lemma 2], we have the following inequalities for all sufficiently large k,

$$\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \geqslant \bar{c}_i \|F_{k,i}\| \min\{\|d_{k,i}\|, \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|\},$$

where $\bar{c}_i$ are some positive constants, $i = 0, 1, \cdots, m-1$.

In fact, if $\|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\| \leqslant \|d_{k,i}\|$, by (41), (42) and the fact that $d_{k,i}$ is the solution of (16), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\|F(x_{k,i})\| - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\| \\
&\qquad \geqslant \|F_{k,i}\| - \|F_{k,i} + J_k (\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i})\| \\
&\qquad \geqslant \|F_{k,i}\| - \|F_{k,i} + J_{k,i} (\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i})\| - \|J_k - J_{k,i}\| \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\| \\
&\qquad \geqslant c \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\| - L_1 \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|^2 - L_1 \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\| \sum_{j=0}^{i-1} \alpha_{k,j} \|d_{k,j}\| \\
&\qquad \geqslant \bar{c}_i \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|,
\end{aligned} \tag{51}$$

for some $\bar{c}_i > 0$ when k is sufficiently large. In the other case when $\|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\| > \|d_{k,i}\|$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\|F_{k,i}\| - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\| &\geqslant \|F_{k,i}\| - \left\| F_{k,i} + \frac{\|d_{k,i}\|}{\|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|} J_k (\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}) \right\| \\
&\geqslant \frac{\|d_{k,i}\|}{\|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|} \left(\|F_{k,i}\| - \|F_{k,i} + J_k (\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i})\|\right) \\
&\geqslant \frac{\|d_{k,i}\|}{\|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|} \bar{c}_i \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\| \\
&\geqslant \bar{c}_i \|d_{k,i}\|.
\end{aligned} \tag{52}$$

Combining (51) with (52), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 &= (\|F_{k,i}\| + \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|)(\|F_{k,i}\| - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|) \\
&\geqslant \bar{c}_i \|F_{k,i}\| \min\{\|d_{k,i}\|, \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Together with (20), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 &\geqslant \|F_{k,i}\|^2 - \|F_{k,i} + J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \\
&\geqslant \bar{c}_i \|F_{k,i}\| \min\{\|d_{k,i}\|, \|\bar{x}_{k,i} - x_{k,i}\|\}.
\end{aligned} \tag{53}$$

Hence, it follows from (22) and Lemma 4.3, we have

$$\operatorname{Pred}_k \geqslant O(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \|d_{k,0}\|).$$

Since $d_{k,0}$ is a minimizer of (15), we have the following results from (43) and Lemma 4.3 that

$$\begin{aligned}
&\|F_{k,0} + J_k (\alpha_{k,0} d_{k,0} + \cdots + \alpha_{k,i} d_{k,i})\| \\
&\qquad \leqslant \|F_{k,0} + \alpha_{k,0} J_k d_{k,0}\| + \|J_k\| (\alpha_{k,1} \|d_{k,1}\| + \cdots + \alpha_{k,i} \|d_{k,i}\|) \\
&\qquad \leqslant \tilde{c}_i \|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|,
\end{aligned}$$

with $i = 1, \cdots, m-1$ for some positive constants $\tilde{c}_i > 0$. Also, follows from (35), we have

$$\|F_{k,i+1}\|^2 - \|F(x_{k,i}) + \alpha_{k,i} J_k d_{k,i}\|^2 \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \|d_{k,0}\|^2\right)$$

which implies that

$$|r_k - 1| = \left|\frac{\text{Ared}_k - \text{Pred}_k}{\text{Pred}_k}\right| \leqslant \frac{O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \|d_{k,0}\|^2\right)}{O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \|d_{k,0}\|\right)} \to 0$$

holds for sufficiently large k. Hence

$$r_k \to 1.$$

Therefore there exists a positive $\bar{\mu} > \mu$ such that $\mu_k \leqslant \bar{\mu}$ holds for all sufficiently large k. The proof is completed. □

4.3 Convergence order of m-step Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm

We now prove the convergence order of m-step LM algorithm based on the results obtained in the above two subsections.

By the SVD of J_k proposed in (45), we have

$$d_{k,i} = -V_1\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_1 U_1^T F_{k,i} - V_2\left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_2 U_2^T F_{k,i}, \tag{54}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &F(x_{k,i}) + J_k d_{k,i} \\ &= F_{k,i} - U_1\Sigma_1\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_1 U_1^T F_{k,i} - U_2\Sigma_2\left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} \Sigma_2 U_2^T F_{k,i} \\ &= \lambda_k U_1\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} U_1^T F_{k,i} + \lambda_k U_2\left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} U_2^T F_{k,i} + U_3 U_3^T F_{k,i}, \end{aligned} \tag{55}$$

with $i = 0, \cdots, m-1$.

Lemma 4.5. *Under the condition of Assumption 4.1, if $x_{k,i} \in N(x^*, b_1/2)$, then we have*

(a) $\left\|U_1 U_1^T F_{k,i}\right\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{i+1}\right)$;

(b) $\left\|U_2 U_2^T F_{k,i}\right\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{i+2}\right)$;

(c) $\left\|U_3 U_3^T F_{k,i}\right\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{i+2}\right)$;

with $i = 0, \cdots, m-1$.

Proof. We will prove this lemma by an induction process.

For $i = 1, 2$, the results have been shown by Fan and Chen respectively (see [11, 12]), and we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\|d_{k,1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^2\right), \quad \|F_{k,1} + J_k d_{k,1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^3\right), \\ &\|d_{k,2}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^3\right), \quad \|F_{k,2} + J_k d_{k,2}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^4\right). \end{aligned}$$

Assuming the truth for some $i-1$, we obtain the induction hypothesis:

$$\|d_{k,i-1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^i\right), \quad \|F(x_{k,i-1}) + J_k d_{k,i-1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{i+1}\right).$$

Turning now to the case for i. It follows from above induction hypothesis that

$$\begin{aligned}\|F_{k,i}\| &= \|F(x_{k,i-1}+\alpha_{k,i-1}d_{k,i-1})\| \\ &\leqslant \|F_{k,i-1}+\alpha_{k,i-1}J_{k,i-1}d_{k,i-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,i-1}^2\|d_{k,i-1}\|^2 \\ &\leqslant \|F_{k,i-1}+J_{k,i-1}d_{k,i-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,i-1}^2\|d_{k,i-1}\|^2 \\ &\leqslant \|F_{k,i-1}+J_kd_{k,i-1}\| + \|J_{k,i-1}-J_k\|\|d_{k,i-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,i-1}^2\|d_{k,i-1}\|^2 \\ &\leqslant \|F_{k,i-1}+J_kd_{k,i-1}\| + L_1\left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1}\alpha_{k,j}d_{k,j}\right\|\|d_{k,i-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,i-1}^2\|d_{k,i-1}\|^2 \\ &\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+1}\right) + L_1\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i}\right) \\ &\quad + L_1\alpha_{k,i-1}^2O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{2i}\right) \\ &\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+1}\right).\end{aligned}$$

So, we have

$$\left\|U_1U_1^TF_{k,i}\right\| \leqslant \|F_{k,i}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+1}\right).$$

Moreover, the local error bound condition implies that

$$\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\| \leqslant c^{-1}\|F_{k,i}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+1}\right). \tag{56}$$

Let $\bar{q}_k = -J_k^+F_{k,i}$. Then $\bar{q}_k$ is the least squares solution of $\|\min F_{k,i}+J_kq\|$. It follows from (40), (42), (56) and Lemma 4.3 that

$$\begin{aligned}\left\|U_3U_3^TF_{k,i}\right\| &= \|F_{k,i}+J_k\bar{q}_k\| \leqslant \|F_{k,i}+J_k(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\| \\ &\leqslant \|F_{k,i}+J_{k,i}(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\| + \|(J_{k,i}-J_k)(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\| \\ &\leqslant L_1\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\|^2 + L_1\left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1}\alpha_{k,j}d_{k,j}\right\|\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\| \\ &\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{2i+2}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+2}\right) \\ &= O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+2}\right).\end{aligned} \tag{57}$$

Let $\tilde{J}_k = U_1\Sigma_1V_1^T$ and $\tilde{q}_k = -\tilde{J}_k^+F_{k,i}$. Since $\tilde{q}_k$ is the least squares solution of $\left\|\min F_{k,i}+\tilde{J}_kq\right\|$, deducing from (40), (42),(47), (56) and Lemma 4.3 that

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\|\left(U_2U_2^T+U_3U_3^T\right)F_{k,i}\right\| \\ =&\left\|F_{k,i}+\tilde{J}_k\tilde{q}_k\right\| \leqslant \left\|F_{k,i}+\tilde{J}_k(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\right\| \\ \leqslant&\|F_{k,i}+J_{k,i}(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\| + \left\|\left(\tilde{J}_k-J_{k,i}\right)(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\right\| \\ \leqslant& L_1\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\|^2 + \left\|\left(J_k-J_{k,i}-U_2\Sigma_2V_2^T\right)(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\right\| \\ \leqslant& L_1\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\|^2 + \|(J_k-J_{k,i})(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\| + \left\|U_2\Sigma_2V_2^T(\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i})\right\| \\ \leqslant& L_1\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\|^2 + L_1\left\|\sum_{j=0}^{i-1}\alpha_{k,j}d_{k,j}\right\|\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\| + L_1\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|\|\bar{x}_{k,i}-x_{k,i}\| \\ \leqslant& O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{2i+2}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+2}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+2}\right) \\ \leqslant& O\left(\|\bar{x}_k-x_k\|^{i+2}\right).\end{aligned} \tag{58}$$

Due to the orthogonality of U_2 and U_3, combining (57) and (58), we know that

$$\left\|U_2 U_2^T F_{k,i}\right\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{i+2}\right).$$

The proof is completed. □

Now, we are ready to give the estimations of $d_{k,m-1}$ and $\|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J_k d_{k,m-1}\|$.

Lemma 4.6. *Under the condition of Assumption 4.1, for sufficiently large k, we have*

(a) $\|d_{k,m-1}\| \leqslant O(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^m)$*;*

(b) $\|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J_k d_{k,m-1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right)$.

Proof. By (46), we have

$$\|\Sigma_1\|^{-1} = \left|\frac{1}{\sigma_r}\right| \leqslant \left|\frac{1}{\bar{\sigma}_r - L_1\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|}\right|,$$

which implies

$$\|\Sigma_1\|^{-1} \leqslant \frac{2}{\bar{\sigma}_r}.$$

When $\delta \in [1,2]$, it then follows from Lemma 4.4, Lemma 4.5, (48), (54) and (55) that

$$\begin{aligned}
\|d_{k,m-1}\| &= \left\|-V_1\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1}\Sigma_1 U_1^T F(x_{k,m-1}) - V_2\left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1}\Sigma_2 U_2^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| \\
&\leqslant \|\Sigma_1\|^{-1}\left\|U_1^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| + \left\|\lambda_k^{-1}\Sigma_2\right\|\left\|U_2^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| \\
&\leqslant O(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^m) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+2-\delta}\right) \\
&= O(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^m),
\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
&\|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J_k d_{k,m-1}\| \\
&= \left\|\lambda_k U_1\left(\Sigma_1^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} U_1^T F(x_{k,m-1}) + \lambda_k U_2\left(\Sigma_2^2 + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} U_2^T F(x_{k,m-1}) + U_3 U_3^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| \\
&\leqslant \lambda_k\left\|\Sigma_1^2\right\|^{-1}\left\|U_1^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| + \left\|U_2^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| + \left\|U_3^T F(x_{k,m-1})\right\| \\
&\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+\delta}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right) \\
&\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right).
\end{aligned}$$

The proof is completed. □

Based on the results above, we obtain the convergence rate of Algorithm 2.2.

Theorem 4.7. *Under the conditions of Assumptions 4.1, the convergence rate of Algorithm 2.2 is $(m+1)$th.*

Proof. It follows from Lemma 4.3 and Lemma 4.6 that

$$\begin{aligned}
&c\|\bar{x}_{k+1} - x_{k+1}\| \\
&\leqslant \|F(x_{k+1})\| = \|F(x_k + s_k)\| = \|F(x_{k,m-1} + \alpha_{k,m-1}d_{k,m-1})\| \\
&\leqslant \|F(x_{k,m-1}) + \alpha_{k,m-1}J(x_{k,m-1})d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,m-1}^2\|d_{k,m-1}\|^2 \\
&\leqslant \|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J(x_{k,m-1})d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,m-1}^2\|d_{k,m-1}\|^2 \\
&\leqslant \|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J_k d_{k,m-1}\| + \|(J(x_{k,m-1}) - J_k)d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,m-1}^2\|d_{k,m-1}\|^2 \\
&\leqslant \|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J_k d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1\left\|\sum_{j=0}^{m-2}\alpha_{k,j}d_{k,j}\right\|\|d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1\alpha_{k,m-1}^2\|d_{k,m-1}\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\leqslant \|F(x_{k,m-1}) + J_k d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1 \sum_{j=0}^{m-2} \alpha_{k,j} \|d_{k,j}\| \|d_{k,m-1}\| + L_1 \alpha_{k,m-1}^2 \|d_{k,m-1}\|^2 \\
&\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right) + O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{2m}\right) \\
&\leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

with $m \geqslant 1$. Hence we have

$$
\|\bar{x}_{k+1} - x_{k+1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\|^{m+1}\right), \tag{59}
$$

which means that $\{x_k\}$ generated by m-step LM method converges to the solution set X^* with $(m+1)$th order. The proof is completed. □

Since

$$
\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \leqslant \|\bar{x}_{k+1} - x_{k+1}\| + \|s_k\|,
$$

we obtain from (59) that

$$
\|\bar{x}_k - x_k\| \leqslant 2\|s_k\|
$$

holds for sufficiently large k. By Lemma 4.3, we finally have

$$
\|s_{k+1}\| \leqslant O\left(\|s_k\|^{m+1}\right),
$$

which indicates that $\{x_k\}$ converges to some solution of (1) with Q-order $m+1$. This result is stronger than the convergence to the solution set.

5 Numerical results

We will compute some singular problems, which come from [16] with the same forms as in [17], to test Algorithm 2.2, and compare it with the general LM algorithm (LM), the SLM method which has presented in [10] with $m = 4$.

We compute these test problems with different initial points and different size,

$$
\hat{F}(x) = F(x) - J(x^*) A \left(A^T A\right)^{-1} A^T (x - x^*),
$$

where $F(x)$ is the standard nonsingular test function, x^* is its root, and $A \in R^{n\times k}$ has full column rank with $1 \leqslant k \leqslant n$. Obviously, $\hat{F}(x^*) = 0$ and

$$
\hat{J}(x^*) = J(x^*)\left(I - A\left(A^T A\right)^{-1} A^T\right)
$$

has rank $n-k$. A disadvantage of these problems is that $\hat{F}(x)$ may have roots that are not roots of $F(x)$. We chose the rank of $\hat{J}(x^*)$ to be $n-1$ and $n-2$, respectively, by using

$$
A \in R^{n\times 1}, \quad A^T = (1, 1, \cdots, 1)
$$

and

$$
A \in R^{n\times 2}, \quad A^T = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & -1 & \cdots & \pm 1 \end{pmatrix}.
$$

Set $p_0 = 0.0001$, $p_1 = 0.25$, $p_2 = 0.75$, $\tilde{m} = 10^{-8}$, $\mu_1 = 1$, $\delta = 1$ for all the tests. The stopping criteria for the Algorithm is $\left\|J_k^T F_k\right\| < 10^{-5}$ or the iteration number exceeds $100(n+1)$. The points x_0, $10x_0$, $100x_0$ in the third column of the tables are the starting points, where x_0 was suggested by Moré et. al in [16]. "NF" and "NJ" represent the number of function calculations and Jacobian calculations, respectively. If the method failed to find the solution in $100(n+1)$ iterations, we denoted it by the sign "-", and if the iterations had underflows or overflows, we denoted it by "OF". We also denote "TIME" represents the running time of the problem. All codes are written in MATLAB R2012 programming environment on a personal PC with Inter(R) Core(TM) i5-4590 CPU, 3.30GHz, 4GB RAM, using Windows 7 operation system.

Table 1: Results on the first singular test set with rank($F'(x^*)$)= $n-1$

			Algorith LM	Algorithm SLM with $m=4$	Algorithm 2.2 with $m=4$
Problem	n	x_0	NF/NJ/F/TIME	NF/NJ/F/TIME	NF/NJ/F/TIME
8	3000	1	9/9/1.7993e-05/16.0927	17/5/6.0835e-06/27.9715	17/5/1.6373e-05/45.5972
9	3000	1	1/1/6.9349e-06/0.39072	1/1/6.9349e-06/0.38856	1/1/6.9349e-06/0.38503
		10	3/3/4.9157e-03/4.6299	9/3/1.8731e-03/14.9589	9/3/1.468e-03/16.2261
		100	5/5/2.9136e-02/8.8327	13/4/2.8697e-02/22.3504	13/4/2.3369e-02/24.1051
10	3000	1	7/7/1.8841e-05/113.7354	13/4/1.5023e-05/90.6983	13/4/1.7169e-05/96.5679
		10	9/9/1.1683e-05/146.8708	17/5/1.2381e-05/115.8011	21/6/7.057e-06/155.4833
		100	10/10/9.479e-09/163.7237	21/6/1.4677e-10/142.4809	21/6/1.0401e-13/159.7523
11	3000	1	20/10/2.2123e-04/34.464	77/6/2.3676e-04/128.9774	161/15/1.9047e-04/297.2913
		10	38/26/1.9482e-03/68.8421	161/17/1.3971e-03/269.0105	165/17/2.8922e-03/340.8817
		100	37/22/3.0277e-03/65.9771	145/16/2.45e-04/236.8702	129/12/4.9012e-04/272.922
13	3000	1	9/9/1.4397e-04/16.3563	17/5/8.5893e-05/27.4254	17/5/1.8655e-04/44.4526
		10	14/14/1.4123e-04/26.2765	25/7/2.604e-04/41.0561	29/8/5.5618e-05/79.057
		100	17/17/2.5192e-04/32.2734	33/9/8.9702e-05/54.5243	37/10/2.8248e-05/102.0578
14	3000	1	12/12/3.6595e-05/22.8178	25/7/4.4361e-06/41.4525	25/7/1.3946e-05/65.4345
		10	18/18/4.3039e-05/35.2549	37/10/4.9713e-06/62.3313	37/10/2.4413e-05/98.7529
		100	24/24/2.5066e-05/47.6055	49/13/2.9067e-06/82.7621	49/13/2.1752e-05/132.2612

Table 2: Results on the first singular test set with rank($F'(x^*)$)= $n-2$

			Algorith LM	Algorithm SLM with $m=4$	Algorithm 2.2 with $m=4$
Problem	n	x_0	NF/NJ/F/TIME	NF/NJ/F/TIME	NF/NJ/F/TIME
8	3000	1	9/9/1.7993e-05/15.758	17/5/6.0835e-06/27.7172	17/5/1.6373e-05/44.3831
9	3000	1	1/1/6.9349e-06/0.38195	1/1/6.9349e-06/0.38875	1/1/6.9349e-06/0.38878
		10	3/3/4.9157e-03/4.5209	9/3/1.8731e-03/14.8385	9/3/1.468e-03/16.9752
		100	5/5/2.9136e-02/8.6748	13/4/2.8697e-02/21.854	13/4/2.3369e-02/25.3346
10	3000	1	7/7/1.8841e-05/113.166	13/4/1.5023e-05/89.9889	13/4/1.7169e-05/96.959
		10	9/9/1.1683e-05/145.9313	17/5/1.2381e-05/115.1672	21/6/7.057e-06/155.429
		100	17/12/5.585e-06/210.7712	21/6/5.259e-06/141.4457	21/6/5.2587e-06/156.9107
11	3000	1	20/10/2.2124e-04/33.8705	77/6/2.3676e-04/125.7451	149/14/1.9077e-04/288.4942
		10	37/24/2.3572e-03/65.5213	149/16/1.9236e-03/245.8551	165/17/2.8922e-03/353.1612
		100	46/26/3.0342e-03/80.6403	137/15/2.5525e-04/227.3232	129/13/4.9734e-04/280.1359
13	3000	1	9/9/1.4397e-04/16.2237	17/5/8.5893e-05/27.5697	17/5/1.8655e-004/43.5593
		10	14/14/1.4123e-04/26.2398	25/7/2.604e-04/41.4618	29/8/5.5618e-05/77.8504
		100	17/17/2.5192e-04/32.1537	33/9/8.9702e-05/55.034	37/10/2.8248e-05/100.1965
14	3000	1	12/12/3.6595e-05/22.7153	25/7/4.4361e-06/41.5594	25/7/1.3946e-05/67.8233
		10	18/18/4.3039e-05/34.929	37/10/4.9713e-06/62.0526	37/10/2.4413e-05/102.6231
		100	24/24/2.5066e-05/47.1261	49/13/2.9067e-06/82.8124	49/13/2.1752e-05/135.4006

From table 1 and table 2, we can see that, though Algorithm 2.2 take more running time than the SLM method to compute step size $\alpha_{k,i}$, Algorithm 2.2 still almost always outperforms or at least performs as well as the SLM method whether on the first singular test set or on the second test set, which indicate that the line search really makes the method more efficient and contributes a lot to the numerical performance. That would be great helpful for the real application of the method and especially useful for the large scale problems.

6 Conclusions

In this work, to save more Jacobian calculations, we presented the efficient m-step LM method for systems of nonlinear equations. At every iteration, we compute $m-1$ approximate LM steps with frozen $\left(J_k^T J_k + \lambda_k I\right)^{-1} J_k^T$ and employ $m-1$ line search for better numerical performance. The efficient m-step LM method have been proved to have $(m+1)$th convergence order under the local error bound condition which is weaker than nonsingularity. Numerical results show that the efficient m-step LM method saved more Jacobian calculations although the calculations of function are more.

References

[1] W. Sun, Y. Yuan, Optimization theory and methods: Nonlinear programming, springer, 2006.

[2] K. Levenberg, A method for the solution of certain nonlinear problems in least squares, Quarterly of Applied Mathematics 2 (1944) 164–168.

[3] D. W. Marquardt, An algorithm for least-squares estimation of nonlinear parameters, Journal of the Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics 11 (1963) 431–441.

[4] N. Yamashita, M. Fukushima, On the Rate of Convergence of the Levenberg-Marquardt Method, Springer Vienna, Vienna, 2001, pp. 239–249.

[5] A. Fischer, P. K. Shukla, M. Wang, On the inexactness level of robust Levenberg-Marquardt methods, Optimization 59 (2) (2010) 273–287, 65H10 (90C30).

[6] K. Amini, F. Rostami, Three-steps modified levenberg-marquardt method with a new line search for systems of nonlinear equations, Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics 300 (2016) 30–42.

[7] P. Kazemi, R. J. Renka, A Levenberg-Marquardt method based on sobolev gradients, Nonlinear Analysis: Theory, Methods & Applications 75 (16) (2012) 6170–6179.

[8] J. Fan, The modified Levenberg-Marquardt method for nonlinear equations with cubic convergence, Mathematics of Computation 81 (2012) 447–466.

[9] X. Yang, A higher-order Levenberg-Marquardt method for nonlinear equations, Applied Mathematics and Computation 219 (22) (2013) 10682–10694, 65H10.

[10] J. Fan, A shamanskii-like Levenberg-Marquardt method for nonlinear equations, Computational Optimization and Applications 56 (1) (2013) 63–80.

[11] J. Fan, Accelerating the modified Levenberg-Marquardt method for nonlinear equations, Mathematics of Computation 83 (2014) 1173–1187.

[12] L. Chen, A modified levenberg–marquardt method with line search for nonlinear equations, Computational Optimization and Applications (2016) 1–27.

[13] M. Powell, Convergence properties of a class of minimization algorithms, in: O. Mangasarian, , R. Meyer, , S. Robinson (Eds.), Nonlinear Programming 2, Academic Press, 1975, pp. 1 – 27.

[14] R. Behling, A. Iusem, The effect of calmness on the solution set of systems of nonlinear equations, Mathematical Programming 137 (1-2) (2013) 155–165.

[15] G. W. Stewart, J. Sun, Matrix Perturbation Theory, Computer Science and Scientific Computing, Academic Press Inc., Boston, MA, 1990.

[16] J. J. Moré, B. S. Garbow, K. H. Hillstrom, Testing unconstrained optimization software, ACM Trans. Math. Software 7 (1981) 17–41.

[17] R. B. Schnabel, P. D. Frank, Tensor methods for nonlinear equations, SIAM Journal on Numerical Analysis 21 (5) (1984) 815–843.

OPTIMAL BOUNDS FOR A TOADER TYPE MEAN USING ARITHMETIC AND GEOMETRIC MEANS*

WEI-MAO QIAN[1,2], WEN ZHANG[3], AND YU-MING CHU[4,**]

Abstract. In the aritcle, we prove that the double inequalities $\alpha A(a,b)+(1-\alpha)G(a,b) < T[A(a,b),G(a,b)] < \beta A(a,b)+(1-\beta)G(a,b)$ and $G[\lambda a+(1-\lambda)b, \lambda b+(1-\lambda)a] < T[A(a,b),G(a,b)] < G[\mu a+(1-\mu)b, \mu b+(1-\mu)a]$ hold for all $a,b>0$ with $a\neq b$ if and only if $\alpha\leq 1/2$, $\beta\geq 2/\pi$, $\lambda\leq (1-\sqrt{1-4/\pi^2})/2$ and $\mu\geq 1/2-\sqrt{2}/4$ if $\alpha,\beta\in\mathbb{R}$ and $\lambda,\mu\in(0,1/2)$, and find new bounds for the complete elliptic integral $\mathcal{E}(r)=\int_0^{\pi/2}(1-r^2\sin^2\theta)^{1/2}d\theta$ $(0<r<1)$ of the second kind, where $G(a,b)=\sqrt{ab}$, $T(a,b)=2\int_0^{\pi/2}\sqrt{a^2\cos^2\theta+b^2\sin^2\theta}d\theta/\pi$ and $A(a,b)=(a+b)/2$ are respectively the geometric, Toader and arithmetic means of a and b.

1. Introduction

Let $r\in(0,1)$ and $a,b>0$. Then the complete elliptic integrals $\mathcal{K}(r)$ and $\mathcal{E}(r)$ [1-24] of the first and second kind, Toader mean $T(a,b)$ [25-34], geometric mean $G(a,b)$ [35-41] and arithmetic mean $A(a,b)$ [42-50] are respectively given by

$$\mathcal{K}(r)=\int\limits_0^{\pi/2}(1-r^2\sin^2\theta)^{-1/2}d\theta,\quad \mathcal{E}(r)=\int\limits_0^{\pi/2}(1-r^2\sin^2\theta)^{1/2}d\theta,$$

$$T(a,b)=\frac{2}{\pi}\int_0^{\pi/2}\sqrt{a^2\cos^2\theta+b^2\sin^2\theta}d\theta, \tag{1.1}$$

$$G(a,b)=\sqrt{ab},\quad A(a,b)=\frac{a+b}{2}. \tag{1.2}$$

It is well known that

$$\mathcal{K}(0^+)=\mathcal{E}(0^+)=\pi/2,\quad \mathcal{K}(1^-)=+\infty,\quad \mathcal{E}(1^-)=1,$$

$\mathcal{K}(r)$ is strictly increasing and $\mathcal{E}(r)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0,1)$, $\mathcal{K}(r)$ and $\mathcal{E}(r)$ satisfy the derivatives formulas [51, Appendix E, p. 474-475]

$$\frac{d\mathcal{K}(r)}{dr}=\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}{r(1-r^2)},\quad \frac{d\mathcal{E}(r)}{dr}=\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{K}(r)}{r},$$

and $T(a,b)$ can be rewritten as

$$T(a,b)=\begin{cases}\frac{2a}{\pi}\mathcal{E}\left(\sqrt{1-\left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^2}\right), & a>b,\\ a, & a=b,\\ \frac{2b}{\pi}\mathcal{E}\left(\sqrt{1-\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^2}\right), & a<b.\end{cases} \tag{1.3}$$

2010 *Mathematics Subject Classification.* Primary: 26E60; Secondary: 33E05.

Key words and phrases. Toader mean, arithmetic mean, geometric mean.

*The research was supported by the Natural Science Foundation of China (Grant Nos. 61673169, 11301127, 11701176, 11626101, 11601485), the Science and Technology Research Program of Zhejiang Educational Committee (Grant No. Y201635325) and the Natural Science Foundation of Huzhou City (Grant No. 2018YZ07).

**Corresponding author: Yu-Ming Chu, Email: chuyuming2005@126.com.

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Recently, the bounds for the Toader mean $T(a,b)$ have attracted the attention of several researchers. Barnard et. al. [52], and Alzer and Qiu [53] proved that the double inequality

$$M_{p_1}(a,b) < T(a,b) < M_{p_2}(a,b)$$

holds for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$ if and only if $p_1 \leq 3/2$ and $p_2 \geq \log 2/(\log \pi - \log 2) = 1.5349\cdots$, where $M_p(a,b) = [(a^p + b^p)/2]^{1/p}$ $(p \neq 0)$ and $M_0(a,b) = \sqrt{ab}$ is the pth power mean.

Very recently, Song et. al. [54] proved that the double inequality

$$M_{q_1}(a,b) < T[A(a,b), Q(a,b)] < M_{q_2}(a,b)$$

holds for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$ if and only if $q_1 \leq 2\log 2/[2\log \pi - \log 2 - 2\log \mathcal{E}(\sqrt{2}/2)] = 1.3930\cdots$ and $q_2 \geq 3/2$, where $Q(a,b) = \sqrt{(a^2+b^2)/2}$ is the quadratic mean of a and b.

Let $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$. Then from (1.1) and (1.2) together with $G(a,b) < A(a,b)$ we clearly see that the function $\lambda \to R(\lambda) = G[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b, \lambda b + (1-\lambda)a]$ is continuous and strictly increasing on $[0, 1/2]$, and

$$R(0) = G(a,b) < T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] < A(a,b) = R\left(\frac{1}{2}\right).$$

It is the aim of this article to find the best possible parameters $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{R}$ and $\lambda, \mu \in (0, 1/2)$ such that the double inequalities

$$\alpha A(a,b) + (1-\alpha)G(a,b) < T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] < \beta A(a,b) + (1-\beta)G(a,b),$$

$$G[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b, \lambda b + (1-\lambda)a] < T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] < G[\mu a + (1-\mu)b, \mu b + (1-\mu)a]$$

hold for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$ holds for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$.

2. Lemmas

Lemma 2.1. *(See [51, Theorem 3.21(1)]) The function $r \mapsto [\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)]/r^2$ is strictly increasing from $(0,1)$ onto $(\pi/4, 1)$.*

Lemma 2.2. *(See [51, Exercise 3.43(11)]) The function $r \mapsto [\mathcal{K}(r) - \mathcal{E}(r)]/r^2$ is strictly increasing from $(0,1)$ onto $(\pi/4, +\infty)$.*

Lemma 2.3. *(See [51, Theorem 3.21(7)]) The function $r \mapsto (1-r^2)^\lambda \mathcal{K}(r)$ is strictly decreasing from $(0,1)$ onto $(0, \pi/2)$ if $\lambda \geq 1/4$.*

Lemma 2.4. *(See [51, Theorem 1.25]) Let $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ with $a < b$, $f, g : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be continuous on $[a,b]$ and differentiable on (a,b), and $g'(x) \neq 0$ on (a,b). If $f'(x)/g'(x)$ is increasing (decreasing) on (a,b), then so are the functions*

$$\frac{f(x) - f(a)}{g(x) - g(a)}, \quad \frac{f(x) - f(b)}{g(x) - g(b)}.$$

If $f'(x)/g'(x)$ is strictly monotone, then the monotonicity in the conclusion is also strict.

Lemma 2.5. *The function $r \mapsto \sqrt{1-r^2}[\mathcal{E}(r) - \mathcal{K}(r)]/r^2$ is strictly increasing from $(0,1)$ onto $(-\pi/4, 0)$.*

Proof. Let

$$f(r) = \frac{\sqrt{1-r^2}[\mathcal{E}(r) - \mathcal{K}(r)]}{r^2}, \tag{2.1}$$

$$g(r) = [\mathcal{K}(r) - \mathcal{E}(r)] - [\mathcal{E}(r) - (1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)]. \tag{2.2}$$

Then it follows from (2.1), (2.2), L'Hôpital rule, and Lemmas 2.1 and 2.3 that

$$f(1^-) = 0, \quad f(0^+) = \lim_{r \to 0^+} \frac{[\sqrt{1-r^2}(\mathcal{E}(r) - \mathcal{K}(r))]'}{2r} = \lim_{r \to 0^+} \frac{\mathcal{K}(r) - 2\mathcal{E}(r)}{2\sqrt{1-r^2}} = -\frac{\pi}{4}, \tag{2.3}$$

$$f'(r) = \frac{1}{r^3\sqrt{1-r^2}} g(r), \tag{2.4}$$

$$g(0^+) = 0, \tag{2.5}$$

$$g'(r) = \frac{r^3}{1-r^2}\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)-(1-r^2)\mathcal{K}(r)}{r^2} > 0 \tag{2.6}$$

for $r \in (0,1)$.

Therefore, Lemma 2.5 follows easily from (2.3)-(2.6). $\square$

Lemma 2.6. *The function $r \mapsto \mathcal{E}(r)[\mathcal{K}(r)-\mathcal{E}(r)]/r^2$ is strictly increasing from $(0,1)$ onto $(\pi^2/8,+\infty)$.*

Proof. Let

$$h(r) = \frac{\mathcal{E}(r)[\mathcal{K}(r)-\mathcal{E}(r)]}{r^2}, \quad h_1(r) = \mathcal{E}(r) - \sqrt{1-r^2}\mathcal{K}(r). \tag{2.7}$$

Then from Lemma 2.2 and (2.7) we clearly see that

$$h(0^+) = \frac{\pi^2}{8}, \quad h(1^-) = +\infty, \quad h_1(0^+) = 0, \tag{2.8}$$

$$h'(r) = \frac{\mathcal{E}(r)+\sqrt{1-r^2}\mathcal{K}(r)}{r^3(1-r^2)}h_1(r), \tag{2.9}$$

$$h_1'(r) = \frac{r(1-\sqrt{1-r^2})}{\sqrt{1-r^2}}\frac{\mathcal{K}(r)-\mathcal{E}(r)}{r^2} > 0 \tag{2.10}$$

for $r \in (0,1)$.

Therefore, Lemma 2.6 follows easily from (2.8)-(2.10). $\square$

3. Main Results

Theorem 3.1. *The double inequality*

$$\alpha A(a,b) + (1-\alpha)G(a,b) < T[A(a,b),G(a,b)] < \beta A(a,b) + (1-\beta)G(a,b)$$

holds for all $a,b>0$ with $a \neq b$ if and only if $\alpha \leq 1/2$ and $\beta \geq 2/\pi = 0.6366\cdots$.

Proof. Since $A(a,b)$, $T(a,b)$ and $G(a,b)$ are symmetric and homogeneous of degree 1, without loss of generality, we assume that $a>b>0$ and $r=(a-b)/(a+b) \in (0,1)$. Then (1.2) and (1.3) lead to

$$T[A(a,b),G(a,b)] = \frac{2}{\pi}A(a,b)\mathcal{E}(r), \quad G(a,b) = A(a,b)\sqrt{1-r^2},$$

$$\frac{T[A(a,b),G(a,b)]-G(a,b)}{A(a,b)-G(a,b)} = \frac{\frac{2}{\pi}\mathcal{E}(r)-\sqrt{1-r^2}}{1-\sqrt{1-r^2}}. \tag{3.1}$$

Let

$$F_1(r) = \frac{2}{\pi}\mathcal{E}(r) - \sqrt{1-r^2}, \quad F_2(r) = 1-\sqrt{1-r^2}, \tag{3.2}$$

$$F(r) = \frac{F_1(r)}{F_2(r)} = \frac{\frac{2}{\pi}\mathcal{E}(r)-\sqrt{1-r^2}}{1-\sqrt{1-r^2}}. \tag{3.3}$$

Then Lemma 2.5, (3.2) and (3.3) lead to

$$F_1(0^+) = F_2(0^+) = 0, \tag{3.4}$$

$$\frac{F_1'(r)}{F_2'(r)} = \frac{2}{\pi}\frac{\sqrt{1-r^2}[\mathcal{E}(r)-\mathcal{K}(r)]}{r^2} + 1, \tag{3.5}$$

$$F(0^+) = \lim_{r\to 0^+}\frac{F_1'(r)}{F_2'(r)} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad F(1^-) = \frac{2}{\pi}. \tag{3.6}$$

It follows from Lemmas 2.4 and 2.5 together with (3.3)-(3.5) that $F(r)$ is strictly increasing on $(0,1)$. Therefore, Theorem 3.1 follows from (3.1), (3.3) and (3.6) together with the monotonicity of $F(r)$. $\square$

J. COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO.3, 2020, COPYRIGHT 2020 EUDOXUS PRESS, LLC

Theorem 3.2. *Let $\lambda, \mu \in (0, 1/2)$. Then the double inequality*

$$G[\lambda a + (1-\lambda)b, \lambda b + (1-\lambda a)] < T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] < G[\mu a + (1-\mu)b, \mu b + (1-\mu a)]$$

holds for all $a, b > 0$ with $a \neq b$ if and only if $\lambda \leq (1-\sqrt{1-4/\pi^2})/2 = 0.1144\cdots$ and $\mu \geq 1/2 - \sqrt{2}/4 = 0.1464\cdots$.

Proof. We assume that $a > b > 0$, $r = (a-b)/(a+b) \in (0,1)$ and $p \in (0, 1/2)$. Then (1.2) and (1.3) lead to

$$\begin{aligned} &G[pa + (1-p)b, pb + (1-pa)] - T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] \qquad (3.7)\\ &= A(a,b)\left[\sqrt{1-(1-2p)^2r^2} - \frac{2}{\pi}\mathcal{E}(r)\right]\\ &= \frac{A(a,b)}{\sqrt{1-(1-2p)^2r^2} + \frac{2}{\pi}\mathcal{E}(r)} H(r), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$H(r) = 1 - (1-2p)^2r^2 - \frac{4}{\pi^2}\mathcal{E}^2(r),$$

$$H(0^+) = 0, \tag{3.8}$$

$$H(1^-) = 4p(1-p) - \frac{4}{\pi^2}, \tag{3.9}$$

$$H'(r) = 2rH_1(r), \tag{3.10}$$

where

$$H_1(r) = \frac{4}{\pi^2}\frac{\mathcal{E}(r)[\mathcal{K}(r) - \mathcal{E}(r)]}{r^2} - (1-2p)^2. \tag{3.11}$$

It follows from Lemma 2.6 and (3.11) that

$$H_1(0^+) = \frac{1}{2} - (1-2p)^2, \tag{3.12}$$

$$H_1(1^-) = +\infty. \tag{3.13}$$

We divide the proof into four cases.

Case 1 $p = \mu_0 = 1/2 - \sqrt{2}/4$. Then (3.12) becomes

$$H_1(0^+) = 0. \tag{3.14}$$

From Lemma 2.6, (3.11) and (3.14) we clearly see that

$$H_1(r) > 0 \tag{3.15}$$

for all $r \in (0, 1)$. Therefore,

$$T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] < G[\mu_0 a + (1-\mu_0)b, \mu_0 b + (1-\mu_0)a]$$

follows from (3.7), (3.8), (3.10) and (3.15).

Case 2 $p = \lambda_0 = (1-\sqrt{1-4/\pi^2})/2$. Then (3.9) and (3.12) lead to

$$H(1^-) = 0, \tag{3.16}$$

$$H_1(0^+) = -\frac{\pi^2 - 8}{2\pi^2} < 0. \tag{3.17}$$

From Lemma 2.6, (3.10), (3.11), (3.13) and (3.17) we know that there exists $r_0 \in (0,1)$ such that $H(r)$ is strictly decreasing on $(0, r_0)$ and strictly increasing on $(r_0, 1)$. Therefore,

$$T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] > G[\lambda_0 a + (1-\lambda_0)b, \lambda_0 b + (1-\lambda_0)a]$$

follows from (3.7), (3.8) and (3.16) together with the piecewise monotonicity of $H(r)$.

Case 3 $0 < p = \mu^* < 1/2 - \sqrt{2}/4$. Then (3.12) leads to

$$H_1(0^+) < 0. \tag{3.18}$$

Equations (3.7), (3.8) and (3.10) together with inequality (3.18) imply that there exists small enough $\delta_0 \in (0,1)$ such that

$$T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] > G[\mu^* a + (1-\mu^*)b, \mu^* b + (1-\mu^*)a]$$

for all $a > b > 0$ with $(a-b)/(a+b) \in (0, \delta_0)$.

Case 4 $(1-\sqrt{1-4/\pi^2})/2 < p = \lambda^* < 1/2$. Then (3.9) leads to

$$H(1^-) > 0. \tag{3.19}$$

Equation (3.7) and inequality (3.19) imply that there exists small enough $\delta_1 \in (0,1)$ such that

$$T[A(a,b), G(a,b)] < G[\lambda^* a + (1-\lambda^*)b, \lambda^* b + (1-\lambda^*)a]$$

for all $a > b > 0$ with $(a-b)/(a+b) \in (1-\delta_1, 1)$. □

From Theorems 3.1 and 3.2 we get Corollary 3.3 immediately.

Corollary 3.3. *The double inequality*

$$\max\left\{\frac{\pi}{4}\left(1+\sqrt{1-r^2}\right), \frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{1+\left(\frac{4}{\pi^2}-1\right)r^2}\right\} < \mathcal{E}(r)$$

$$< \min\left\{1+\left(\frac{\pi}{2}-1\right)\sqrt{1-r^2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}\pi}{4}\left(2-r^2\right)\right\}$$

holds for all $r \in (0,1)$.

References

[1] W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for a special quasi-arithmetic mean in terms of arithmetic and geometric means with two parameters, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 274, 10 pages.

[2] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu and M.-K. Wang, Hölder mean inequalities for the complete elliptic integrals, Integral Transforms Spec. Funct., 2012, **23**(7), 521–527.

[3] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, Y.-P. Jiang and S.-L. Qiu, Concavity of the complete elliptic integrals of the second kind with respect to Hölder means, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **395**(2), 637–642.

[4] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Y.-F. Qiu, On Alzer and Qiu's conjecture for complete elliptic integral and inverse hyperbolic tangent function, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 697547, 7 pages.

[5] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-P. Jiang, Bounds for complete elliptic integrals of the second kind with applications, Comput. Math. Appl., 2012, **63**(7), 1177–1184.

[6] Y.-M. Chu and T.-H. Zhao, Convexity and concavity of the complete elliptic integrals with respect to Lehmer mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2015, **2015**, Article 396, 6 pages.

[7] T.-R. Huang, S.-Y. Tan, X.-Y. Ma and Y.-M. Chu, Monotonicity properties and bounds for the complete p-elliptic integrals, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 239, 11 pages.

[8] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Asymptotical bounds for complete elliptic integrals of the second kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2013, **402**(1), 119–126.

[9] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Refinements of transformation inequalities for zero-balanced hypergeometric function, Acta Math. Sci., 2017, **37B**(3), 607–622.

[10] M.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, Landen inequalities for a class of hypergeometric functions with applications, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(2), 521–537.

[11] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-P. Jiang, Ramanujan's cubic transformation inequalities for zero-balanced hypergeometric functions, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2016, **46**(2), 679–691.

[12] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and S.-L. Qiu, Some monotonicity properties of generalized elliptic integrals with applications, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2013, **16**(3), 671–677.

[13] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-P. Jiang, Convexity of the complete elliptic integrals of the first kind with respect to Hölder means, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **388**(2), 1141–1146.

[14] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-Q. Song, Asymptotical formulas for Gaussian and generalized hypergeometric functions, Appl. Math. Comput., 2016, **276**, 44–60.

[15] M.-K. Wang, Y.-M. Li and Y.-M. Chu, Inequalities and infinite product formula for Ramanujan generalized modular equation function, Ramanujan J., 2018, **46**(1), 189–200.

[16] M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-M. Chu, Infinite series formula for Hübner upper bound function with applications to Hersch-Pfluger distortion function, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(3), 629–648.

[17] M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu, Y.-M. Chu and Y.-P. Jiang, Generalized Hersch-Pfluger distortion function and complete elliptic integrals, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2012, **385**(1), 221–229.

[18] Zh.-H. Yang and Y.-M. Chu, A monotonicity property involving the generalized elliptic integral of the first kind, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **20**(3), 729–735.

[19] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Monotonicity criterion for the quotient of power series with applications, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2015, **428**(1), 587–604.

[20] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, Monotonicity of the ratio for the complete elliptic integral and Stolarsky mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2016, **2016**, Article 176, 10 pages.

[21] Zh.-H. Yang, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, Accurate approximations for the complete elliptic integral of the second kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2016, **438**(2), 875–888.

[22] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Monotonicity properties and bounds involving the complete elliptic integrals of the first kind, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **21**(4), 1185–1199.

[23] Zh.-H. Yang, W.-M. Qian, Y.-M. Chu and W. Zhang, On approximating the arithmetic-geometric mean and complete elliptic integral of the first kind, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 2018, **462**(2), 1714–1726.

[24] T.-H. Zhao, M.-K. Wang, W. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Quadratic transformation inequalities for Gaussian hypergeometric function, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 251, 15 pages.

[25] Gh. Toader, Some mean values related to the arithmetic-geometric mean, J. Math. Anal. Appl., 1998, **218**(2), 358–368.

[26] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang, S.-L. Qiu and Y.-F. Qiu, Sharp generalized Seiffert mean bounds for Toader mean, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 605259, 8 pages.

[27] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Inequalities between arithmetic-geometric, Gini, and Toader means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 830585, 11 pages.

[28] W.-M. Qian, Z.-H. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for Toader-Qi mean in terms of harmonic and geometric means, J. Math. Inequal., 2017, **11**(1), 121–127.

[29] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and S.-L. Qiu, Optimal combinations bounds of root-square and arithmetic means for Toader mean, Proc. Indian Acad. Sci. Math. Sci., 2012, **122**(1), 41–51.

[30] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal Lehmer mean bouns for the Toader mean, Results Math., 2012, **61**(3-4), 223–229.

[31] J.-F. Li, W.-M. Qian and Y.-M. Chu, Sharp bounds for Toader mean in terms of arithmetic, quadratic, and Neuman means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2015, Article 277, 9 pages.

[32] Y.-Q. Song, W.-D. Jiang, Y.-M. Chu and D.-D. Yan, Optimal bounds for Toader mean in terms of arithmetic and contraharmonic means, J. Math. Inequal., 2013, **7**(4), 751–757.

[33] W.-H. Li and M.-M. Zheng, Some inequalities for bounding Toader mean, J. Funct. Spaces Appl., 2013, Article ID 394194, 5 pages.

[34] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and X.-Y. Ma, Sharp bounds for Toader mean in terms of contraharmonic mean with applications, J. Math. Inequal., 2013, **7**(2), 161–166.

[35] W.-M. Gong, Y.-Q. Song, Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, A sharp double inequality between Seiffert, arithmetic, and geoemtric means, Abstr. Appl. Anal., 2012, **2012**, Article ID 684834, 7 pages.

[36] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, Best possible inequalities among harmonic, geometric, logarithmic and Seiffert means, Math. Inequal. Appl., 2012, **15**(2), 415–422.

[37] M.-K. Wang, Z.-K. Wang and Y.-M. Chu, An optimal double inequality between geometric and identric means, Appl. Math. Lett., 2012, **25**(3), 471–475.

[38] Y.-M. Chu, C. Zong and G.-D. Wang, Optimal convex combination bounds of Seiffert and geometric means for arithmetic mean, J. Math. Inequal., 2011, **5**(2), 429–434.

[39] Y.-M. Chu, M.-K. Wang and Z.-K. Wang, An optimal double inequality between Seiffert and geometric means, J. Appl. Math., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 261237, 6 pages.

[40] Y.-M. Chu and M.-K. Wang, Optimal inequalities between harmonic, geometric, logarithmic, and arithmetic-geometric means, J. Appl. Math., 2011, **2011**, Article ID 618929, 9 pages

[41] B.-Y. Long and Y.-M. Chu, Optimal inequalities for generalized logarithmic, arithmetic, and geometric means, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 806825, 10 pages.

[42] A. Iqbal, M. Adil Khan, S. Ullah, Y.-M. Chu and A. Kashuri, Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities pertaining conformable fractional integrals and their applications, AIP Advances, 2018, **8**, Article ID 075101, 18 pages, DOI: 10.1063/1.5031954.

[43] Y.-M. Chu, M. Adil Khan, T. Ali and S. S. Dragomir, Inequalities for α-fractional differentiable functions, J. Inequal. Appl., 2017, **2017**, Article 93, 12 pages.

[44] M. Adil Khan, S. Begum, Y. Khurshid and Y.-M. Chu, Ostrowski type inequalities involving conformable fractional integrals, J. Inequal. Appl., 2018, **2018**, Article 70, 14 pages.

[45] M. Adil Khan, Y. Khurshid, T.-S. Du and Y.-M. Chu, Generalized of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities via conformable fractional integrals, J. Funct. Spaces, 2018, **2018**, Article ID 5357463, 12 pages.

[46] M. Adil Khan, Y.-M. Chu, T. U. Khan and J. Khan, Some new inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for s-convex functions with applications, Open Math., 2017, **15**, 1414–1430.

[47] M. Adil Khan, Z. M. Al-sahwi and Y.-M. Chu, New estimations for Shannon and Zipf-Mandelbrot entropies, Entropy, 2018, **20**, Article 608, 10 pages, DOI: 10.3390/e2008608.

[48] M. Adil Khan, Y.-M. Chu, A. Kashuri and R. Liko, Hermite-Hadamard type fractional integral inequalities for $\mathrm{MT}_{(r;g,m,\varphi)}$-preinvex functions, J. Comput. Anal. Appl., 2019, **26**(8), 1487–1503.

[49] Y.-M. Chu, Y.-F. Qiu, M.-K. Wang and G.-D. Wang, The optimal convex combination bounds of arithmetic and harmonic means for the Seiffert mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2010, **2010**, Article ID 436457, 7 pages.

[50] X.-M. Zhang and Y.-M. Chu, Convexity of the integral arithmetic mean of a convex function, Rocky Mountain J. Math., 2010, **40**(3), 1061–1068.

[51] G. D. Anderson, M. K. Vamanamurthy and M. Vuorinen, Conformal Invariants, Inequalities, and Quasiconformal Maps, John Wiley & Song, New York, 1997.

[52] R. W. Barnard, K. Pearce and K. C. Richards, An inequality involving the generalized hypergeometric function and the arc length of an ellipse, SIAM J. Math. Anal., 2000, **31**(3),693–699.

[53] H. Alzer and S.-L. Qiu, Monotonicity theorems and inequalities for the complete elliptic integrals, J. Comput. Appl. Math., 2004, **172**(2), 289–312.

[54] Y.-Q. Song, T.-H. Zhao, Y.-M. Chu and X.-H. Zhang, Optimal evaluation of a Toader-type mean by power mean, J. Inequal. Appl., 2015, Article 408, 12 pages.

WEI-MAO QIAN, [1]COLLEGE OF SCIENCE, HUNAN CITY UNIVERSITY, YIYANG 413000, HUNAN, CHINA; [2]SCHOOL OF CONTINUING EDUCATION, HUZHOU VOCATIONAL AND TECHNOLOGICAL COLLEGE, HUZHOU 313000, ZHEJIANG, CHINA

E-mail address: qwm661977@126.com

WEN ZHANG, [3]FRIEDMAN BRAIN INSTITUTE, ICAHN SCHOOL OF MEDICINE AT MOUNT SINAI, NEW YORK, NY 10029, USA

E-mail address: zhang.wen81@gmail.com

YU-MING CHU (CORRESPONDING AUTHOR), [4]DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, HUZHOU UNIVERSITY, HUZHOU 313000, CHINA

E-mail address: chuyuming2005@126.com

Addition Theorem For Exton's q–Exponential Functions

Mahmoud Jafari Shah Belaghi

Bahçeşehir University, Istanbul, Turkey
mahmoud.belaghi@eng.bau.edu.tr

Nuri Kuruoğlu

İstanbul Gelişim University, Istanbul, Turkey
nkuruoglu@gelisim.edu.tr

Abstract. In this paper, we study about the q-exponential function which was introduced by Exton. We propose the addition theorem for this q–exponential function and also Continued fraction representation for this q–exponential function is given.
Keywords. Exton's q-Exponential Function, Symmetric q–derivative, Symmetric q-Binomial.
Mathematics Subject Classification. 11B65, 33D05.

1 Introduction

The $\widetilde{q}$–derivative (or symmetric q–derivative) of a function $f(x)$ is defined [3] as

$$\widetilde{D}_q\ f(x) = \frac{f(qx) - f(q^{-1}x)}{(q - q^{-1})x}$$

where $q \neq \pm 1$. This $\widetilde{q}$–derivative is invariant under inversion of basis.
For any number α, the $\widetilde{q}$–derivative of powers of x are given by

$$\widetilde{D}_q\ x^\alpha = [\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}}\ x^{\alpha-1}$$

where $[\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}} = \frac{q^\alpha - q^{-\alpha}}{q - q^{-1}}$ and it is called symmetric q–number. In the case, if α is a positive integer we have

$$[\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}} = \frac{q^\alpha - q^{-\alpha}}{q - q^{-1}} = q^{1-\alpha}(1 + q^2 + q^4 + \cdots + q^{2\alpha-2}).$$

Relation between q–number and symmetric q–number is

$$[\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}} = \frac{q^\alpha - q^{-\alpha}}{q - q^{-1}} = q^{1-\alpha}[\alpha]_{q^2} \tag{1}$$

where $[\alpha]_q = \frac{q^\alpha - 1}{q-1}$ is called q–number.
With easy calculation, one can see [5] that

$$[\alpha]_{\widetilde{\frac{1}{q}}} = [\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}}. \tag{2}$$

$$[-\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}} = -[\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}}. \tag{3}$$

$$[\alpha + \beta]_{\widetilde{q}} = q^\beta[\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}} + q^{-\alpha}[\beta]_{\widetilde{q}}. \tag{4}$$

Furthermore, the $\widetilde{q}$–analogue of factorial, denoted by $[n]_{\widetilde{q}}\,!$, is defined [1] as

$$[n]_{\widetilde{q}}\ ! = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } n = 0, \\ [n]_{\widetilde{q}} \times [n-1]_{\widetilde{q}} \times \cdots \times [1]_{\widetilde{q}} & \text{if } n = 1, 2, \ldots \end{cases} \tag{5}$$

and by using (1), we may also write the $\widetilde{q}$–factorial as follows

$$[n]_{\widetilde{q}}\ ! = [n]_{q^2}!\ q^{-\binom{n}{2}} \tag{6}$$

where $[n]_q! = [n]_q \times [n-1]_q \times \cdots \times [1]_q$ for $n = 1, 2, \ldots$.
The $\widetilde{q}$–analogue of $(a - x)^n$, denoted by $(a - x)^n_{\widetilde{q}}$, is defined [3] as

$$(a - x)^n_{\widetilde{q}} = \begin{cases} 1 & n = 0, \\ \prod_{i=0}^{n-1} \left(a - xq^{1-n+2i}\right) & n = 1, 2, \ldots. \end{cases} \tag{7}$$

The $\widetilde{q}$–analogue in (7) is invariant under inversion of basis and one can see that

$$(a-x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n} = (-1)^n (x-a)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}. \tag{8}$$

The $\widetilde{q}$–derivative of $(x-a)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}$ is founded [3] as

$$\widetilde{D}_q \ (x-a)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n} = [n]_{\widetilde{q}} \ (x-a)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n-1}. \tag{9}$$

The $\widetilde{q}$–Taylor series expansion of $(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}$ about $x=0$ is

$$(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n} = \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}} a^{n-k} x^k \tag{10}$$

where $\binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}} = \frac{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!}{[k]_{\widetilde{q}}! \ [n-k]_{\widetilde{q}}!}$ are called symmetric q–binomial coefficients. Formula (10) is called Gauss's $\widetilde{q}$–binomial formula (see [3], p. 100).

The object of study in this paper is the q–exponential function which was introduced by Exton (see [6] or [4], p. 128) as

$$E(q,x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_q!} x^n q^{\frac{1}{2}\binom{n}{2}}, \qquad x \in \mathbb{C} \tag{11}$$

where $[n]_q = \frac{q^n-1}{q-1}$. This q–exponential function is invariant under inversion of basis and unfortunately, there is no known addition theorem for it. Our goal is to give the addition theorem for this q–exponential function and also represent it as a continued fractions.

2 Some Identities

Definition 1. *For any number α, we define*

$$(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{\alpha} = \frac{(a+q^{1-\alpha}x)_{q^2}^{\infty}}{(a+q^{1+\alpha}x)_{q^2}^{\infty}} \tag{12}$$

where $(a+x)_q^{\infty} := \lim_{n\to\infty} \prod_{j=0}^{n} (a+q^j x)$.

Theorem 1. *For any numbers α and β,*

$$(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{\alpha+\beta} = (a+q^{-\beta}x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{\alpha} \ (a+q^{\alpha}x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{\beta}.$$

Proof. The result will be obtained directly by using the definition of $(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{\alpha}$, which is given in (12). □

Corollary 1. *For any number α,*

$$(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{-\alpha} = \frac{1}{(a+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{\alpha}}$$

Proof. The result will be obtained by using (12).

□

Proposition 1. *For $1 \le j \le n-1$, the $\widetilde{q}$–Pascal rule is*

$$\binom{n}{j}_{\widetilde{q}} = q^{n-j}\binom{n-1}{j-1}_{\widetilde{q}} + q^{-j}\binom{n-1}{j}_{\widetilde{q}}$$

Proof. Let us expand the symmetric q–binomial coefficient $\binom{n}{j}_{\widetilde{q}}$, then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\binom{n}{j}_{\widetilde{q}} &= \frac{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!}{[j]_{\widetilde{q}}! \ [n-j]_{\widetilde{q}}!} \\
&= \frac{[n-1]_{\widetilde{q}}! \ [n]_{\widetilde{q}}}{[j]_{\widetilde{q}}! \ [n-j]_{\widetilde{q}}!} \\
&= \frac{[n-1]_{\widetilde{q}}! \ (q^{n-j}[j]_{\widetilde{q}} + q^{-j}[n-j]_{\widetilde{q}})}{[j]_{\widetilde{q}}! \ [n-j]_{\widetilde{q}}!} \\
&= q^{n-j}\binom{n-1}{j-1}_{\widetilde{q}} + q^{-j}\binom{n-1}{j}_{\widetilde{q}}
\end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof. We used (4) in the third line. □

Lemma 1. *For any number x and positive integer r,*

$$\binom{-x}{r}_{\widetilde{q}} = (-1)^r \binom{x+r-1}{r}_{\widetilde{q}}$$

Proof. To prove the lemma we make a use of (5) and (3), then we may write

$$\begin{aligned}\binom{-x}{r}_{\widetilde{q}} &= \frac{[-x]_{\widetilde{q}}!}{[r]_{\widetilde{q}}!\ [-x-r]_{\widetilde{q}}!} \\ &= (-1)^r\ \frac{[x]_{\widetilde{q}}\ [x+1]_{\widetilde{q}}\ \dots\ [x+r-1]_{\widetilde{q}}}{[r]_{\widetilde{q}}!} \\ &= (-1)^r\ \frac{[x+r-1]_{\widetilde{q}}!}{[x-1]_{\widetilde{q}}!\ [r]_{\widetilde{q}}!} = (-1)^r \binom{x+r-1}{r}_{\widetilde{q}}\end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof. □

The following theorem is a symmetric version of Heine's q–binomial formula.

Theorem 2. *For any number x and positive integer n, the following equation holds*

$$\frac{1}{(1-x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}} = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+j-1}{j}_{\widetilde{q}} x^j.$$

Proof. To prove the Theorem we make a use of Corollary 1 and Lemma 1, then we may write

$$\frac{1}{(1-x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}} = (1-x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{-n} = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \binom{-n}{j}_{\widetilde{q}} (-x)^j = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \binom{n+j-1}{j}_{\widetilde{q}} x^j$$

which completes the proof. □

In the next theorem, $\widetilde{q}$–analogue of Vandermonde's identity is given.

Theorem 3. *For any $m, n, r \in \mathbb{N}_0$*

$$\binom{m+n}{r}_{\widetilde{q}} = q^{mr} \sum_{k=0}^{r} \binom{m}{k}_{\widetilde{q}} \binom{n}{r-k}_{\widetilde{q}} q^{-(m+n)k}$$

Proof. We make a use of Theorem 1 to write that

$$(1+x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{m+n} = (1+q^{-n}x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{m}\ (1+q^{m}x)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}.$$

Using the $\widetilde{q}$–binomial formula in (10) for both sides of the above formula, and then we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{r=0}^{m+n} \binom{m+n}{r}_{\widetilde{q}} x^r &= \sum_{r=0}^{m} \binom{m}{r}_{\widetilde{q}} (q^{-n}x)^r\ \sum_{r=0}^{n} \binom{n}{r}_{\widetilde{q}} (q^{m}x)^r \\ &= \sum_{r=0}^{m+n} \left(q^{mr} \sum_{k=0}^{r} \binom{m}{k}_{\widetilde{q}} \binom{n}{r-k}_{\widetilde{q}} q^{-(m+n)k} \right) x^r.\end{aligned}$$

The proof is complete by comparing coefficients of x^r. □

The following corollary is the special case of Vandermonde's identity.

Corollary 2. *For any positive integer n,*

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} q^{n(n-2k)} = \binom{2n}{n}_{\widetilde{q}} \tag{13}$$

Proof. Take $m = r = n$ in Theorem 3 and make a use of the identity $\binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}} = \binom{n}{n-k}_{\widetilde{q}}$ to prove the corollary. □

Corollary 3. *For any positive integer n,*

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} [2k]_{\widetilde{q^n}} = [n]_{\widetilde{q^n}} \binom{2n}{n}_{\widetilde{q}}. \tag{14}$$

Proof. Let us change the base q to q^{-1} in Corollary 2 to obtain

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} q^{-n(n-2k)} = \binom{2n}{n}_{\widetilde{q}} \tag{15}$$

because of the identity $\binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{\frac{1}{q}}} = \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}$. Now by comparing equations (13) and (15) we can write

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} \left(q^{n(n-2k)} - q^{-n(n-2k)}\right) = 0 \tag{16}$$

and also

$$\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} [n-2k]_{\widetilde{q^n}} = 0 \tag{17}$$

since $[\alpha]_{\widetilde{q}} = \frac{q^{\alpha} - q^{-\alpha}}{q - q^{-1}}$. Then we make a use of equations (3) and (4) to rewrite the equation (17) as

$$\begin{aligned}
&\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} \left(q^{2nk}[n]_{\widetilde{q^n}} + q^{n^2}[-2k]_{\widetilde{q^n}}\right) = 0,\\
&\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} \left(q^{2nk}[n]_{\widetilde{q^n}} - q^{n^2}[2k]_{\widetilde{q^n}}\right) = 0,\\
&\sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} [2k]_{\widetilde{q^n}} = [n]_{\widetilde{q^n}} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}}^{2} q^{-n^2+2nk}.
\end{aligned}$$

The proof will be complete if we apply the identity in (15) to the right side of the last equation. □

3 $\widetilde{q}$–Exponential Functions

In this section, we study about the q–exponential functions (11) which was introduced by Exton. Let us consider $E(q^2, x)$, then we have

$$E(q^2, x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{q^2}!} x^n q^{\binom{n}{2}}, \qquad x \in \mathbb{C}. \tag{18}$$

Now we make a use of (6) to rewrite the above formula as follows

$$E(q^2, x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!} x^n, \qquad x \in \mathbb{C}. \tag{19}$$

We use a different notation for the Exton's q–exponential function as

$$e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} := E(q^2, x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!} x^n, \qquad x \in \mathbb{C}. \tag{20}$$

One can see that this $\widetilde{q}$–exponential function (20) is invariant under inversion of basis and its $\widetilde{q}$–derivative is equal to itself, that means

$$e_{\widetilde{\frac{1}{q}}}^{x} = e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} \tag{21}$$

$$\widetilde{D}_q \, e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} = e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} \tag{22}$$

The next theorem is about the product of two $\widetilde{q}$–exponential functions.

Theorem 4. *For any x and y, the following equation holds*

$$e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{y} = e_{\widetilde{q}}^{(x+y)_{\widetilde{q}}} \tag{23}$$

where $(x+y)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n}$ is defined in (10).

Proof. We use (20) to expand both $e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}$ and $e_{\widetilde{q}}^{y}$, therefore we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{y} &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!} x^n \ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!} y^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \frac{1}{[k]_{\widetilde{q}}!\ [n-k]_{\widetilde{q}}!} x^k y^{n-k} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!} \sum_{k=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k}_{\widetilde{q}} x^k y^{n-k} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{[n]_{\widetilde{q}}!} (x+y)_{\widetilde{q}}^{n} \\ &= e_{\widetilde{q}}^{(x+y)_{\widetilde{q}}} \end{aligned}$$

and the proof is complete. □

4 Continued Fractions

A continued fraction is an expression of the form

$$a_0 + \cfrac{b_1}{a_1 + \cfrac{b_2}{a_2 + \cfrac{b_3}{a_3 + \cdots}}},$$

where $a_0, a_1, a_2, \ldots$ and $b_1, b_2, b_3, \ldots$ are two sequences of real or complex numbers. We use the following symbol for the above continued fraction

$$a_0 + \mathop{\mathrm{K}}_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{b_n}{a_n}\right]. \tag{24}$$

The following theorem is the convergent theorem of continued fractions (See [7], p. 126).

Theorem 5. *If $a_n > 0$ for $n > 1$ then the continued fraction $K_{n=1}^{\infty}\left[\frac{1}{a_n}\right]$ converges if and only if the series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$ diverges.*

4.1 Continued Fraction Representation of $\widetilde{q}$–Exponential Functions

The q–exponential functions e_q^x and E_q^x can be written as infinite product form as follows

$$e_q^x = \frac{1}{(1-(1-q)x))_q^{\infty}}, \qquad E_q^x = (1+(1-q)x))_q^{\infty}.$$

In this section, we want to show that the $\widetilde{q}$–exponential function also can be written as infinite product form.
Let us consider the $\widetilde{q}$–derivative of a function $f(x)$ which is defined as

$$\widetilde{D}_q f(x) = \frac{f(qx) - f(q^{-1}x)}{(q-q^{-1})x}. \tag{25}$$

Take $f(x) = e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx}$, therefore we can write (25) as follows

$$q\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx} = \frac{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{q^2 x} - e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}}{(q-q^{-1})x}, \tag{26}$$

because $\widetilde{D}_q\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx} = q\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx}$. Now by easy manipulation, we may write (26) as

$$\frac{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}}{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx}} - \frac{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{q^2x}}{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx}} = (1-q^2)x. \tag{27}$$

Let us define $g(x) := \frac{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}}{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx}}$ and then we may write (27) as

$$g(x) = (1-q^2)x + \frac{1}{g(qx)}. \tag{28}$$

Iterating the formula in (28) infinity many times to obtain

$$g(x) = (1-q^2)x + \cfrac{1}{(1-q^2)qx + \cfrac{1}{(1-q^2)q^2x + \cfrac{1}{(1-q^2)q^3x + \cdots}}}. \tag{29}$$

Now by using continued fractions symbol which is defined in (24), we may rewrite (29) as follows

$$g(x) = (1-q^2)x + \underset{n=1}{\overset{\infty}{\mathrm{K}}}\left[\frac{1}{(1-q^2)q^n x}\right] \tag{30}$$

or

$$\frac{1}{g(x)} = \underset{n=0}{\overset{\infty}{\mathrm{K}}}\left[\frac{1}{(1-q^2)q^n x}\right]. \tag{31}$$

By using Theorem 5, one can see that the continued fraction in the right hand side of equation (31) is converge, if $x < 0$ and $q > 1$.
Substitute x with $q^{-1}x$ in the equation (31) and then replace $g(x) = \frac{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x}}{e_{\widetilde{q}}^{qx}}$ to obtain

$$e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} = \underset{n=0}{\overset{\infty}{\mathrm{K}}}\left[\frac{1}{(1-q^2)q^{n-1} x}\right]\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{q^{-1}x}. \tag{32}$$

Iterating this formula k times to obtain

$$e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} = \prod_{j=1}^{k}\underset{n=0}{\overset{\infty}{\mathrm{K}}}\left[\frac{1}{(1-q^2)q^{n-j} x}\right]\ e_{\widetilde{q}}^{q^{-k}x}. \tag{33}$$

In the case, if $k \to \infty$, we have

$$e_{\widetilde{q}}^{x} = \prod_{j=1}^{\infty}\underset{n=0}{\overset{\infty}{\mathrm{K}}}\left[\frac{1}{(1-q^2)q^{n-j} x}\right] \tag{34}$$

because if $q > 1$, then we have $\lim\limits_{k\to\infty} e_{\widetilde{q}}^{q^{-k}x} = 1$.

References

[1] Ernst, T., *A Comprehensive Treatment of Q-calculus*, Springer, 2012.

[2] Gasper, G., Rahman, M., *Basic hypergeometric series*, Vol. 96 Cambridge university press, 2004.

[3] Kac, V., Cheung, P., *Quantum Calculus*, Springer, 2002.

[4] Exton, H., *q-Hypergeometric Functions and ApplicationsEllis*, Horwood, Chichester, 1983.

[5] McAnally, D. S., q-exponential and q-gamma functions. I. q-exponential functions. *Journal of Mathematical Physics*, Vol. 36, no. 1, pp. 546–573, 1995.

[6] Exton, H. Basic circular functions. In *Indagationes Mathematicae (Proceedings)*, Vol. 84, no. 2, pp. 165–171, North-Holland. 1981.

[7] Khrushchev, S.V.: Orthogonal Polynomials and Continued Fractions from Euler's Point of View, Encyclopedia of Mathematics and Its Applications, Vol. 122. Cambridge. Cambridge University Press 2008.

TABLE OF CONTENTS, JOURNAL OF COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO. 3, 2020

TABLE OF CONTENTS, JOURNAL OF COMPUTATIONAL ANALYSIS AND APPLICATIONS, VOL. 28, NO. 3, 2020

(continued)